

## **Sundry Sermons II**

**Jim Coetzee**



## **Sundry Sermons II**

**Jim Coetzee**

**This book is not to be sold. We are told in the second part of Matthew 10: 8 “*freely you received, freely give.*”** The book contains a number of sermons that I gave over the past few months and is intended as a reference manual for like-minded Nazarene Jewish/Israelite believers.

Note: All Scriptures used are from the ‘NEW AMERICAN STANDARD BIBLE’, unless otherwise indicated. Set-apart Names corrected in quotes used, in accord with this Bible’s ‘Principles of Translation’.

Published by the Nazarene Israelite Two House Congregation of Port Elizabeth. October 2008. Revised September 2010.

### **Acknowledgements**

I thank the leader of my previous association the late Mr. H W Armstrong and Eddie Chumney for the scriptural truths that I learnt from them over many years. This book reflects my personal understanding, and might not be in accord with the interpretation of my teachers. When we read any man's interpretation of the Scriptures we need to do what the Bereans did as recorded in Acts 17: 10 – 11 *“examining the Scriptures daily, to see whether these things were so.”* – Not, not so.

Thank you also to my wife Hannah, who helped me type, my son Derek and members and friends of the Nazarene Israelite Two House Congregation of Port Elizabeth, who assisted in proof reading.

## Sundry Sermons II Index

Chapter	Page
1. Blind guides?	5
2. Which is the one faith spoken about in the Scriptures?	10
3. Israel in Prophecy.	17
4. What about the Noahite laws?	21
5. The two lampstands – who are they?	25
6. The hundred and forty four thousand.	29
7. By their fruits you will know them.	32
8. Who is the Anti-Messiah?	35
9. What is a true believer?	39
10. Ancient Jewish marriage customs – a picture of Yahshua and his bride.	43
11. What is the meaning of the four cups of wine?	46
12. The lighting of candles before the Sabbath – what does it mean?	49
13. Servant leadership.	53
14. See to it that no one misleads you.	57
15. Faith in Yahshua – what does it mean?	62
16. What is the purpose of life?	66
17. What should the bride of Messiah do to qualify?	69
18. The Spirit in man.	73
19. The Mystery of Elohim.	75
20. Some thoughts on prophesy and the place of safety.	78
21. The mystery of the doctrine of two house Israel.	82
22. How can you afford to attend the Feast Days of Elohim?	86
23. How important is the name of YHVH to us?	90
24. What is the purpose of Torah?	94
25. What is the significance of the Sabbatical and Jubilee years?	97
26. Why are so many so 'obsessed' with watching the moon?	101
27. Is it important that we meet together on Sabbaths?	106
28. What is ahead for the called-out ones?	111
29. Messiah?	115
30. Rebellion.	119
31. Time is getting short.	124
32. Marriage	128
33. Do you believe that the Scriptures is the word of Elohim?	131
34. The importance of developing a perfect character.	135
35. How do we know that we are doing the work of Elohim?	139
36. When will Israel and Judah get together?	143
37. Contact details of the Publisher.	147

## Chapter 1: Blind guides?

When you study the account of our forefathers, the ancient Israelites, in the Torah, don't you sometimes say to yourself in disbelief: *'How fickle were these people of YHVH to be lead into pagan practices, so easily?'* However, have you ever thought about yourself, how easily were you deceived in the past? If you think carefully about where you come from, you will agree that we as human beings are very gullible and easily tricked to believe falsehood.

Despite the fact that the world has made enormous advances in the field of medicine, science and technology, there are probably fewer true believers in this age of enlightenment, than what there were 2000 years ago. This despite the fact that Daniel prophesied that knowledge will increase at the time of the end, in the book of Daniel in chapter 12: 4, as follows: ***'But as for you, Daniel, conceal these words and seal up the book until the end of time; many will go back and forth, and knowledge will increase.'*** In addition we read in Acts 3: 21 about a time before Yahshua will return, when there will be a restoration of all things, which no doubt includes a restoration of the original truth, that most of mankind has forgotten because of neglect through the centuries.

The reason for there being fewer true believers today is the fact that Satan and his many spiritual and human agents are doing everything in their power to hide the truth from people. Even though the true gospel has been proclaimed for a number of years, only a few remain in the truth. The reason being as explained in 2 Corinthians 4: 3 & 4, as follows: ***'And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing, (4) in whose case the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that they might not see the light of the gospel of the glory of Messiah, who is the image of Elohim.'*** As a second witness to this is found in Matthew 13: 11, where Yahshua when asked the reason for Him speaking in parables, said: ***"To you it has been granted to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it has not been granted."*** In addition YHVH has blinded our Jewish brothers to the identity of the true Messiah, as may be read in Romans 11. The reason for this was, so that Yahshua our kinsman Redeemer could be put to death for the sins of the world, as may be understood from 1 Corinthians 2: 6 - 8, as follows: ***'Yet we do speak wisdom among those who are mature; a wisdom, however, not of this age, nor of the rulers of this age, who are passing away; (7) but we speak Elohim's wisdom in a mystery<sup>1</sup> (8) the wisdom which none of the rulers of this age has understood; for if they had understood it, they would not have crucified the Master of Glory.'***

My purpose today is not to repeat a message about our calling as first-fruits and the fact that YHVH is not calling everyone at this time, but to assist seekers of truth to identify, as far as possible the many counterfeit teachings in the world, specifically designed to mislead us. Most of churchianity has been *'disciplined'* to get all their spiritual knowledge and understanding from preachers who have been trained in the doctrines of their specific group only. These preachers have been deceived by false doctrines, which they learned from seminaries that came through many centuries of false teachings. Being deceived themselves; they continue to deceive thousands of their congregants to believe these non-scriptural doctrines. To emphasize the situation, I would like relate an incident I personally experienced in this regard. Prior to getting married, I started receiving study material from a now almost defunct group that revealed major Scriptural truths to me. A colleague of mine enrolled me to receiving free magazines, books and booklets from this group on a regular basis. I started studying the material like it is going out of fashion. I could not believe my eyes, when reading booklet after booklet and comparing it to facts found in The Scriptures. I was so taken with this new found truth, that I studied all their material, and continued to do a correspondence course with them. I purchased another copy of The Scriptures as well as a concordance to ensure that everything that I am learning are indeed so.

To make a long story short, I read truth, which I never knew before and slowly but surely my believe system changed entirely. No, I can assure you it was by no means brainwashing – it was all scriptural truth, which I proved with two or three Scriptural witnesses. About two years passed since my wife and I got married when during a morning service one Sunday, the minister where we attended at the time, said in his sermon that if we go to hell because of what he is teaching us, he will personally come and fetch us out. Having recently already studied and proven the fact that we are neither going to spend eternity in heaven or hell when we die, that was the last straw for me. I got up from my seat and told the minister that he is teaching lies – since he being human, will not be able to fetch us from anywhere once he also died. We walked out of church that morning, not to return again, except for weddings and funerals that we were compelled to attend anyway. We became members of the group from where I received material for at least two years before. This group only

---

<sup>1</sup> The wisdom spoken about here is Messiah, as explained in 1 Corinthians 1: 24, like this: ***'But to those who are the called, both Jews and Greeks, Messiah the power of Elohim and the wisdom of Elohim.*** Also compare Jeremiah 32: 17, Proverbs 8: 22 and John 17: 5.

immersed people who were reasonably familiar with their doctrine. They gave me training in a spokesman's club, which I attended for two years with success. I was given the responsibility to teach the youth bible study program for a number of years. We continued in the same Scriptural faith, despite the fact that the group changed course after their then leader died. We left when their new leader started changing doctrines and we carried on, on our own, whilst some of their members went back to keeping Sunday, Xmas and the like. In addition many went back to eating un-kosher foods, and joined whatever church they came from previously. This group had more than 140,000 members in mainly Israelite countries, before they changed doctrines. My question will always be: Why was this group destroyed? Did Satan destroy it, because it preached too much truth, or did YHVH stop them, because they refused to acknowledge His name?

However, we continued believing in the doctrine of the two houses of Israel, keeping kosher, the Sabbath and the Set-apart Days of Elohim according to the Hebrew calendar. In addition we continued searching and studying the Scriptures and I went on the internet and found a lot more Scriptural truths, such as the Set-apart Names and the Oneness of Elohim; immersion in Yahshua's saving name; the wearing of tzitzit (as per Numbers 15: 38); head-coverings for both ladies and men (since we believe that we are already made priest unto YHVH, by Yahshua); circumcision; keeping Chanukah (as Yahshua our perfect example kept Chanukah as per John 10: 22); that Adam and Eve were covered in skin, when they sinned, thus dooming them to die<sup>2</sup>; that the original followers of Yahshua, were called the sect of the Nazarenes; we light candles before the commencement of the Sabbath (as per Exodus 27: 21); read the book of Esther during Purim; and we keep the feast of weeks, by counting from the day after the first annual Set-apart Day, namely the First Day of Unleavened Bread. We have been practicing (Scriptural) Judaism for more than thirty three years, and this coming Feast of Tabernacles, will be the thirty fourth time that we will be attending/observing Sukkoth. In fact the only differences between us and Rabbinical Jews, are that we believe in Yahshua and keep the Passover on the evening of 14 Aviv, at the end of 13 Aviv, as a memorial to Messiah's death, as per His example (see 1 Corinthians 11: 23 – 26). We do not accept any doctrinal teaching, unless we are able to prove it using at least two or three Scriptural references. In addition these references need to be studied to verify that it is interpreted in the correct context. We need to be careful when interpreting the Scriptures as we read in 2 Peter 1: 20 ***"But know this first of all, that no prophesy of scriptures is a matter of one's own interpretation."*** We should always let scripture interpret scripture.

The original believers in Messiah Yahshua were all Jews. In addition Yahshua said to the woman at the well, in John 4: 22, ***"You worship that which you do not know; we worship that which we know, for salvation is from the Jews."*** The average churchgoer has no idea that Messiah's name was in fact Yahshua. The name Yahshua means the salvation of YHVH, which is alluded to in Matthew 1: 21, as follows: ***"And she will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Yahshua, for it is He who will save His people from their sins."*** His mother was Jewish and they lived in Israel, which was even at that time populated by mostly Jewish citizens: so why would His mother give Him a hybrid Latin-Greek name like J\*e\*s\*u\*s\*, which carries no meaning at all. In addition why will a Jewish Savior, speaking Hebrew be given the Greek title of 'Christ'. His correct Jewish title, is as we read in Daniel 9: 26, as follows: ***"Then after the sixty-two weeks the Messiah will be cut off and have nothing, and the people of the prince who is to come will destroy the city and the sanctuary. And its end will come with a flood; even to the end there will be war; desolations are determined."***

With that out of the way, let us consider the many counterfeit doctrines that Satan has introduced through the church system. The problem with mankind is that of human nature and lawlessness. Most of Christianity have been duped to believe that J\*e\*s\*u\*s\*<sup>3</sup> came to abolish the strict laws introduced by His Father. Yet we read Yahshua's own words in Matthew 5: 17 & 18, like this: ***"Do not think that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish, but to fulfill. (18) For truly I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass away from the Law, until all is accomplished."*** If you think or believe that Yahshua accomplished all, when He died and was resurrected, you are wrong. Let's read the next two verses of Matthew 5 to prove just the opposite, as follows: (19) ***"Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments, and so teaches others, shall be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (20) For I say to you, that unless your righteousness surpasses that of the scribes and the Pharisees, you shall not enter the kingdom of heaven."*** Wow, does this mean that we have to keep the Torah, like the Jews? No, it means that we have to keep it better than the Jews. And if we do not, we will not enter the kingdom of Elohim. We read fittingly in 1 John 3: 4 & 10, ***"Everyone who practices sin also practices***

---

<sup>2</sup> Nowhere in the Scriptures will you read that YHVH slaughtered a lamb to cover Adam and Eve in lamb skin, or to teach them about Yahshua the lamb of Elohim. For scriptural evidence, be sure to read 2 Corinthians 5: 1 – 4.

<sup>3</sup> We insert the asterisks in this name, as we are admonished in Exodus 23 verse 13: ***"Now concerning everything which I have said to you, be on your guard; and do not mention the name of other gods, nor let them be heard from your mouth."***

**lawlessness; and sin is lawlessness.** (10) **By this the children of Elohim and the children of the devil are obvious; anyone who does not practice righteousness is not of Elohim, nor the one who does not love his brother.'** Do you practice righteousness, by obeying the Sabbath commandment? Do you practice righteousness, by eating only clean meats? In addition, do you practice righteousness, by sometimes sharing your blessings with a brother, even if he is not less fortunate than yourself? Do you love your neighbor enough to share the good news about the coming kingdom of Elohim, with him? Think about it!

Religious confusion and error is evident everywhere, but the majority of those attending church services are ignorant of the subtle influence of pagan customs. YHVH made a covenant with Israel that they will follow the teachings of His mouth, by the hand of Moses, in order to be a light to the nations around them. They were to become a model nation that would lead other nations to worship YHVH. However we read what happened to them in Psalm 81: 10 & 11, as follows: **"I, YHVH, am your Elohim, Who brought you up from the land of Egypt; Open your mouth wide and I will fill it. (11) But My people did not listen to My voice; and Israel did not obey Me."** Israel became entangled in the worship practices of the pagan nations around them, instead of influencing these nations for the better. This is why YHVH made them wander in the wilderness for 40 years, where most of the older generation died out. When they finally entered the Promised Land, it was a new generation, but people who also witnessed the miracle of the manna provided during their years in the wilderness, as well as the presence of YHVH in the pillar of cloud by day, and the pillar of fire by night. This new generation, should have forgotten the pagan gods of Egypt, since they had a functioning priesthood to keep them mindful of the good things that YHVH provided for them. But to no avail. After Moses died, instead of driving out the pagan nations among them in the Promised Land, they absorbed the heathen customs and worship practices from their neighbors. Even after the nation split into two separate nations, did they not obey YHVH, as we read in 2 Kings 17: 22 & 23: **'And the sons of Israel walked in all the sins of Jeroboam (the Israelite king who kept a feast like the Feast of Tabernacles, in the 8<sup>th</sup> month, instead as in the seventh month, as ordained by YHVH and lead the nation into idolatry) which he did; they did not depart from them, (23) until YHVH removed Israel from His sight, as He spoke through all His servants the prophets. So Israel was carried away into exile from their own land to Assyria until this day.'**

History being something that repeats itself shows that after Yahshua Messiah's resurrection and ascension to heaven, only a few hundred years elapsed when the ecclesia was no longer Hebrew in character. Christianity simply rejected the Hebrew religion, leading them to despise the Mosaic Law given to man by YHVH Himself. Even though Christianity claims to follow Messiah (the one they call C\*h\*r\*i\*s\*t), it has absorbed many strange doctrines without any Scriptural basis. In the beginning the Church was pure, but because they rejected the so-called 'Old Testament' they lost a great deal of the blessings to be had, by keeping the commandments. They also lost the knowledge about the true Sabbath and Feast Days of Elohim, and as a result accepted Satan's false doctrine that mankind is immortal, and upon death the soul of a good person goes to heaven, whereas the soul of an evil person goes to hell. It is because of this that many believe, since they are going to hell, because of their past sins, they might as well carry on sinning anyway. Yahshua often referred to the Torah the Prophets and the writings (the Tanach), even saying to Satan when he tempted Yahshua in Matthew 4: 4, as follows: **'But He answered and said, "It is written, 'MAN SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUTH OF ELOHIM.'"**

The Scriptures as originally given by Elohim, to those inspired to pen the same was indeed the pure word of Elohim. But since then, the Scriptures were translated into other languages and many errors slipped in. This is all Satan's doing, as we read in Revelation 12: 9, as follows: **'And the great dragon was thrown down, the serpent of old who is called the devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was thrown to earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.** We read in Genesis 3: 4, how Satan started deceiving mankind. He told Eve that she would live forever, and that she has an immortal soul. Since then Christianity as well as most other religions believe this lie. Even though Satan does not speak to us directly any longer, he controls the minds of many human agents, whom he inspires to introduce false doctrines and lies to dissuade people from believing in YHVH. It is as we read in 1 Peter 5: 8, **'Be of sober spirit, be on the alert. Your adversary, the devil, prowls about like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour.'** It is important that we understand the main source of all the error and false doctrines that even some amongst us come up with, from time to time. Even though the Scriptures which YHVH gave to us originally were undefiled, problems began when translations were made from one language to another. Portions were added in and others left out, making it easier to deceive the uninformed.

It was originally the purpose of churchianity to convert pagans and bring them into their fold. But it worked just the other way round: churchianity absorbed and retained most of the pagan practices, symbols and holidays to help the pagans understand their religion better. The battle between light and darkness is not new. In fact it came from before the fall of man, when Satan rebelled against Elohim's government, and he wanted to take over the throne of YHVH, as we read in Isaiah 14 and Ezekiel 28. This resulted in YHVH throwing Satan and his angels down to the earth, as we read previously in Revelation 12. Many of the

religious ideas, festivals and practices such as Easter, Xmas and Sunday worship services, may be traced back to our pagan forebears. If Israel did not persist in corrupting the truth, churchianity might have had a chance. However, because of the failings of Israel, Churchianity reads the Scriptures, without seeing a connection between them and ancient Israel. As a result they cannot even learn from the mistakes that our forebears made. The point is that as human beings, we cannot do what Elohim requires of us, as we are reminded in Romans 8: 7 & 8, in this way: ***'because the mind set on the flesh is hostile toward Elohim; for it does not subject itself to the law of Elohim, for it is not even able to do so; (8) and those who are in the flesh cannot please Elohim.'***

We read Elohim's condemnation of the city of Jerusalem for their wickedness and Idolatry in Isaiah 29: 13, as follows: ***'Then YHVH said, "Because this people draw near with their words and honor Me with their lip service, but they remove their hearts far from Me, and their reverence for Me consists of tradition learned by rote."'*** In fact the very same may be said about churchianity today, since they are very sincere in their worship, but they are sincerely wrong. We have been warned about mixing pagan customs with the way people worship in Leviticus 18: 3, as well as in Jeremiah 10: 1 – 5, as follows: ***'Hear the word which YHVH speaks to you, O house of Israel (note not Judah). (2) Thus says YHVH, "Do not learn the way of the nations, and do not be terrified by the signs of the heavens although the nations are terrified by them; (3) For the customs of the peoples are delusion; because it is wood cut from the forest, the work of the hands of a craftsman with a cutting tool. (4) They decorate it with silver and with gold; they fasten it with nails and with hammers so that it will not totter. (5) Like a scarecrow in a cucumber field are they, and they cannot speak; they must be carried, because they cannot walk! Do not fear them, for they can do no harm, nor can they do good.'***

Because of the truth that many believers publish on the web, some of the ministers in churchianity, at times see some of the errors and false doctrine that they teach. I recently watched a DVD made by a Dutch Reformed Minister here in South Africa. I applaud this man for talking against such things as tattoos and the Xmas tree. However, at the beginning of the DVD, he stressed that Christianity are not obliged to keep the Torah commandments, as Yahshua (he referred to the Savior as J\*e\*s\*u\*s\*), has done away with it. In addition he said nothing about Xmas being a pagan festival which Christianity accepted without question. So they are in fact even now teaching lies. Christianity believes that Yahshua was resurrected on Sunday, and as a result they hold, that He changed the Sabbath to Sunday. They are also totally oblivious of the fact that by keeping to the Friday impalement and Sunday resurrection account, they are denying Yahshua's Messiahship. Recall for the moment the account in Matthew where the Scribes and the Pharisees asked Yahshua to give them a sign that He is indeed the Messiah. We read this and His answer in Matthew 12: 38 – 40, as follows: ***'Then some of the Scribes and Pharisees answered Him, saying, "Teacher, we want to see a sign from you." But He answered and said to them, "An evil and adulterous generation craves for a sign; and yet no sign shall be given to it but the sign of Jonah the prophet; for just as JONAH WAS THREE DAYS AND THREE NIGHTS IN THE BELLY OF THE SEA MONSTER, so shall the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth."*** This is twice as long as the Christian church believes he spent in the grave.

The main reason why they misinterpret these Scriptures is the fact that they keep strictly to the Gregorian calendar as well as the Roman method of determining a day, i.e. from midnight to midnight. They also do not keep the Feast Days of Elohim like Yahshua and his followers did, given in Leviticus 23, as they consider these to be for the Jews only. If they were familiar with these Feast Days of Elohim, they would have realized that these Feast Days are also known as annual or High Day Sabbaths. Yahshua was impaled on a Wednesday, which was the day of preparation for the Feast of Unleavened Bread kept annually from the 15<sup>th</sup> to the 21<sup>st</sup> of Aviv. This is confirmed in John 19: 31 as follows: ***'The Jews therefore, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.'*** This was not the regular Sabbath, spoken about here but the 1<sup>st</sup> Day of Unleavened Bread. Our Savior was put to death on a Wednesday, the day of Passover. He was placed in the tomb just before sunset when Wednesday ended and Thursday started. The woman had no time to wrap His body with spices, due to the High Day Sabbath. They kept the 1<sup>st</sup> Day of Unleavened Bread which started on Wednesday after sunset (the 15<sup>th</sup> of Aviv). They bought spices on Friday after the Set-apart day for embalming Messiah's body. They rested the next day on the weekly Sabbath, and prior to sun-set, came to see the tomb. This is when as described in Matthew 28; they find that Yahshua was already risen at the end of the weekly Sabbath. This was definitely not a sunrise visit to the tomb.

By twisting the meaning of the Scriptures to highlight certain portions over others, preachers try hard to do away with Torah. They absolutely hate two of the Ten Commandments. The commandment that they hate the most is the fact that the Sabbath is on the seventh day of the week, namely Saturday – this is the fourth commandment. In fact in collaboration with business and industry, they have changed the calendar used in



Europe to show Monday as the beginning of the week and Sunday as the seventh day of the week. The third commandment is the second most hated commandment by churchianity: The third command tells us to honor the name of our Creator. Even though we know the name of our Creator, we need to be careful how and when we use His name. We should use the name of YHVH only during teachings, worship services and prayer. When we use the name of YHVH during such occasions, we need to ensure that we do not bring it to naught, by purposely misspelling it, using it in prayer over un-kosher food, (believing that the prayer will somehow render the food clean); or linking it to worship services not ordained by Him. We should not teach outsiders His name, as they might blaspheme His name in everyday use like some do, exclaiming the title G-d when they win a game or contest in TV programs. We should not forget that according to the Scriptures, if we break one commandment, we have broken them all.

As I said in the beginning some of us when studying the history of Israel, cannot understand why they were so gullible to be lead astray so easily by the heathens around them. However, many fail to see that they are doing the same thing by following after doctrines of men without proving it Scripturally. Churchianity continues to preach falsehood, saying like Martin Luther used to, like this: *'faith alone saves us.'* Similar to Luther, they would like to remove the book of James (Yaa'cov) from the Scriptures, where we read in James 2: 24 – 26, ***'You see that a man is justified by works, and not by faith alone. (25) And in the same way was not Rahab the harlot also justified by works, when she received the messengers and sent them out another way? (26) For just as the body without the spirit is dead, so also faith without works is dead.*** We know that we are not justified by works, but that salvation is a free gift of Elohim, to those who love Him. We read accordingly in 1 John 5: 3, ***'For this is the love of Elohim, that we keep His commandments; and His commandments are not burdensome.'*** Those who say that Messiah came to bring a new religion are blind guides, since He himself said just the opposite as is recorded in John 7: 16, as follows: ***'My teaching is not Mine, but His who sent Me.'***

The reason why so many follow pagan doctrines is because they have been deceived to follow a false C\*h\*r\*i\*s\*t\*. Those of us called at this time are a small group, making up the remnant that will be saved, if we overcome Satan, the self and the world. We need to heed the message of Revelation 14: 12, as follows: ***'Here is the perseverance of the saints (us) who keep the commandments of Elohim and their faith in (the true) Yahshua.'*** As I said in the past, we need teachers, but they should teach only Scriptural truths. In addition, we need to know that they come in the name of YHVH and practice Torah: besides, they should come through Yahshua's discipleship program, teaching us what He, or those who followed after Him taught them.

## **Chapter 2: Which is the one faith spoken about in the Scriptures?**

Before and during the Days of Unleavened Bread, we should make every effort to rid ourselves of hypocrisy and false doctrines. It is therefore important on this the First Day of Unleavened Bread that we consider the many false doctrines being taught in the religions of the world, but also in the Nazarene Israelite community. To begin with; evolutionists believe that this life is all there is and that we have to make the best of what we have been dealt with, knowing that at least our children are more improved models of us<sup>4</sup>. Are they correct? Is there a purpose for us to be here on earth? Ask yourself: Why am I here and where I am going? Yes, I mean during this life on earth, but also in the hereafter. Do you believe that you are going either to heaven or to hell when you die one day? Are those the options open to you? Many believers, even pastors, elders, and some rabbis have been deceived to believe that the good go to heaven and the evil go to hell, when they die. They are deceived and are also deceiving their followers, regarding this very important matter. We read in Revelation 12: 9, ***'And the great dragon was thrown down, the serpent of old who is called the devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was thrown down to earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.'*** Have you ever considered this statement carefully? Is it possible for Satan to have deceived all the inhabitants of the earth? How is this possible? Do you realize that most of the doctrines taught by most of Churchianity are the exact opposite of what the word of YHVH teaches?

Do you know that Yahshua himself said in John 3: 13: ***"(And) no one has ascended into heaven, but He who descended from heaven, even the Son of Man."*** Do you believe Yahshua the word of Elohim? But, I hear you asking: is our father Abraham not in heaven? What about David? We read in the faith chapter in the Renewed Covenant in Hebrews 11: 8 – 10, ***'By faith Abraham, when he was called, obeyed by going out to a place which he was to receive for an inheritance; and he went out, not knowing where he was going. (9) By faith he lived as an alien in the land of promise, as in a foreign land, dwelling in tents with Isaac and Jacob, fellow heirs of the same promise; (10) for he was looking for the city which has foundations, whose architect and builder is Elohim.'*** But these our fathers in the faith did not receive what they were promised. We read accordingly in verses 39 & 40 of Hebrews 11, ***'And all these, having gained approval through their faith, did not receive what was promised, (40) because Elohim had promised something better for us, so that apart from us they should not be made perfect.'*** We read the same thing about king David, in Acts 2: 26, Rav Kepha, saying: ***"Brethren, I may confidently say to you regarding the patriarch David that he both died and was buried, and his tomb is with us to this day."*** Do you believe in the resurrection of the dead? If you do then why do you want to go to heaven - if Yahshua is coming back to resurrect the dead?

Satan is a master counterfeiter. He has taken every doctrine to be found in the word of YHVH and changed it only ever so slightly to make it into a counterfeit of the original. Have you ever seen counterfeit money? Are you able to recognize counterfeit money when you see it? Some counterfeits are so close to the original, that it takes an expert to detect that it is a counterfeit. Satan being the master counterfeiter is able to make a counterfeit to look so close to the real thing that most people are not able to detect it. There are many false teachings in modern Christianity and other religions about Satan the devil. Some say that he is merely the embodiment of all that is evil, and not a real being. Others believe that Satan appears as a red monster with horns, a tail and a pitchfork. But is that the truth? The Scriptures reveal that Satan is the god (small g) of this present world. Rav Shaul calls him that in 2 Corinthians 4: 4 as follows: ***"in whose case the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that they might not see the light of the gospel of the glory of Messiah, who is the image of Elohim"***

In an attempt to defeat Messiah, Satan claimed in Luke 4: 6 ***"I will give you all this domain and its glory; for it has been handed over to Me, and I give it to whomever I wish. Therefore if you worship before Me, it shall be yours."*** The present world belongs to Satan. If Satan made this statement falsely, Messiah would certainly have told him so. However, Yahshua did not refute Satan's claim about the kingdoms of this world, instead, He rebuked him, saying: ***"It is written, 'You SHALL WORSHIP YHVH YOUR ELOHIM AND SERVE HIM ONLY.'"***

In Mathew 7: 13 Yahshua warned His disciples as follows: ***"Enter by the narrow gate; for the gate is wide, and the way is broad that leads to destruction, and many are those who enter by it."*** He was telling his disciples that the majority of mankind would be misled, and follow the easy broad way – the way to destruction. In Ephesians 2: 2 we see that Satan the deceiver is known as the prince of the power of the air.

---

<sup>4</sup> It reminds me of the joke about the Rabbi and the evolutionist traveling by train with their sons. The evolutionist's son was very rude and ran all over the place, without listening to reprimands from his father. The Rabbi's son sat quietly next to him, reading a book. Asked the evolutionist, 'How do you manage to control the lad so well?' The Rabbi answered: 'My son respects me as being one step closer to the Creator than what he is, as opposed to your son, who sees himself as superior to you, since he is one step further away from a monkey, than what you are.'

We have already read in Revelation 12: 9 that Satan deceived the whole world, after he and his angels were thrown down to earth, following his rebellious attempt to take over the throne of Elohim in the third heaven. In Isaiah 14: 12 (in the King James Version of The Scriptures) we see that Satan was called Lucifer, son of the morning before his fall. Today he is known as Satan and his angels are now called demons.

### **The Doctrine about the great controversy between YHVH and Satan:**

The question on our lips is: How did Satan become the god of this world? Many people have falsely assumed that the devil is the god of this world against (YHVH)'s will. They have mistakenly followed one of Satan's great false doctrines, that there is a great controversy between YHVH and him. This doctrine assumes that Satan is much more powerful than YHVH our Elohim. Despite all the work that Christian missionary workers have done over many centuries, we must agree that, there seems to be far more human beings 'lost' than what there are 'saved'. Considering the alleged contest between YHVH and Satan for human 'souls', we must admit that YHVH seems to be on the 'losing' side - It is very clear that most people are totally enveloped in sin today. It raises the question in our minds: If YHVH is OMNIPOTENT, why has so few people who ever lived heard the good news of salvation? Is this doctrine of Satan true? The answer may be found in Romans 11: 32 - 36 as follows: ***"For YHVH has shut them all up to disobedience, in order to have compassion on all. Oh, the depth of riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of Elohim! How unsearchable His judgments and unfathomable His ways! FOR WHO HAS KNOWN THE MIND OF YHVH, OR WHO BECAME HIS COUNSELOR? OR WHO HAS FIRST GIVEN TO HIM THAT IT MIGHT BE PAID BACK TO HIM AGAIN? For from Him and through Him and to Him are all things. To Him be the esteem forever. Amen."***

According to (YHVH)'s plan of salvation, depicted by His annual Set-apart Days, there will be two resurrections or harvests of souls. The first resurrection is for those people who are called during this age to be a kind of first fruits, as it is put in James 1: 18, ***"In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures."*** If we make it into the first resurrection, we will become first fruits unto YHVH. We will be made Spirit beings as those who are in the first resurrection. We read in Revelation 20: 6 ***'Blessed and holy is the one who has a part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests to Elohim and of Messiah and will reign with Him for a thousand years.'*** The second harvest of souls will occur after the millennium rule of Yahshua Messiah, as it says in the last part of Revelation 20: 4 and in verse 5: ***"and they came to life and reigned with Messiah for a thousand years. (5) The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were completed. "*** This is also spoken of in 1 Corinthians 15: 22 - 24 as follows; ***"For as in Adam all die, so also in Messiah all shall be made alive. But each in his own order: Messiah the first fruit(s), after that those who are Messiah's at His coming, then comes the end (ones), when He delivers up the kingdom to the Elohim and Father, when He has abolished all rule and all authority and power."***

We read further in Isaiah 25: 7 - 8 ***'And on this mountain He will swallow up the covering which is over all peoples, Even the veil which is stretched over all nations. (8) He will swallow up death for all time, And YHVH Elohim will wipe tears away from all faces, And He will remove the reproach of His people from all the earth; For YHVH has spoken.'*** When will that veil be destroyed? When will death be swallowed up? After the Day of Judgment of course! The Day of Judgment for all the billions who lived over the past centuries will only come after the Millennial rule of Yahshua Messiah. We see that these people who were blinded in the past will have the veil, which is stretched over them, removed. Make no mistake: If these untold billions of formerly blinded people are merely judged by their works, many of them were thieves, prostitutes, dictators and false prophets will all perish in the lake of fire. They did not ever repent and were not immersed as we are taught to do in Acts 2: 38. They did not study the Scriptures to grow in grace and knowledge, as we are taught in 2 Peter 3: 18. YHVH our Elohim's purpose remains. He is not trying to save everyone during this age; If He was, they would not all be saved. He is only calling out the First Fruits to rule with Yahshua during the Millennium and onto eternity. The vast majority of blinded individuals will be brought back to life during the Great White Throne Judgment. Then He will call them to spiritual understanding and will fill those who are willing with His Set-apart Spirit. He will grant them salvation in His kingdom. Those not willing will be burnt to ashes, with the wicked ones who sinned willfully after being called, during this age. There is no second chance - we read accordingly in Hebrews 10: 26 & 27: ***'For if we go on sinning willfully after receiving the knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, (27) but a certain terrifying expectation of judgment, and THE FURY OF A FIRE WHICH WILL CONSUME THE ADVERSARIES.'***

### **The doctrine of the immortality of the soul:**

Satan introduced his doctrine that man has an immortal soul to mother Eve, when he told her in Genesis 3: 4 as follows: ***‘And the serpent said to the woman, “You surely shall not die!”*** This despite the fact that YHVH told Adam in Genesis 2: 17 ***“but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you shall die.”*** Many assume that because Adam and Eve did not die during the first day that they ate of the forbidden fruit, that YHVH told an untruth. However, do not forget that according to The Scriptures to YHVH one day is like a thousand years. In 2 Peter 3: 8 we read: ***“But do not let this one fact escape your notice, beloved, that with YHVH one day is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day.”*** We also know according to The Scriptures in Genesis 5: 5 ***“So all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years, and he died.”*** So my question is who was the liar here? – o yes, it was the father of lies, Satan. Induced by Satan’s lies and deception Adam and Eve did sin. Since then all humankind have sinned and fall short of (YHVH)’s esteem. Death spread to all humankind through the sins of our forefathers. YHVH has allowed all of mankind to be led into sin by Satan, thus allowing us to see for ourselves where sin leads us. We see in the first part of Romans 6: 23 that, ***‘the wages of sin is death.’*** So as opposed to Satan’s lie that after disobeying YHVH our forefathers would not die, death was introduced. This was indeed a bleak picture, which left humankind in a miserable condition.

### **The doctrine that the saved goes to heaven and the un-saved to hell:**

Satan has succeeded in selling his own desires as well as his final destination to his deceived audience, as their most important teaching. Satan wanted to go to heaven to take over (YHVH)’s throne in rebellion. We read about this in Isaiah 14: 13 & 14 as follows: ***“But you said in your heart, ‘I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of Elohim, And will sit on the mount of assembly In the recesses of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.’”*** Christianity, Moslems, Hindus and other religions believe that ‘good’ people go to heaven, beholding the face of Elohim for all eternity, at the time of their death. However, this doctrine inspired by Satan, is nowhere to be found in The Scriptures. As mentioned before, Satan as a spiritual being is immortal and has deceived mankind and more specifically many in Christianity, to believe that man is also immortal. We know that the devil will be thrown into the lake of fire and will be tormented day and night forever and ever. This may be read in Revelation 20: 10 as follows: ***“And the devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are (had been thrown) also; and they will be tormented day and night for ever and ever.”*** Many in Christianity and some other religions teach accordingly, that the wicked will be tormented in an everlasting fire.

Human beings are made from physical matter and without having received the Set-apart Spirit of YHVH at repentance and immersion; these people do not have eternal life in them – they are not immortal. When physical matter is thrown into a fire, it burns until it becomes ashes. This is exactly what will happen to the wicked, who will not accept Yahshua as their Savior, according to Malachi 4 :1 - 3 ***“For behold, the day is coming, burning like a furnace; and all the arrogant and every evildoer will be chaff; and the day that is coming will set them ablaze.”*** says YHVH of hosts. ***“so that it will leave them neither root nor branch.”*** (2) ***But for you who fear My name the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings: and you will go forth and skip about like calves from the stall.*** (3) ***And you will tread down the wicked, for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet on that day which I am preparing,”*** says YHVH of hosts.” A second witness to this can be found in Isaiah 26: 14 as follows: ***“The dead will not live, the departed spirits (spirits in man – without the Spirit of YHVH given at immersion into Yahshua’s saving Name) will not rise; Therefore Thou hast punished and destroyed them, And thou hast wiped out all remembrance of them.”***

This tells us that when the wicked are thrown into the fire, after the second resurrection, they will not burn forever, but will be wiped out from remembrance. So we see eternity in an ever-lasting fire cannot be the fate of un-repentant human beings. After the second resurrection, those who refuse to go (YHVH)’s way and to repent will be thrown into the Gehenna fire, an all-consuming fire that will completely destroy them from all memory, as previously mentioned. We have seen through the examination of the words translated as ‘hell’ that the traditional view of an everlasting torment where sinners will be punished for eternity is simply not scriptural.

We as Nazarene Israelites believe that YHVH is one; some groups believe that He (YHVH) consists of three persons in one; another group believes that Yahshua was an Angel before His human birth; and groups like the Assemblies/congregation of YHVH believe that Yahshua is also YHVH. However, they believe that Yahshua is not YHVH the Father. The assemblies of YHVH site the following verses in support of this doctrine: Jeremiah 23: 6 and 33: 16 which clearly speaks about Yahshua being called YHVH. Next they quote Genesis 19: 24, as follows: ***‘Then YHVH rained on Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire from YHVH out of heaven.’*** According to them, this proves without a doubt that there are two beings called YHVH. However, what does YHVH our Elohim say to this assertion? We read in Deuteronomy 4: 39, YHVH talking to

Moses, saying: ***“Know therefore today, and take it to your heart, that YHVH, He is Elohim in heaven above and on earth below; there is no other.”*** There are numerous witnesses to this statement in Isaiah, one of which appears in Isaiah 45: 21, as follows: ***“Declare and set forth your case; Indeed, let them consult together. Who has announced this from of old? Who has long since declared it? Is it not I, YHVH? And there is no other Elohim besides Me. A righteous Elohim and a Savior; There is none except Me.*** Do you take YHVH at His word and believe that He is indeed One, or are you prepared to contradict the word of Elohim, saying that you know He is two, as some Assemblies/congregations do?

### **Are we the Anti-Messiah?**

There are those who say that we who believe in the Oneness of Elohim are according to the second part of 1 John 2: 22 the ‘anti-Messiah’. The term anti-Messiah (or Antichrist) appears only in the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> books of John. Let’s consider the test Scripture in 1 John 4: 2 ***‘By this you know the Spirit of Elohim: every spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh is from Elohim.’*** Yes, Yahshua is the Messiah, but what does that mean? Do you believe that Messiah came in the flesh? This is indeed a mystery, the answer of which is given in 1 Timothy 3: 16, as follows: ***‘And by common confession great is the mystery of godliness: He (some later manuscripts read Elohim) who was revealed in the flesh (as we are told in John 1: 14), Was vindicated (justified) in the Spirit, Beheld by angels, Proclaimed among the nations, Believed on in the world, Taken up in glory.’*** We also read in Isaiah 7: 14 ***‘Therefore YHVH Himself will give you a sign; Behold a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel.’*** - meaning Elohim with us. Yes, brethren, Yahshua is Messiah, but He is also YHVH in the flesh. Do you now understand what it means to confess that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh? It implies that Yahshua was somewhere else before He was born as a ‘man’. Knowing the Scriptures, we are able to confirm this in John 1: 1 – 3 and 14, as follows: ***‘In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. (2) He was in the beginning with Elohim. (3) All things came into being by Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being’.***<sup>5</sup> (14) ***And the word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.’*** Yes, Yahshua is Elohim in the flesh: Immanuel meaning Elohim with us. It is this very fact about Yahshua our Messiah which tests the spirit of the professing believer.

### **Do we have the Oracles of Elohim?**

The Assemblies/congregations of YHVH are not any different from the Roman Catholic Church. They, like the Catholics believe that their ecclesia was built upon Peter and the other disciples of Yahshua, who later became the apostles. They believe that ‘having been given’ the Oracles of Elohim, give them the right to proclaim the Feast Days of Elohim, including doing away with the postponement rules that the Rabbinical Jews introduced. They like the Catholics get this teaching from Matthew 16: 18, where Yahshua said to Peter: ***“And I also say to you that you are Peter (Petros in Greek, meaning a pebble), and upon this rock (Petra in Greek, meaning a rock) I will build My ecclesia; and the gates of Hades shall not overpower it.”*** They assume that Yahshua was referring to Peter (Kepha) as the rock upon whom the ecclesia is to be built. However we know that He was saying to Peter that His ecclesia will be built upon Him, the rock of our salvation. This is confirmed by Yahshua in Matthew 7: 24 & 25 , as follows: ***“Therefore everyone who hears these words of Mine, and acts upon them, may be compared to a wise man, who built his house upon the rock. (25) And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew (winds of change and false doctrines), and burst against that house; and yet it did not fall for it had been founded upon the rock.”*** Who or what is this rock. We read in 1 Corinthians 10: 4 ***‘And all drank the same spiritual drink, for they were drinking from a spiritual rock which followed them; and the rock was Messiah.’*** We need to make sure that the fellowship which we follow is built upon Yahshua the rock of our Salvation, and not on Peter, who the Catholics claim to be the first pope. Yes we are Yahshua’s disciples; He is our Master (Rabbi) and has commissioned us to continue with His rabbi/discipleship program, until He comes back to rule the world from Jerusalem. Evidently Peter (Rav Kepha) knew what Yahshua meant in Matthew 16, as he explains in Acts 4: 11 & 12, ***“He (Yahshua) is the stone which was rejected by you, the builders, but which became the very corner stone. (12) And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name (the name Yahshua means the salvation of YHVH) under heaven that has been given among men, by which we must be saved.”*** Rav Kepha confirmed that He knew who Yahshua was, adding that those who stumble over these facts were appointed for this doom. as we read in 1 Peter 2: 7 & 8, as follows: ***‘This precious value, then, is for you who believe. But for those who disbelieve, “THE STONE WHICH THE BUILDERS REJECTED, THIS BECAME THE VERY CORNER stone,” (8) and, “A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENSE”: for they stumble because they are disobedient to the word, and to this doom they were also appointed.’*** Those who built their house on the pope or on the Apostles alone are bound to come crashing down in the near future. Rav Shaul was also fully aware of what Yahshua

---

<sup>5</sup> Elohim created the universe by the word of YHVH, as is confirmed in Psalm 33: 6.

meant. To this end he confirmed that our Jewish brothers were given the Oracles of Elohim. They preserved the Sabbath, the annual Feast Days of Elohim, Koshering of meats (extracting all the blood), as well as the Hebrew language for us. We read in Roman 3: 3 & 4, ***‘What then? If some did not believe, their unbelief will not nullify the faithfulness of Elohim, will it? (4) May it never be! Rather, let Elohim be found true, though every man be found a liar, as it is written, “THAT THOU MIGHTEST BE JUSTIFIED IN THY WORDS, AND MIGHTEST PREVAIL WHEN THOU ART JUDGED.”’***

We know that YHVH will always remain the same, as is confirmed in Malachi 3: 6, ***“For I, YHVH, do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob, are not consumed.”*** Judah will remain the lawgiver of YHVH, until Yahshua returns to rule the world from Jerusalem. This is confirmed in Genesis 49: 10, as follows: ***“The scepter shall not depart from Judah, Nor the ruler’s staff from between his feet, Until Shiloh comes, And to him shall be the obedience of the peoples.”*** When Yahshua returns, He is not coming back as a baby in a manger; no He is coming to put down the misguided governments of this world.

The question is: What did Yahshua give to the ecclesia, which is built upon the rock? We read His conversation with Peter in Matthew 16: 19, where He said: ***“I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven; and whatever you shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.”*** Both Rav Kepha and Rav Shaul knew what Yahshua meant, by saying this. We read in Acts 2: 38, where Rav Kepha explains to the brethren how to obtain the gift of the Set-apart Spirit, as follows: ***“Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit.”*** Rav Shaul further explains in Romans 8: 11, ***‘But if the Spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Messiah Yahshua from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His spirit who indwells you.’*** This is one of the keys to the kingdom of Elohim. A second key is the understanding that we have regarding Elohim’s plan of salvation for all mankind. We understand this second key better, by observing the annual Feast Days of Elohim, given in Leviticus 23.

Many Messianics as well as the Assemblies/congregations of YHVH count the Omer from the day after the Sabbath, falling between the First and the Last Days of Unleavened Bread. The reason for this being that they do not understand the Annual Set-apart Days are also known as annual Sabbaths, as is confirmed in John 19: 31, ***‘The Jews therefore, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.’*** In addition we need to compare Leviticus 23: 9 – 15, where this command is given, with Deuteronomy 16: 9 and Joshua 5: 10 – 11, where the Israelites actually arrived in the promised land. In verse 9 - 14 of Leviticus 23, we read: ***‘Then YHVH spoke to Moses saying, “Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, ‘When you enter the land which I am going to give to you and reap its harvest, then you shall bring the sheaf of the first fruits of your harvest to the priest. (11) And he shall wave the sheaf before YHVH for you to be accepted; on the day after the Sabbath the priest shall wave it. (12) Now on the day when you wave the sheaf, you shall offer a lamb one year old without defect for a burnt offering to YHVH. (13) Its grain offering shall then be two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil, an offering by fire to YHVH for a soothing aroma, with its libation, a fourth of a hin of wine. (14) Until this same day, until you have brought in the offering of your Elohim, you shall eat neither bread nor roasted grain nor new growth. It is to be a perpetual statute throughout your generations in all your dwelling places.’*** In verse 15 it tells us to count seven complete Sabbaths. However, we see in Deuteronomy 16: 9 that we shall count seven complete weeks, because this Feast is also known as the Feast of Weeks (not the Feast of Sabbaths). Now, let us turn to Joshua 5: 10 & 11, where we read about the Israelites ***‘when they entered the land,’*** as follows: ***‘While the sons of Israel camped at Gilgal, they observed the Passover on the evening of the fourteenth day (which commenced as the 13<sup>th</sup> came to a close – since the Hebrew calendar dictates that a day starts in the evening as per Genesis 1: 5) of the month on the desert plains of Jericho. (11) And on the day after Passover, on that very day they ate some of the produce of the land, unleavened cakes and parched grain.’*** Israel was forbidden to eat grain or corn until the Omer was harvested and waved by the priest. If the day after the weekly Sabbath is where we count the Omer from and Sunday is always the day on which the Feast of First Fruits is to be kept, then Joshua sinned and caused the whole house of Israel to sin with him, as he allowed them to eat grain and the produce of the land the day after Passover.

The wording of Joshua 5 shows that what allowed Israel to eat grain was the passing of the Passover and not the passing of the alleged weekly Sabbath. Fixed Sunday-to-Sunday (First Fruits to Pentecost) counting is a direct contradiction of Joshua chapter 5: 10 – 12. Here we see that the grain was eaten on the night of the 15<sup>th</sup> becoming the 16<sup>th</sup>. The expression ‘the day after the Sabbath’ in Leviticus 23 has been misunderstood as meaning that the first fruit sheaf was always to be made on the day following the Sabbath. This view was adopted by the Sadducees (Karaites today) and certain modern interpreters. However, it is clear from the above discussion that the first annual sabbath day (the 1st day of Unleavened Bread) was meant as may

be seen in Joshua 5: 11. We have also seen that some of the other Set-apart days of YHVH are referred to in the same book of Leviticus 23 as Sabbaths in verses 24, 32 and 39.

Most believers agree that Yahshua was impaled on a Wednesday (or the middle of the week) on the 14<sup>th</sup> of Aviv. He rose exactly three days later at the end of the weekly Sabbath. We know that Yahshua kept the Passover 24 hours before our Jewish brothers of His day did. Yahshua kept the Passover in the night during which He was betrayed; we keep it annually on the same evening, i.e. the 14<sup>th</sup> of Aviv as the 13<sup>th</sup> of Aviv ends, in remembrance of Him. Yahshua did not change any of the other Feast Days of YHVH during His 1<sup>st</sup> advent, else Rav Shaul (or one of His other apostles) would have recorded it for us, as he (Rav Shaul) did the Passover in 1 Corinthians 11. Instead of a major change, we notice in Acts 2: 1, ***'And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.'*** Wow, this is rare! Nobody argued about the calendar like we do today and this was only days after Yahshua's ascension recorded in Acts 1: 9. The Sunday Pentecost factions say that 1 Corinthians 15: 20 proves that Messiah was indeed the wave sheaf. Let's read it for ourselves; it reads: ***'But now Messiah has been raised from the dead, the first fruits (aparche) of those who are asleep.'*** The Greek word 'aparche' translated 'first fruits' in 1 Corinthians 15 is singular, not plural and should read first fruit. Messiah Yahshua is 'the first fruit' not 'the first fruits'. The wave sheaf represents the first fruits (plural).

Those of us, who are called during this age, will if we make it be resurrected when Messiah returns. We are those called and chosen, the ecclesia of RENEWED COVENANT ISRAELITES as recorded in Revelation 14: 4 as follows: ***"These are the ones who have not been defiled with woman, for they have kept themselves chaste. These are the ones who follow the Lamb wherever He goes. These have been purchased from among men as first fruits to Elohim and to the Lamb."*** We who believe that we are the first fruits, will again be counting the Omer from the day after the 1<sup>st</sup> day of Unleavened Bread on the night of the 15<sup>th</sup> becoming the 16<sup>th</sup> Aviv, this year. Enough said.

#### **The Scriptures is the word (or teachings) of YHVH:**

We believe the Word of YHVH consists of all the Scriptures from Genesis to Revelation and those who reject the writings of Rav Shaul or as some recently asserted: that book of Hebrews, is Anti-Torah; are simply part of the ones whom we are warned about in Jude 4 - those contradicting (or denying) our only Master Yahshua Messiah. They are no different from those who add their own interpretation to parts of the Scriptures. An example of this is where in Genesis 3: 21 we are told that after the fall of man in the Garden of Eden, YHVH dressed them in skin. Some add that this was the first animal sacrifice for sin, as YHVH killed a lamb to make clothes for Adam and Eve. However, the Scriptures do not say that, in addition we know that the sacrificial system was only introduced after the golden calf incident. YHVH simply covered our forebears in skin, which resulted in them becoming mortal. How do you prove that, I hear you asking? Let us turn to 2 Corinthians 5: 1 - 4, where we read the following explanation : ***'For we know that if the earthly tent (our skin) which is our house is torn down, we have a building from Elohim, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. (2) For indeed in this house we groan, longing to be clothed with our dwelling from heaven; (3) inasmuch as we, having put it on, shall not be found naked. (4) For indeed while we are in this tent, we groan being burdened, because we do not want to be unclothed, but to be clothed, in order that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life.'*** Nevertheless, we should refrain from adding our own interpretations to any parts of the Scriptures as we are admonished in 2 Peter 1: 20 & 21, as follows: ***'But know this first of all, that no prophecy of Scriptures is a matter of one's own interpretation, (21) for no prophesy was ever made by an act of human will, but men moved by the Set-apart Spirit spoke from Elohim.'*** In addition we read in Revelation 22: 18 & 19, in this way: ***'I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: if anyone adds to them, Elohim shall add to him the plagues which are written in this book; (19) and if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophesy, Elohim shall take away his part from the tree of life and from the set-apart city, which are written in this book,'***

**Are we a sect?**

Recently I read in a magazine sent me by some assemblies of YHVH that they insist that they are the only and original assembly of YHVH. They hold that other than with all other groups, they do not consider themselves to be a sect of anything. Does their statement make theirs the one true faith? By the same token, does the fact that the queen of England calls Xmas and Easter official holidays of the English people make it right? The original ecclesia started in the wilderness (according to Acts 7: 38), was Scriptural Judaism (Judaism mean those who worship YHVH – see Genesis 29: 35). This is also why Rav Shaul states in an unequivocal manner in Acts 23: 6 that he is a Pharisee. The word Pharisee simply means the 'separated ones' or 'Perushim' in Hebrew. We the called-out ones are today also known as, the set-apart ones. The ecclesia that continued after Yahshua's resurrection and ascension to heaven, were according to Acts 24: 5 & 14 the sect of the Nazarenes, with Rav Shaul as the ring-leader. Rav Shaul states clearly in Ephesians 4:

4 – 6, that: ***“There is one body and one Spirit, just as also you were called in one hope of your calling; (5) one Master, one faith, one immersion, (6) one Elohim and Father of all who is over all and through all and in all.”*** The problem is that most believe the traditions and teachings of men, rather than the word of Elohim. If your teacher teaches that there are two (YHVH)’s, and the word of Elohim, plainly states that He is one, who or what do you believe? After all Yahshua is the word of YHVH made flesh. In answer to a question, as to “What commandment is the foremost of all”, Yahshua answered in Mark 12: 29, ***“The foremost is, ‘HEAR O ISRAEL! YHVH OUR ELOHIM IS ONE YHVH.’”*** It is that simple. However, never forget that the Oneness of Elohim, is revealed to us (his modern day disciples) by Yahshua, as we read in Luke 10: 21 – 24, like this: ***‘At that very time He rejoiced greatly in the Set-apart Spirit, and said, “I praise Thee, O Father, Elohim of heaven and earth, that Thou didst hide these things from the wise and intelligent and didst reveal them to babes. Yes, Father, for thus it was well-pleasing in Thy sight. (22) “All things have been handed over to Me by My Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son, and anyone to whom the Son wills to reveal Him.” (23) And turning to the disciples, He said privately, “Blessed are the eyes which see the things you see, (24) for I say to you, that many prophets and kings wished to see the things which you see, and did not see them, and to hear the things which you hear, and did not hear them.”*** So before we think that YHVH called us because we are so clever, let us remind ourselves of the facts recorded for us in 1 Corinthians 1: 26 – 31, in this way: ***‘For consider your calling brethren, that there were not many wise according to the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble; (27) but Elohim has chosen the foolish things of the world to shame the wise, and Elohim has chosen the weak things of the world to shame the things which are strong, (28) and the base things of the world and the despised, Elohim has chosen, the things that are not that He might nullify the things that are, (29) that no man should boast before Elohim. (30) But by His doing you are in Yahshua, who became to us wisdom from Elohim, and righteousness and sanctification, and redemption, (31) that, just as it is written, ‘LET HIM WHO BOASTS, BOAST IN YHVH.’”***

Does my questioning of some spiritual Leaders trouble you? If you, like some believe that I teach hatred, then consider Yahshua’s own words in Matthew 10: 34, as follows: ***“Do not think that I came to bring peace on the earth; I did not come to bring peace but the sword.”*** My purpose is only to convince all to repent and return to full Torah observance. We read fittingly in Hebrews 4: 12, ***‘For the word of Elohim is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword, and piercing as far as the division of soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow, and able to judge the thoughts and intentions of the heart.’***

So in conclusion I would like to ask: *‘Which is the one faith spoken about in the Scriptures?’* The one true faith or bride of Messiah will be the ones who wash their robes in the word of truth, the Scriptures. Let us therefore at this time determine to rid ourselves of all false doctrines as well as the impulse to add or take away from what is written in The Scriptures. Let’s determine to build the ecclesia of Elohim on the rock of our salvation, Yahshua.



### **Chapter 3: Israel in Prophecy.**

Why do we Nazarene Israelites believe the things we do? Why are so many people, who are not Jewish, all of a sudden interested in their so-called Hebrew roots? The entire Scriptures from Genesis to Revelation are the history and prophesy of the future of the nation of Israel. People throughout the world, but primarily those in the Western world would be surprised – even stunned if they knew that they are really part and parcel of the lost ten tribes of the Scriptural nation of Israel. However very few are today aware of this vitally important fact. Some 2500 years ago YHVH Elohim the Creator of the universe inspired Isaiah to quote Him in Isaiah 46: 9 & 10, saying: ***“Remember the former things long past, For I am Elohim, and there is no other; I am Elohim and there is no one like Me, (10) Declaring the end from the beginning And from ancient times things which have not been done, Saying, ‘My purpose will be established, And I will accomplish all My good pleasure.’”*** What is the purpose of Elohim spoken about here?

We read in Psalm 33: 10 – 15, Elohim saying through David: ***‘YHVH nullifies the counsel of the nations; He frustrates the plans of the peoples. (11) The counsel of YHVH stands forever, the plans of His heart from generation to generation. (12) Blessed is the nation whose Elohim is YHVH, The people whom He has chosen for His own inheritance. (13) YHVH looks from heaven; He sees all the sons of men; (14) From His dwelling place He looks out on all the inhabitants of the earth, (15) He who fashions the hearts of them all, He who understand all their works.’*** Mankind was placed on the earth for a purpose. But the best minds in the world are in total ignorance of Elohim’s purpose for his servants. The question is: Why don’t all these brilliant people understand the real meaning of world events at this time? There are two main reasons, namely:

1. They have been deceived by Satan through false education, which appeals to the vanity of their intellect into rejecting the divine revelation which alone can reveal this knowledge; and
2. The key for unlocking Scriptural prophecies has been lost.

The missing key to unlocking Scriptural prophecies is the identity of the lost ten tribes of Israel, and the other players in the disastrous events soon to take place in this world.

We have almost reached the end of 6,000 years of Scriptural history. We are about to enter the end of this age. Today, we face conditions which the world has not experienced before. Since world war two, mankind developed weapons of mass destruction which can erase all life from our planet. The nations of this world are in trouble and some are turning to the Scriptures for hope, saying that it is now evident that Science offers no solutions. However, when reading the Scriptures, these leaders object, saying that the Scriptures are outdated writings, only offering solutions to the ancient nation of Israel.

But, the fact is that a large part of the prophecies in the Scriptures were never given to the ancient nation of Israel, but is talking about people of our time. Every prophecy in the Scriptures shows where the people of Israel will be at the second coming of Messiah and the coming great exodus back to Palestine, picturing *‘them’* in captivity and slavery. Speaking first of ancient Israel, YHVH says in Ezekiel 20: 10 – 12, ***“So I took them out of the land of Egypt and brought them into the wilderness. (11) And I gave them My statutes and informed them of My ordinances, by which, if a man observes them, he will live. (12) And also I gave them My Sabbaths to be a sign between Me and them, that they might know that I am YHVH who sanctifies them.”*** Nevertheless we read in verse 21 of Ezekiel 20: ***“But the children rebelled against Me; they did not walk in My statutes, nor were they careful to observe My ordinances, by which, if a man observes them, he will live; they profaned My Sabbaths. So I resolved to pour out My wrath on them, to accomplish My anger against them in the wilderness.”*** Therefore, we see according to verse 23 that YHVH scattered them in national captivity and slavery. Continuing on in this amazing prophesy, we notice that it is talking about the people of Israel today.

We read in Ezekiel 20: 33 – 40, ***“As I live,” declares YHVH Elohim, “surely with a mighty hand and an outstretched arm and with wrath poured out, I shall be king over you. (34) And I shall bring you out from the people and gathered you from the lands where you are scattered, with a mighty hand and with an outstretched arm and with wrath poured out; (35) and I shall bring you into the wilderness of the peoples, and there I shall enter into judgment with you face to face. (36) As I entered into judgment with your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so I will enter into judgment with you,” declares YHVH Elohim. (37) And I shall make you pass under the rod, and I shall bring you into the bond of the covenant; (38) and I shall purge from you the rebels and those who transgress against Me; I shall bring them out of the land where they sojourn, but they will not enter the land of Israel. Thus you will know that I am YHVH.” (39) “As for you, O house of Israel,” thus says YHVH Elohim, “Go serve everyone his idols; but later, you will surely listen to Me, and My Set-apart name you will profane no longer with the gifts and with your idols. (40) For on My Set-apart Mountain (government) , on the high mountain of Israel,” Declares YHVH Elohim, “there the whole house of***

***Israel, all of them, will serve Me in the land; there I shall accept them, and there I shall seek your contributions and the choicest of your gifts, with all your Set-apart things."***

Today those of us called out by YHVH know that we are the remnant of Israel, called according to Elohim's gracious choice. And as much as our fore fathers were called out of Egypt by YHVH so are we. Yahshua came for us, the lost sheep of the house of Israel. Yahshua sent His twelve disciples out after He instructed them saying in Matthew 10: 5 & 6, ***"Do not go in the way of the Gentiles, and do not enter any city of the Samaritans; (6) but rather go to the lost sheep of the house of Israel."*** He also told the Canaanite woman, from the region of Tyre and Sidon, who beseeched Him to help her demon-possessed daughter, in Matthew 15: 24, saying: ***"I was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel."*** In fact we see in Luke 4, after His temptation by Satan, He returned to Galilee and began teaching in the synagogues. We see in verse 16 of Luke 4, that He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath according to His custom, and stood up to read. Continuing in verse 17 – 21 of Luke 4, we read: ***'And the book of the prophet Isaiah was handed to Him. And He opened the book, and found the place where it was written, (18) "THE SPIRIT OF YHVH IS UPON ME, BECAUSE HE ANOINTED ME TO PREACH THE GOSPEL TO THE POOR. HE HAS SENT ME TO PROCLAIM RELEASE TO THE CAPTIVES, AND RECOVERY OF SIGHT TO THE BLIND, TO SET FREE THOSE WHO ARE DOWNTRODDEN, (19) TO PROCLAIM THE FAVORABLE YEAR OF YHVH."*** (20) ***And He closed the book, and gave it back to the attendant, and sat down; and the eyes of all in the synagogue were fixed upon Him. (21) And He began to say to them, "Today this Scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing."*** Yahshua told our Jewish brothers that He came as prophesied in Isaiah to release us the lost ten tribes from captivity.

But, we read in Isaiah 10: 20 – 23, that only a remnant of Israel will be saved, as follows: ***'Now it will come about in that day that the remnant of Israel, and those of the house of Jacob, who have escaped (the coming tribulation), will never again rely on the one who struck them, but will truly rely on YHVH, the Set-apart One of Israel. (21) A remnant will return, the remnant of Jacob, to the mighty Elohim. (22) For though your people, O Israel, may be like the sand of the sea, Only a remnant within them will return; A destruction is determined, overflowing with righteousness. (23) For a complete destruction, one that is decreed, YHVH Elohim of hosts will execute in the midst of the land.'*** We read further in Isaiah 11: 10 – 16: ***'Then it will come about in that day That the nations will resort to the root of Jesse, Who will stand as a signal for the peoples; And His resting place will be glorious. (11) Then it will happen on that day that YHVH Will again recover the second time with His hand The remnant of His people, who will remain, From Assyria, Egypt, Pathros, Cush, Elam, Shinar, Hamath, And from the islands (coastlands) of the sea. (12) And He will lift up a standard for the nations, And will assemble the banished ones of Israel, And will gather the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth. (13) Then the jealousy of Ephraim will depart, And those who harass Judah will be cut off; Ephraim will not be jealous of Judah, And Judah will not harass Ephraim. (14) And they will swoop down on the slopes of the Philistines on the west; Together they will plunder the sons of the east; They will possess Edom and Moab; And the sons of Ammon will be subject to them. (15) And YHVH will utterly destroy The tongue of the Sea of Egypt; And He will wave His hand over the River With His scorching wind; And He will strike it into seven streams, And make men walk over them dry-shod. (16) And there will be a highway from Assyria For the remnant of His people who will be left, Just as there was for Israel In the day that they came up out of the land of Egypt.'***

There are many Scriptures that mention our physical return to the land of Israel. However, because of the idolatry that occurred in the house of Israel, YHVH split the kingdom into two, as prophesied in Ezekiel 4. Israel was taken captive by Assyria during the years 718 and 721 BCE, for (390 times 7) 2730 years. Adding the 2730 years to 718 and 721 BCE brings us to between the years 2009 – 2012 CE. All things being equal, and if we have not lost any time, 2013 could therefore be the year during which the remnant of the lost ten tribes will commence going back to the land of Israel. We read in Ezekiel 34: 11 – 13, 30 & 31, as follows: ***'For thus says YHVH Elohim, "Behold, I Myself will search for My sheep and seek them out. (12) As a shepherd cares for his herd in the day when he is among his scattered sheep, so I will care for My sheep and will deliver them from all the places to which they were scattered on a cloudy and gloomy day. (13) And I will bring them out from the peoples and gather them from the countries and bring them to their own land; and I will feed them on the mountains of Israel, by the streams, and in all the inhabited places of the land."***(30) ***"Then they will know that I YHVH their Elohim, am with them, and that they, the house of Israel, are My people," declares YHVH Elohim.'*** (31) ***"As for you, My sheep the sheep of My pasture, you are men and I am your Elohim," declares YHVH Elohim.'***

We see in Mark 8: 22 – 25: ***'And they came to Bethsaida. And they brought a blind man to Him, and entreated Him to touch him. (23) And taking the blind man by the hand, He brought him out of the village; and after spitting on his eyes, and laying His hands upon him, He asked him, "Do you see anything?" (24) And he looked up and said, "I see men, for I am seeing them like trees, walking***

**about.” (25) Then again He laid His hand upon his eyes; and he looked intently and was restored, and began to see everything clearly.**’ The nation of Israel who has been blinded by Satan, to only partly understand the good news that Yahshua died for the sins of the world. They do not understand the good news about the coming kingdom of Elohim, and the fact that He is going to remarry His bride the united Nation of Israel, at His return. In Ezekiel 34: 31 YHVH told us that we are men. Here in Mark 8: 24, the blind man says that he sees men walking like trees. In Mark 8: 25, we see that after Yahshua laid hands on the blind man (Israel) for the second time, he saw things clearly, like Israel will, at the second coming of Messiah. The section about the trees in Mark 8: 24 is endorsed by Jeremiah 11: 16 & 17, where YHVH refers to Israel as an olive tree, as follows: **‘YHVH called your name, “A green olive tree, beautiful in fruit and form”; With the noise of a great tumult He has kindled fire on it, And its branches are worthless. (17) And YHVH of hosts, who planted you, has pronounced evil against you because of the evil of the house of Israel and of the house of Judah, which they have done to provoke Me by offering up sacrifices to Baal.’** We know that the olive tree spoken about here is the same olive tree discussed in Romans 11.

Again we read about a remnant which are called out according to Elohim’s gracious choice, at the present time, as per Roman 11: 5. We are the remnant of the house of Israel, who are called Gentiles in this chapter, since we have lost our identity. It talks about us as wild olive branches, which are grafted back into the Olive tree. We also read in verse 25 and the first part of verse 26 of Romans 11, **‘For I do not want you, brethren, to be uninformed of this mystery, lest you be wise in your own estimation, that a partial hardening has happened to Israel** (in this case meaning Judah) **until the fullness of the Gentiles** (us the lost ten tribes of the house of Israel, who believe that we are Gentiles) **has come in; (26) and thus all Israel will be saved.’**

YHVH is calling a remnant from Israel at this time to become first fruits by opening our eyes to His word. We read about this in James 1: 18, as follows: **‘In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’** We further read in Romans 8: 28 & 29, **‘And we know that Elohim caused all things to work together for good to those who love Elohim, to those who are called according to His purpose. (29) For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the first-born among many brethren.’** Wow, how is this possible, you might ask? How did YHVH pick us to become his first fruits and for what reason? We read in 1 Corinthians 1: 26 – 29: **“For consider your calling, brethren, that there were not many wise according to the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble; (27) but Elohim has chosen the foolish things of the world to shame the wise, and Elohim has chosen the weak things of the world to shame the things which are strong, (28) and the base things of the world and the despised, Elohim has chosen, the things that are not, that He might nullify the things that are, (29) that no man should boast before Elohim.”**

YHVH warns us through prophecy that the day of reckoning is near. World War three will soon commence with nuclear devastation unleashed on the present day nation of Israel. Cities like Jerusalem will be attacked, but so will nuclear devastation be unleashed on London, Liverpool, New York, Washington, Chicago, Sydney, Perth, Wellington, Christchurch, Johannesburg, Cape Town, and wherever there are a concentration of Israelites present in this world. We the chosen people of Elohim should wake up before it is too late. We should shout for joy knowing that we are Israel, and in repentance turn back to YHVH our Elohim. The punishment now soon to be unleashed upon the world is simply the great tribulation.

The good news is that we need not suffer in it. The coming severe punishment is to correct our peoples to return to the ways of Elohim. The Israelite nations have been warned in the Scriptures, but because they do not recognize themselves as the Israel of Elohim, most of them will not listen. However, if you and I listening to or reading this sermon, overcome our sins, repent and return to YHVH the Elohim of Israel and His Torah, we will be protected from the great tribulation, as we read in Revelation 3: 10 & 11, as follows: **“Because you have kept the word of My perseverance, I also will keep you from the hour of testing, that hour which is about to come upon the whole world, to test those who dwell upon the earth. (11) I am coming quickly; hold fast what you have, in order that no one take your crown.”** This is in line with what we read in Isaiah 26: 20 & 21, as follows: **‘Come, My people, enter into your rooms, And close your doors behind you; Hide for a little while, Until indignation runs its course. (21) For behold YHVH is about to come out from His place To punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity; And the earth will reveal her bloodshed, and will no longer cover her slain.’** Are you going to be one who takes this serious warning lightly? Are you going to carry on as if the few problems in your life is much more important? This is why YHVH is going to take away from those who do not heed this warning, the things which they currently consider to be of greater importance. Those who know already that they are Israel, but who do not regard it enough to start keeping the Scripturally ordained Sabbath and Set-apart days of YHVH, will soon, because of the great tribulation come to their senses and turn to Him and His way. That is when the prophesy in Zechariah 8: 23, saying: **“Thus says YHVH of hosts, ‘In those days ten men from all**

***nations will grasp the garments of a Jew saying, "Let us go with you, for we have heard that Elohim is with you."", will come true.***

Many in Christianity do not know that if they turn to YHVH the one and only true Elohim, they too can become part of the Israel of Elohim. They have been deceived to believe that they all go to heaven when they die, where they will sit on clouds playing their harps and beholding the face of Elohim for all eternity. However, that is not true, as Yahshua confirmed in John 3: 13, saying: ***"And no one has ascended into heaven, but He who descended from heaven, even the Son of Man."*** Why do they want to go to heaven, if eventually heaven is coming down to earth? YHVH who is currently in heaven, will eventually come and dwell with us, as we read in Revelation 21: 1 - 3: ***'And I saw a new heaven and a new earth; for the first heaven and the first earth passed away, and there is no longer any sea. (2) And I saw the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from Elohim, made ready as a bride adorned for her husband. (3) And I heard a loud voice from the throne, saying, "Behold the tabernacle of Elohim is among men, and He shall dwell among them, and they shall be His people, and Elohim Himself shall be among them."*** We read in Revelation 21: 12 & 13 that the New Jerusalem will have only twelve gates, like this: ***'It had a great and high wall, with twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels; and names were written on them, which are those of the twelve tribes of the sons of Israel. (13) There were three gates on the east and three gates on the north and three gates on the south and three gates on the west.'*** Notice that there are no gates for Gentiles, Christians or any other religion for that matter. Only Israelites or those who become Israelites (as we read in Galatians 3: 26 – 29<sup>6</sup>, Galatians 6: 16<sup>7</sup> and Romans 9: 6 & 7<sup>8</sup>) will enter the New Jerusalem one day. Also notice that Judah and Benjamin being two of the twelve tribes of the original nation of Israel will also be there.

---

<sup>6</sup> ***'For you are all sons of Elohim through faith in Messiah Yahshua. For all of you who were immersed into Messiah have clothed yourselves with Messiah. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free man, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in Messiah Yahshua. And if you belong to Messiah, then you are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to promise.'***

<sup>7</sup> ***'And those who will walk by this rule (given in Romans 9: 6), peace and mercy be upon them, and upon the Israel of Elohim.'***

<sup>8</sup> ***'But it is not as though the word of Elohim has failed. For they are not all Israel who are descended from Israel; neither are they all children because they are Abraham's descendants, but; "THROUGH ISAAC YOUR DESCENDANTS WILL BE NAMED."' In saying this to Abraham, YHVH showed him (by circumcision) that some of us will be his children through promise and not necessarily through his bloodline.***

## **Chapter 4: What about the Noahite laws?**

There are two occasions mentioned in the Scriptures where Yahshua fed a multitude. We read about the first occasion in Mark 6: 31 – 44, as follows: ***‘And He (Yahshua) said to them (His disciples), “Come away by yourselves to a lonely place and rest a while.” (For there were many people coming and going, and they did not even have time to eat.) (32) And they went away in the boat to a lonely place by themselves. (33) And the people saw them going, and many recognized them, and they ran there together on foot from all the cities, and got there ahead of them. (34) And when He went ashore He saw a great multitude, and He felt compassion for them because they were like sheep without a shepherd; and He began to teach them many things. (35) And when it was already quite late, His disciples came up to Him and began saying, “The place is desolate and it is already quite late; (36) send them away so that they may go into the surrounding countryside and villages and buy themselves something to eat.” (37) But He answered and said to them, “You give them something to eat!” And they said to Him, “Shall we go and spend two hundred denarii on bread and give them something to eat?”(38) And He said to them, “How many loaves do you have? Go look!” And when they found out, they said, “Five and two fish.” (39) And He commanded them all to recline by groups on the green grass. (40) And they reclined in companies of hundreds and of fifties.(41) And He took the five loaves and the two fish, and looking up toward heaven, He blessed the food and broke the loaves and He kept giving them to the disciple to set before them; and He divided up the two fish among them all. (42) And they all ate and were satisfied. (43) And they picked up twelve full baskets of the broken pieces, and also of the fish. (44) And there were five thousand men who ate the loaves.’***

The second time is recorded in Mark 8: 1 – 21, like this: ***‘In those days again, when there was a great multitude and they had nothing to eat, He called His disciples and said to them, (2) “I feel compassion for the multitude because they have remained with Me now three days, and have nothing to eat; (3) and if I send them away hungry to their home, they will faint on the way; and some of them have come from a distance.”(4) And His disciples answered Him, “Where will anyone be able to find enough to satisfy these men with bread here in a desolate place?”(5) And He was asking them, “How many loaves do you have?” And they said. “Seven.” (6) And He directed the multitude to sit down on the ground; and taking the seven loaves, He gave thanks and broke them, and started giving them to His disciples to serve to them, and they served them to the multitude. (7) They also had a few small fish; and after He had blessed them, He ordered these to be served as well. (8) And they ate and were satisfied; and they picked up seven large baskets full of what was left over of the broken pieces. (9) And about four thousand were there; and He sent them away. (10) And immediately He entered the boat with His disciples, and came to the district of Dalmanutha. (11) And the Pharisees came out and began to argue with Him, seeking from Him a sign from heaven, to test Him. (12) And sighing deeply in His spirit, He said, “Why does this generation seek for a sign? Truly I say to you, no sign shall be given to this generation.” (13) And leaving them, He again embarked and went away to the other side. (14) And they had forgotten to take bread; and did not have more than one loaf in the boat with them. (15) And He was giving orders to them saying, “Watch out! Beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and the leaven of Herod.” (16) And they began to discuss with one another the fact that they had no bread. (17) And Yahshua, aware of this said to them, “Why do you discuss the fact that you have no bread? Do you not yet see or understand? Do you have a hardened heart? (18) HAVING EYES, DO YOU NOT SEE? AND HAVING EARS, DO YOU NOT HEAR? And do you not remember, (19) when I broke the five loaves for the five thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces you picked up” They said to Him, “Twelve.”(20) “And when I broke the seven for the four thousand, how many large baskets full of broken pieces did you pick up? And they said to Him, “Seven.” (21) And He was saying to them, “Do you not yet understand?”’***

Do we grasp what Yahshua was trying to get His disciples to understand? Was He saying to them that as long as they are with Him, they will never need to buy bread again? And why did He warn them about the leaven of the Pharisees? Looking at the two accounts during which time Yahshua fed the multitudes, we see that the first time, Yahshua broke five loaves of bread for five thousand. After they had eaten, twelve baskets of broken pieces were gathered. The second time Yahshua broke seven loaves for four thousand and after they had eaten, only seven baskets of broken pieces were gathered. What is there to understand in this, especially considering the warning to beware the leaven of the Pharisees? Yahshua warned them against the leaven of the Pharisees, because He knew at the time, as today that the Rabbinical Jews insist that believing Gentiles do not need to keep all of Torah (i.e. the 5 Books of Moses) like they have to. The Jews hold that so-called righteous believing Gentiles only need to keep the seven Noahite laws. Yahshua knew from the Torah that this was not true, as we read in Exodus 12: 49, ***“The same law shall apply to the native as to the stranger who sojourns among you.”*** A second witness to this is given in Numbers 9: 14 ***‘And if an alien sojourns among you and observes the Passover to YHVH, according to the statute of***

***the Passover and according to its ordinance, so he shall do; you shall have one statute, both for the alien and for the native of the land.'***

The two scriptural references above have to do with the keeping of the annual Passover. Going back to the original Passover recorded in Exodus 12: 48, we see that the statute that applies to both the native of the land and the alien, is as follows: ***'But if a stranger sojourns with you, and celebrates the Passover to YHVH, let all his males be circumcised, and then let him come near to celebrate it; and he shall be like a native of the land. But no uncircumcised person may eat of it.'*** However, reading in Numbers 15: 15 & 16, we notice that this is also in respect of all of Torah, as follows: ***'As for the assembly, there shall be one statute for you and for the alien who sojourns with you, a perpetual statute throughout your generations; as you are, so shall the alien be before YHVH. (16) There is to be one law and one ordinance for you and for the alien who sojourns with you.'*** A perpetual statute means that it is forever. When YHVH says something is forever, then He means forever. We read in Malachi 3: 6 that: ***"For I, YHVH, do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob, are not consumed."***

An often quoted scripture that seems to be in collaboration of the idea of the seven Noahite Laws is found in the Brit Chadashah, in Acts 15. Commencing in verse 1 of Acts 15, we notice that there was a dispute between Rav Shaul and Barnabas, about physical circumcision. However, in verse 2 we see that they determined that they together with certain others of them should go up to Jerusalem to the apostles and elders concerning this issue. We see that their decision to take the matter to the priests and Levites in Jerusalem is in accordance with Torah, found in Deuteronomy 17: 8 – 11, as follows: ***"If any case is too difficult for you to decide, between one kind of homicide or another, between one kind of lawsuit or another, and between one kind of assault or another, being cases of dispute in your courts, then you shall arise and go up to the place which YHVH your Elohim chooses. (9) So you shall come to the Levitical priest or the judge, who is in office in those days, and you shall inquire of them, and they will declare to you the verdict in the case. (10) And you shall do according to the terms of the verdict which they declare to you from that place which YHVH chooses; and you shall be careful to observe according to all that they teach you. (11) According to the terms of the law which they teach you, and according to the verdict which they tell you, you shall do; you shall not turn aside from the word which they declare to you, to the right or the left."***

We see in Acts 15: 6 that the elders and the apostles came together to consider whether circumcision was indeed required, when Gentile believers come to believe in Yahshua Messiah. We read Rav Kepha's reaction to the question at hand in Acts 15: 7 - 11, as follows: ***'And after there had been much debate Peter (Rav Kepha) stood up and said to them, "Brethren, you know that in the early days Elohim made a choice among you, that by my mouth the Gentiles should hear the word of the gospel and believe. (8) And Elohim, who knows the heart, bore witness to them, giving them the Set-apart Spirit, just as He also did to us (meaning Jewish believers) ;( 9) and He made no distinction between us and them, cleansing their hearts by faith. (10) Now Therefore why do you put Elohim to the test by placing upon the neck of the disciples a yoke which neither our fathers nor we have been able to bear? (11) But we believe that we are saved through the grace of the Master Yahshua, in the same way as they also are."***

In Acts 15: 13 – 21 we see that Rav Yaa'cov confirms that the Gentiles came to believe in Messiah as prophesied by the Prophet Amos, and gives his judgment as follows: ***'And after they stopped speaking, Yaa'cov answered, saying, "Brethren listen to me. (14) Simeon (Peter) has related how Elohim first concerned Himself about taking from among the Gentiles a people for His name. (15) And with this the words of the Prophets agree, just as it is written, (16) 'AFTER THESE THINGS I will return, AND I WILL REBUILD THE TABERNACLE OF DAVID WHICH HAS FALLEN, AND I WILL REBUILD ITS RUINS, AND I WILL RESTORE IT, (17) IN ORDER THAT THE REST OF MANKIND MAY SEEK YHVH, AND ALL THE GENTILES WHO ARE CALLED BY MY NAME,' (18) SAYS YHVH, WHO MAKES THESE THINGS KNOWN FROM OF OLD. (19) Therefore it is my judgment that we do not trouble those who are turning to Elohim from among the Gentiles, (20) but that we write to them that they abstain from things contaminated by idols and from fornication and from what is strangled and from blood. (21) For Moses from ancient generations has in every city those who preach him, since he is read in the synagogues every Sabbath."***

Why do so many of us assume that Acts 15 is talking about two different ways, in which a Jewish and an Ephraimite believer in Messiah are to articulate their faith in YHVH through Yahshua the Messiah? The reason for this is that most of us interpret that the so-called 'Old Testament' was written for 'them', and the so-called 'New Testament' was written for 'us'. Most reject what YHVH spoke through Moses and therefore interpret the Scriptures as two separate books. In order then to have the correct understanding of Acts 15, we need to take a Hebraic view of the Scriptures and understand how the Torah and the Prophets relate to

what is written in the New Covenant. We read Yahshua's own words in this regard in John 5: 43 – 47, as follows: ***"I have come in My Father's name, and you do not receive Me; if another shall come in his own name, you will receive him"***<sup>9</sup>. (44) ***How can you believe, when you receive glory from one another, and you do not seek the esteem that is from the one and only Elohim?*** (45) ***Do not think that I will accuse you before the Father; the one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have set your hope.*** (46) ***For if you believed Moses, you would believe Me; for he wrote of Me.*** (47) ***But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe My words?*** Reading this, most believe that it is aimed at our Jewish brothers; however, verse 47 makes it clear, that we cannot believe Yahshua's words, if we do not believe the writings of Moses.

The Torah and the prophets foretold the coming of Messiah, that there would be an end of our exile and that Yahshua the Messiah will re-gather both houses of Israel and return them back to the land of Israel. Yahshua tells his Jewish audience here that one reason for Him to die is to eventually re-gather both Judah and Ephraim. We read accordingly in John 10: 16 & 17, Yahshua saying: ***"And I have other sheep which are not of this fold; I must bring them also, and they shall hear My voice; and they shall become one flock with one shepherd.*** (17) ***For this reason the Father loves Me, because I lay down My life that I may take it up again."*** In addition we read the following in John 11: 49 – 52, ***'But a certain one of them, Caiaphas, who was high priest that year, said to them, "You know nothing at all, (50) nor do you take into account that it is expedient for you that one man should die for the people, and that the whole nation should not perish."*** (51) ***Now this he did not say on his own initiative; but being high priest that year, he prophesied that Yahshua was going to die for the nation, (52) and not for the nation (Judah) only, but that He might also gather together into one the children of Elohim who are scattered abroad*** (namely Ephraim).'

Immediately prior to Yahshua's ascension to heaven forty days after His resurrection, the apostles who He has chosen asked Him in Acts 1: 6, as follows: ***'And so when they had come together, they were asking Him saying, "Master, is it at this time You are restoring the kingdom to Israel?"*** Yahshua said to them in verse 8 of Acts 1, ***'but you shall receive power when the Set-apart Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be My witnesses both in Jerusalem, and in all of Judea and Samaria, and even to the remotest part of the earth*** (including the USA, the UK, the Falkland Islands as well as South Africa).<sup>9</sup> Yahshua commanded His disciples in Matthew 28: 19 & 20, saying: ***"Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, immersing them in the name* (one name) ***of the Father and the Son and the Set-apart Spirit, (20) teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."*** The commission is very clear: All nations are to be taught the Torah that Yahshua taught His disciples. It is therefore clear that all nations are to be taught to obey the commandments of Elohim and everything taught by Yahshua, whilst He was on earth.**

The decision by the elders and the apostles in Jerusalem regarding the dispute about circumcision in Acts 15, was that, because repentance is a process, new believers need to be taught to abstain from meats offered to idols, from blood, from things strangled, and from fornication, before they are taught about the other requirements of Torah, such as the Sabbath, The Feast Days of Elohim, Clean and unclean foods, the wearing of Tzit-tzit, and eventually circumcision. We read in Acts 15: 21 that they will learn these additional requirements as they attend synagogues near them, or through internet ministries such as ours. This is very similar to our father Abraham. It was only after he came to believe in YHVH (as is recorded in Genesis 15: 6) that he was circumcised, as we read in Genesis 17: 24, as follows: ***'Now Abraham was ninety-nine years old when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.'*** In a previous sermon, I showed that a believer in Messiah is an heir of the promise that was made with Abraham. This is recorded in Galatians 3: 29, as follows: ***'And if you belong to Messiah, then you are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to promise.'*** Whilst new believers are not circumcised, they are not joined to the covenant made to Abraham, and are therefore not a member of the family of Abraham, or the commonwealth of Israel. In other words once a Gentile or Israelite who thinks he is a Gentile is returning to faith in YHVH, by having his heart circumcised (himself immersed), forsaking idols, abstaining from fornication, blood and things strangled (meaning he is beginning to obey Torah), then he will learn to follow the rest of the Torah commandments, as he attends services on the Sabbath, or study teachings like ours on the internet.

The ruling of James (Rav Yaa'cov) in Acts 15 is in agreement with the rulings of the Pharisaic Rabbis followed by Orthodox Jews of today. New believers should eventually follow all the requirements of the Torah, but is only required to follow the essential four listed in Acts 15: 20 at the beginning of their walk with Elohim. If we understand the ruling of Acts 15 from a Hebraic viewpoint, we will know that it does not

<sup>9</sup> One example of this is how many in our faith accept teachings from the Karaites and others regarding the calendar, much more easily than from the Word of Elohim.

contradict what Yahshua taught in Matthew 5: 19, saying: ***'Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments, and so teaches others, shall be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.'***

To conclude I would like to quote here from a Torah Portion which I received from Rabbi Mordecai Mitchell, a board member of the Union of Nazarene Yisraelite Congregations<sup>10</sup> in January this year, as follows: *'While the Union of Nazarene Yisraelite Congregations has made available an abundance of teachings proving the Scriptural basis for such practices as Tzith-tzith, head coverings for Messianic men, and the necessity of circumcision, I believe the reason for the rejection of these beliefs, and for the latent anti-Semitism that is apparent in some groups, is due to the fact that many people refuse to see the Word of Yahweh for what it really is.'* What we need to remember with humility, is that YHVH is the potter and we are the clay; ours is not to reason why – ours is to do, or die. Selah!

**Acknowledgement:** I learnt many of the facts presented in this sermon, a few years ago from Eddie Chumney<sup>11</sup> when he visited us here in Port Elizabeth. It might not be his exact words, but this is my personal understanding of his teaching.

---

<sup>10</sup> You may obtain weekly Torah Portions from The Union of Nazarene Yisraelite Congregations by subscribing on their website at: [www.2house.org](http://www.2house.org) You may also contact Rav Mitchell by e-mail at: [yoel@arm-tek.net](mailto:yoel@arm-tek.net)

<sup>11</sup> Eddie Chumney is the leader of Hebraic Heritage Ministries Int'l. Their website is at [www.hebroots.org](http://www.hebroots.org)



## **Chapter 5: The two lampstands – who are they?**

I have recently been asked by a fellow believer, who the two witnesses, mentioned in Revelation 11 are? I do not normally undertake to answer questions like that, as I do not consider myself qualified to do so. I regard myself as a teacher of the Scriptures **but not** as a prophet or an apostle. By this coming Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkoth) I will have been keeping the Feast Days of YHVH for 33 years, and have studied the same for a few more. And as Rav Shaul puts it in Hebrews 5: 12, after that number of years, someone ought to be a teacher. During my working life I worked as an Organization and Methods Officer (involving improving organizational structures and work methods used) and Business Analyst and have been investigating situations and preparing and presenting reports and lectures for most of my working life. I have accordingly also been trained in public speaking and to present reports and lectures at meetings and to students. I also provided Management Information to the Rectorate (Management) at the Port Elizabeth Technikon which later merged with the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University for almost twelve years and lectured/tutored Management Information Systems and Computer Studies for the MBA and other groups, for a few years. From the sermon notes that I have been sending out from time to time, it should be evident that I am used to preparing/delivering lecture material and reports for discussions/lectures (usually) lasting between 45 minutes to an hour.

We read in Ephesians 4: 11, ***‘And He gave some as apostles, and some as prophets, and some as evangelists, and some as pastors and teachers, (12) for the equipping of the saints for the work of service, to the building of the body of Messiah.’*** In answer to the commission given us by Messiah in Matthew 28: 19 & 20, I consider myself as one who after having practiced Torah, for more than thirty years, qualified to immerse new believers and teach them to observe all the things that Yahshua taught me through His word and the various teachers who instructed me in the teachings of YHVH/Yahshua. Since my early retirement in June 2006, I have written/delivered more than ninety sermons, which I compiled into four books. So even though I may teach the doctrines of our Nazarene Jewish faith, I will only venture an opinion on who I believe the two witnesses might be, at this time.

We know that there have been a lot of speculation as to who the two witnesses in Revelation 11, are. Some say that they are Moses and Elijah, whilst others say it could be Enoch and Elijah, or even John (one of Yahshua’s disciples, who are allegedly still walking the earth) and Elijah. Let us turn to the Scriptures to see what they have to say about the two witnesses. Commencing in Revelation we read in Chapter 11: 3 – 12, ***“And I will grant authority to my two witnesses, and they will prophesy for twelve hundred and sixty days (3½ years), clothed in sackcloth. (4) These are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before YHVH of the earth. (5) And if anyone desires to harm them, fire proceeds out of their mouth and devours their enemies; and if anyone would desire to harm them in this manner he must be killed (this is similar to the fire that Elijah send down on the two arrogant captains of fifty sent by king Ahab to summon him to come and tell the king, whether he will survive his illness or not in 2 Kings 1). (6) These have the power to shut up the sky in order that rain may not fall during the days of their prophesying; and they have power over the waters to turn them into blood, and to smite the earth with every plague, as often as they desire (similar to the plagues unleashed by YHVH through Moses). (7) And when they have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up out of the abyss will make war with them, and overcome them and kill them. (8) And their dead bodies will lie in the street of the great city which mystically is called Sodom and Egypt, where also their Master was crucified. (9) And those from the people and tribes and tongues and nations will look at their dead bodies for three and a half days, and will not permit their dead bodies to be laid in a tomb. (10) And those who dwell on the earth will rejoice over them and make merry; and they will send gifts to one another, because these two prophets tormented those who dwell on the earth. (11) And after the three and a half days the breath of life from Elohim came into them, and they stood on their feet; and great fear fell upon those who were beholding them. (12) And they heard a loud voice from heaven saying to them, “Come up here.” And they went up into heaven in the cloud, and their enemies beheld them.”***

From the quoted Scriptures, we see that there are two witnesses. The question is: Are they two people, or perhaps two groups? The Scriptures do not categorically state that these are two people. It is my personal opinion that these are in fact two groups that both uphold the Torah. However, the second group also calls on the Set-apart Name of YHVH. The first group represents Moses, who teaches a return to the Torah of the Elohim, including His Set-apart Days; and the second group represents Elijah, who teaches that YHVH is our Elohim. Both these groups teach obedience to YHVH and His Torah and will for that reason be hated by the people of the world. We are told about the restoration of our hearts to the faith of our fathers in the faith in Malachi 4: 4 – 6, as follows: ***“Remember the law of Moses My servant, even the statutes and ordinances which I commanded him in Horeb for all Israel. (5) Behold, I am going to send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and terrible day of YHVH. (6) And he will restore the hearts of the fathers to their children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite***

**the land with a curse.”** From the underlined section, we see the timing of the fulfillment of this prophesy. It is about to occur just prior to and as Yahshua our Messiah returns.

Like us, both Moses and Elijah are related to Abraham through faith. The two witnesses will be called out ones from both the ‘so-called’ gentiles (the Israelites who lost their identity, because of idolatry) and Jews. We read in Romans 9: 23 – 27: **‘And He did so in order that He might make known the riches of His glory upon vessels of mercy, which he prepared beforehand for glory, (24) even us, whom He also called, not from among Jews only, but also from among Gentiles. (25) As He says also in Hosea, “I WILL CALL THOSE WHO WERE NOT MY PEOPLE, ‘MY PEOPLE,’ AND HER WHO WAS NOT BELOVED, ‘BELOVED.’”(26) “AND IT SHALL BE THAT IN THE PLACE WHERE IT WAS SAID TO THEM, ‘YOU ARE NOT MY PEOPLE,’ THERE THEY SHALL BE CALLED SONS OF THE LIVING ELOHIM.” (27) And Isaiah cries out concerning Israel, “THOUGH THE NUMBER OF THE SONS OF ISRAEL BE AS THE SAND OF THE SEA, IT IS THE REMNANT THAT WILL BE SAVED.”’**

Many of the modern day descendants of Israel have become so arrogant, that they believe that by rejecting Yahshua our Jewish brothers are lost forever. However, we should not forget that Yahshua himself said in Matthew 15: 24, **“I was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.”** This means that Yahshua came specifically for the lost ten tribes of Israel, and not for the Jews. We like the prodigal son have left our heavenly Father, whilst they remained loyal to Him. However, YHVH has blinded them to the fact that Yahshua is the Messiah for almost 2000 years now. The reason for their blinding is given in Romans 11: 1 – 12, as follows: **‘I say then, Elohim has not rejected His people, has He? May it never be! For I too am an Israelite, a descendant of Abraham, of the tribe of Benjamin. (2) Elohim has not rejected His people whom He foreknew. Or do you not know what the Scripture says in the passage about Elijah, how he pleads with Elohim against Israel? (3) “YHVH, THEY HAVE KILLED THY PROPHETS, THEY HAVE TORN DOWN THINE ALTARS, AND I ALONE AM LEFT, AND THEY ARE SEEKING MY LIFE.” (4) But what is the divine response to him? “I HAVE KEPT for Myself SEVEN THOUSAND MEN WHO HAVE NOT BOWED THE KNEE TO BAAL.” (5) In the same way then, there has also come to be at the present time a remnant according to Elohim’s gracious choice. (6) But if it is by grace, it is no longer on the basis of works, otherwise grace is no longer grace. (7) What then? That which Israel is seeking for, it has not obtained, but those who were chosen obtained it, and the rest were hardened; (8) just as it is written, “ELOHIM GAVE THEM A SPIRIT OF STUPOR, EYES TO SEE NOT AND EARS TO HEAR NOT, DOWN TO THIS VERY DAY.” (9) And David says, “LET THEIR TABLE BECOME A SNARE AND A TRAP, AND A STUMBLING BLOCK AND A RETRIBUTION TO THEM. (10) LET THEIR EYES BE DARKENED TO SEE NOT, AND BEND THEIR BACKS FOR EVER.” (11) I say then, they did not stumble so as to fall, did they? May it never be! But by their transgression salvation has come to the Gentiles, to make them jealous. (12) Now if their transgression be riches for the world and their failure be riches for the Gentiles, how much more will their fulfillment be!’** The point is that YHVH wants both houses to repent and return to Torah.

Continuing on in Romans 11: 15 – 21, we read: **‘For if their rejection be the reconciliation of the world, what will their acceptance be but life from the dead? (16) And if the first piece of dough be Set-apart, the lump is also; and if the root be Set-apart, the branches are too. (17) But if some of the branches were broken off, and you, being a wild olive, were grafted in among them and became partaker with them of the rich root of the olive tree, (18) do not be arrogant toward the branches; but if you are arrogant, remember that it is not you who supports the root, but the root supports you. (19) You will say then, “Branches were broken off so that I might be grafted in.” (20) Quite right, they were broken off for their unbelief, but you stand by your faith. Do not be conceited, but fear; (21) for if Elohim did not spare the natural branches, neither will He spare you.’** The purpose of us being called at this time is to make our Jewish brothers jealous. The last thing that we can afford to do is to be arrogant. By blinding the Jews to Yahshua at this time, YHVH is calling the remnant from the lost ten tribes, so that we may provoke our Jewish brothers to jealousy, by keeping the same Sabbath, Set-apart Days, kosher and other Torah laws that they do.

We have seen an example of what will happen to our Jewish brothers, when Yahshua returns in John 20, after His resurrection in verses 25 to 29, as follows: **‘The other disciples therefore were saying to him, “We have seen the Master!” But he said to them, “Unless I shall see in His hands the imprints of the nails, and put my finger into the place of the nails, and put my hand into His side, I will not believe.” (26) And after eight days again His disciples were inside, and Thomas with them. Yahshua came, the doors having been shut, and stood in their midst, and said, “Peace be with you.” (27) Then He said to Thomas, “Reach here your finger, and see My hands; and reach here your hand, and put it into My side; and be not unbelieving, but believing.” (28) Thomas answered and said to Him, “My Master and my Elohim!” (29) Yahshua said to him, “Because you have seen Me, have you believed? Blessed are they who did not see, and yet believed.”** Note that Yahshua did not rebuke Thomas for calling Him

Elohim. Instead He said that we who have not seen Him and believe that He is our Elohim, are indeed blessed.

We know that this is exactly what will happen to our Jewish brothers at Messiah's return to come and rule us from Jerusalem. We read accordingly in Zechariah 12: 9 – 14, ***"And it will come about in that day that I will set about to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem. (10) And I will pour out on the house of David and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace and of supplication, so that they will look on Me whom they have pierced; and they will mourn for Him, as one mourns for an only son, and they will weep bitterly over Him, like the bitter weeping over a first-born. (11) In that day there will be great mourning in Jerusalem, like the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the plain of Megiddo. (12) And the land will mourn, every family by itself; the family of the house of David by itself, and their wives by themselves; the family of the house of Nathan by itself, and their wives by themselves; (13) the family of the house of Levi by itself, and their wives by themselves; the family of the Shimeites by itself, and their wives by themselves; (14) all the families that remain, every family by itself, and their wives by themselves."*** This will happen on Yom Teruah (also known as Rosh Hashanah), when Yahshua returns, finding our Jewish brothers observing this important Feast Day in their synagogues, with the men separate from their wives, as per their custom.

What will the two witnesses; one a Torah observant group and the other, a group honoring the Set-apart Names of Elohim, testify? We read in Isaiah 43: 10 – 11, ***"You are My witnesses," declares YHVH, "And My servant whom I have chosen, In order that you may know and believe Me, And understand that I am He. Before Me there was no Elohim formed, And there will be none after Me. (11) "I, even I, am YHVH; And there is no savior besides Me."*** We as the remnant of Israel are with our observant Jewish brothers, the witnesses that YHVH is our Elohim, that He is our savior and that there is no other elohim, besides Him. The two witnesses are the called out Israelites and Jews that will be preaching that YHVH is One; that His Torah are binding forever; and that YHVH is our Savior.

We are commanded by Yahshua to preach the gospel of the kingdom of Elohim to the entire world as a witness to all nations, and then the end shall come, as per Matthew 24: 14. However, we must understand that by doing so, it will result in our persecution, as we read in Matthew 24: 9, ***"Then they will deliver you to tribulation, and will kill you, and you will be hated by all nations on account of My name."*** Ask yourself: Am I prepared to die for my faith (belief) in the Name of Yahshua? I have seen Christian's vehemently opposed to the name Yahshua, stopping a believer in an opening prayer at a worship service, to refrain from using 'that name' immediately. Yes, we are going to be persecuted for using the Set-apart Names of YHVH (and Yahshua), as well as for keeping the Torah of YHVH. Moses recorded the Torah for us and Elijah showed Israel, that YHVH is our Elohim.

We are according to Romans 11 also known as an olive tree. Our job function at this time is to keep the Torah teachings of YHVH to the best of our ability. We ought to be thankful that He has at this time blinded our Jewish brothers, allowing those whom He has called from the lost ten tribes, to share our place in the olive tree. We are also warned in Romans 11 not to be conceited, but to fear, lest YHVH break us off as well. If we perform the function that we were called for well, then all Israel shall be saved as we read in Romans 11: 25 - 27, ***'For I do not want you, brethren to be uninformed of this mystery, lest you be wise in your own estimation (those believers who believe that they have been given the authority of the Sanhedrin, to determine the Set-apart Days of YHVH, because our Jewish brothers have 'lost it'), that a partial hardening has happened to Israel (talking specifically about the Jews in this case) until the fullness of the Gentiles (those of the lost ten tribes who have forgotten that they are Israel) has come in: (26) and thus all Israel will be saved; just as it is written, "THE DELIVERER WILL COME FROM ZION, HE WILL REMOVE UNGODLINESS FROM JACOB."*** (This is talking about Yahshua being a Jew, who removed the indebtedness, for breaking the Torah of YHVH, from both houses of Israel.) (27) ***"AND THIS IS MY COVENANT WITH THEM, WHEN I TAKE AWAY THEIR SINS."***

As part of the olive tree, we need to bear fruit, as we read in Matthew 7: 16 – 19, ***"You will know them by their fruits. Grapes are not gathered from thorn bushes, nor figs from thistles, are they? (17) Even so, every good tree bears good fruit; but the bad tree bears bad fruit. (18) A good tree cannot produce bad fruit, nor can a bad tree produce good fruit. (19) Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire."*** We need to take our calling very seriously – we are being judged at this time. Revelation 11: 4 also talks about two lampstands that stand before YHVH on the earth. What is the purpose of a lampstand. Lampstands are supposed to give light. We read in Matthew 5: 14 – 16, Yahshua saying: ***"You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden. (15) Nor do men light a lamp, and put it under the peck-measure, but on the lampstand; and it gives light to all who are in the house. (16) Let your light shine before men in such a way that they may glorify your Father who is in heaven."*** Many in our faith have because of their past experience with false religion, become so inward

turned, that they prefer to practice their faith in the privacy of their own homes. The problem with doing so is that they are not obeying Yahshua our Messiah, by letting their lights shine.

We read further in Revelation 11: 6 that the two witnesses will have the same powers that both Elijah and Moses had. Like Elijah, the two witnesses will withhold rain during the days of their prophesying, and like Moses they will smite the earth with every plague, as often as they desire. These two witnesses will not be Moses and Elijah, but will be in the spirit of Moses and Elijah, and will eventually pay with their lives. This will all occur prior to the terrible day of YHVH. The two witnesses will be killed by the beast that comes out of the abyss. They will lie in the street of the city called Egypt and Sodom. I do not think that this is talking about Jerusalem. At Passover we came out of Egypt, which is a symbol of sin. Sodom is also a symbol of sin. The cities in which most Israelites dwell today are evil, and no better than Sodom was at the time of Abraham. It is for that reason that I believe the dead bodies of the two groups or two witnesses will lie in Israelite cities throughout the world. They will be killed but will be resurrected and taken up into heaven after 3½ days. They will be with the ones who had come off victorious from the beast and from his image, standing on the sea of glass, holding harps of Elohim, mentioned in Revelation 15.

When Yahshua returns, the dead in Messiah will be resurrected as we read in Matthew 24: 29 & 30, as follows: ***“But immediately after the tribulation of those days THE SUN WILL BE DARKENED, AND THE MOON WILL NOT GIVE ITS LIGHT, AND THE STARS WILL FALL from the sky, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken, (30) and then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky, and then all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the SON OF MAN COMING ON THE CLOUDS OF THE SKY with power and great glory.*** We also read in Zechariah 14, that when Elohim comes to the earth He will bring back the Set-apart ones with Him. These are the two witnesses who went to heaven, as well as those resurrected and changed at Messiah’s return. Continuing on in Matthew 24: 31, we read: ***“And He will send forth His angels with A GREAT TRUMPET and THEY WILL GATHER TOGETHER HIS elect from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other.”***

Let’s get back to the question: Who are the two witnesses? I believe the two witnesses are two groups representing Moses and Elijah, i.e. teaching Torah and honoring the names of Elohim. In short we could be part of the two witnesses, and it is for that reason that we need to take our calling very seriously. What a tremendous honor, to be part of the two groups, known as the two witnesses. We need to let our light shine so that people may see it and glorify our heavenly Father!

## **Chapter 6: The hundred and forty four thousand.**

When studying the book of Revelation we notice that it mentions the hundred and forty four thousand in both chapters 7 and 14. As stated in my last sermon, I am not a prophet or an apostle, but I will venture an opinion on who I believe the hundred and forty four thousand mentioned in both these chapters are. As with many topics mentioned in the book of Revelation, there has been much speculation about the identity of the one hundred and forty-four thousand. However, we should not take for granted that these two groups are the same. Comparing the 144,000 in Revelation chapter 7 with those in chapter 14, we notice that there are important differences between the two groups. For comparative purposes, let's quote Revelation 7: 2- 4: ***'And I saw another angel ascending from the rising of the sun, having the seal of the living Elohim; and he cried out with a loud voice to the four angels to whom it was granted to harm the earth and the sea, (3) saying, "Do not harm the earth or the sea or the trees, until we have sealed the bond-servants of our Elohim on the foreheads." (4) And I heard the number of those who were sealed, one hundred and forty-four thousand sealed from every tribe of the sons of Israel.'***

As well as Revelation 14: 1- 5: ***'And I looked, and behold, the Lamb was standing on Mount Zion, and with Him one hundred and forty-four thousand, having His name and the name of His Father written on their foreheads. (2) And I heard a voice from heaven, like the sound of many waters and like the sound of loud thunder, and the voice which I heard was like the sound of harpists playing on their harps. (3) And they sang a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the elders; and no one could learn the song except the one hundred and forty-four thousand who had been purchased from the earth. (4) These are the ones who have not been defiled with woman for they have kept themselves chaste. These are the ones who follow the Lamb wherever He goes. These have been purchased from among men as first fruits to Elohim and to the Lamb. (5) And no lie was found in their mouth; they are blameless.'***

There are marked differences between the two groups as to when they arrive on the scene and their descriptions. The group in chapter 7 are from the twelve tribes of Israel, whilst the group in chapter 14, ***'have been purchased from among men as first fruits to Elohim and the Lamb.'*** The group in chapter 7 is sealed during the sixth and seventh seals to protect them from the wrath of Elohim, during the trumpet judgments.

We read about this sealing in Ephesians 1: 13 & 14, as follows: ***'In Him, you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of salvation – having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, (14) who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to redemption of Elohim's own possession, to the praise of His glory.'*** The sealing will be for physical protection, similar to the protection the Israelites had from the 10<sup>th</sup> plague. The called out ones are sealed with the seal of the Ruach HaKodesh when they are immersed in Yahshua's Name and the Elders have laid hands upon them. We read in 1 Thessalonians 5: 9, ***'For Elohim has not destined us for wrath, but for obtaining salvation through our Master Yahshua Messiah.'*** A second witness to this may be found in Yahshua's prayer in John 17: 15, as follows: ***"I do not ask Thee to take them out of the world, but to keep them from the evil one."*** This gives us the assurance, that if we make it, we will be protected from the wrath of Elohim and from Satan, prior to his removal from the earth, for a thousand years.

However, this does not mean that we will be protected from physical harm. We read Yahshua's own words in Matthew 24: 9 – 13, stating: ***"Then they will deliver you to tribulation, and will kill you, and you will be hated by all nations on account of My name. (10) And at that time many will fall away and will deliver up one another and hate one another. (11) And many false prophets will arise and will mislead many. (12) And because lawlessness is increased, most people's love will grow cold. (Looking at the world around us, we realize that this has already happened and we need to be careful as this could also rub off on us!) (13) But the one who endures to the end, he shall be saved."*** If we stay strong and endure until the end we will be saved. We might die physically, but will be saved Spiritually. This viewpoint is obviously not an earthly one, but an eternal one as only Elohim can see at this time. These are the remnant of called out believers according to Elohim's choice (as per Romans 11: 5).

Many have speculated that the 144, 000 mentioned in Revelation 7 are Jewish, who will come to believe in Yahshua, when He returns on Yom Teruah. They do so because they do not understand or believe that 10 of the twelve tribes of Israel are not Jewish. These are usually Messianic Jews or prophets from Israelite countries like the USA, the UK, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa who do not know that they are from the lost ten tribes of Israel, because they have lost their identity and are no longer aware that they are Israelites. Nonetheless, I believe that the group in Revelation 7 is made up of all twelve tribes. We are the modern day Messianic/Nazarene Israelites/Jews called out by Father YHVH to become first fruits when our Messiah Yahshua returns. We saw previously that the 144, 000 in Revelation 14, was never ***'defiled with***

**woman**'. This does not mean that these are people who are celibate like the priests in the Catholic Church, who were never married or forbid marriage.

We should also not after reading Revelation 14, assume that in order to be part of this group, we ought to prohibit marriage. This is not how YHVH made us. From the beginning YHVH purposed us to get married and live a normal family life as stated in Genesis 2: 24. In spite of this we read in 1 Timothy 4: 1 – 8: ***'But the Spirit explicitly says that in later times some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to deceitful spirits and doctrines of demons, (2) by means of hypocrisy of liars seared in their own conscience as with a branding iron, (3) men who forbid marriage and advocate abstaining from foods, which Elohim has created to be gratefully shared in by those who believe and know the truth.*** (This is specifically talking about groups like the Catholic Church who forbid marriage and abstain from eating meat on Fridays – as they falsely believe it to be the day on which the Savior was impaled.) (4) ***For everything created by Elohim is good, and nothing is to be rejected, if it is received with gratitude;*** (5) ***for it is sanctified by means of the word of Elohim and prayer.*** (At this point our Christian brothers usually leap in saying, 'You see, since YHVH created pork, Cray fish and lobsters, we may eat such things, as long as we are thankful for it in prayer.' However, they miss the point, because they totally ignore the underlined section in verse 5. We need to ask ourselves: What is sanctified by the word of Elohim? YHVH has sanctified or Set-apart only the foods indicated as edible in Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14 {as well as in Leviticus 7: 25 – 27}. The rest is **not** fit for human consumption, even if we pray over it.)

In Revelation 14: 4 as in all Scriptural prophesy the term ***'women'*** refers to religions or more specifically the churches of this world. This is therefore not talking about 'so-called' virgin men, but about Jews who never got involved in the other religions of the world. They may be compared to the son who never left the father, in the parable of the prodigal son. O yes, they were blinded by YHVH, but it was done so that we, the called out ones from the lost tribes of Israel may come in, before all Israel will be saved, as we read in Romans 11: 25 - 27, ***'For I do not want you, brethren to be uninformed of this mystery, lest you be wise in your own estimation, that a partial hardening has happened to Israel*** (talking specifically about the Jews) ***until the fullness of the Gentiles*** (those of the lost ten tribes who have lost their identity) ***has come in: (26) and thus all Israel will be saved; just as it is written, "THE DELIVERER WILL COME FROM ZION, HE WILL REMOVE UNGODLINESS FROM JACOB."*** (27) ***"AND THIS IS MY COVENANT WITH THEM, WHEN I TAKE AWAY THEIR SINS."***

Some might at this point interrupt, saying that Revelation 14: 4 cannot be talking about our Jewish brothers, since it says that they do not presently ***'follow the Lamb wherever He goes.'*** However, when Yahshua returns on Yom Teruah (or Rosh Hashanah) our Jewish brothers will repent and also accept Him as their Messiah, as we read in Zechariah 12: 9 & 10, ***"And it will come about in that day that I will set about to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem. (10) And I will pour out on the house of David and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace and of supplication, so that they will look on Me whom they have pierced; and they will mourn for Him, as one mourns for an only son, and they will weep bitterly over Him, like the bitter weeping over a first-born."***

Our Jewish brothers will like Thomas believe in the resurrected Yahshua as we read in John 20: 25 - 28, ***'The other disciples therefore were saying to him*** (Thomas), ***"We have seen the Master!" But he said to them, "Unless I shall see in His hands the imprints of the nails, and put my finger into the place of the nails, and put my hand into His side, I will not believe."*** (26) ***And after eight days again His disciples were inside, and Thomas with them. Yahshua came, the doors having been shut, and stood in their midst, and said, "Peace be with you."*** (27) ***Then He said to Thomas, "Reach here your finger, and see My hands; and reach here your hand, and put it into My side; and be not unbelieving, but believing."*** (28) ***Thomas answered and said to Him, "My Master and my Elohim!"*** After accepting Yahshua, they will be immersed in His saving name, and be given eternal life. Yahshua is the door and eventually all will have to go through Him to enter the kingdom of Elohim. We read accordingly in Philippians 2: 9 – 11: ***'Therefore also Elohim highly exalted Him, and bestowed on Him the name which is above every name, (10) that at the name of Yahshua EVERY KNEE SHOULD BOW, of those who are in heaven, and on earth, and under the earth, (11) and that every tongue should confess that Yahshua Messiah is Master'<sup>12</sup>, to the esteem of Elohim the Father.'***

I know that this sermon might be viewed as highly controversial, because I believe that the first fruits, will consist of a larger proportion from the house of Judah than from the house of Israel. The group consisting of the twelve tribes in Revelation 7, will be made up of at least 24, 000 from the tribe of Judah and Benjamin, (the ones) known as the Messianic or Nazarene Jews today. In addition there will be 144, 000 in Revelation

---

<sup>12</sup> MarYah in Aramaic- means YHVH. The quoted Scripture is a portion from Philippians 2: 5 – 11 known as the original Nazarene hymn.

14 from the house of Judah, whereas those from the house of Israel mentioned in Revelation 7, will only number 120, 000.

However, this is in line with what we read in Isaiah 66: 20 & 21, as follows: ***“Then they shall bring all your brethren from all the nations as a grain offering to YHVH, on horses, in chariots, in litters, on mules, and on camels, to My Set-apart mountain Jerusalem,” says YHVH, “just as the sons of Israel bring their grain offering in a clean vessel to the house of YHVH. (21) “I will also take some of them for priests and for Levites.” says YHVH.***

The group in Revelation 14 are in heaven, before the gospel is preached. They are sitting before the four living creatures and the elders, singing a new song which only they may possibly learn. This again is aligned with what we see Zechariah 12: 7, ***“YHVH also will save the tents of Judah first in order that the esteem (glory) of the house of David and the esteem of the inhabitants of Jerusalem may not be magnified above Judah.”*** The group in Revelation 7 are supernaturally protected during the 3½ years of the tribulation. The group in Revelation 14 is the male child described in Revelation 12. The male child is snatched up to heaven, out of Satan’s way. This is confirmed in Micah 5: 3, as follows: ***‘Therefore He will give them up until the time when she who is in labor has borne a child, Then the remainder of His brethren will return to the sons of Israel.***

Who are the two groups of 144 thousand? They are people purchased as first fruits to Elohim and the Lamb. The first fruits are marked for protection during the Great Tribulation. Nevertheless, we also notice that there will be a great multitude, which could not be counted, from every nation and tribes and tongues, standing before the throne. In verse 14 of Revelation 7, we see that they are the ones who came out of the great tribulation and have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb. These are people who knew Elohim but were never fully committed to the way of YHVH. They did not keep the commandments, despite knowing that it should be kept. The great tribulation stirs them to action and they finally accept that Yahshua also died for them and they are immersed in His saving Name. These could be some of our children and friends, who believed that they were Israel, but never had enough faith to do anything about it. Presently there is a lot of arrogance, and the ‘intelligent’ in our community boast about having fathomed out the so-called ‘Biblical’ calendar. They absolutely refuse to accept what is proven by many witnesses in the Scriptures, about Judah being the Lawgiver of Elohim<sup>13</sup>. However, when the soon coming tribulation takes full effect, the prophesy in Zechariah 8: 23, saying: ***“Thus says YHVH of hosts, ‘In those days ten men from all the nations (the lost ten tribes of Israel) will grasp the garment of a Jew saying, “Let us go with you, for we have heard that Elohim is with you.””***, will finally come to fruition.

There might be areas in this sermon which does not quite add up. The reason being as stated in 1 Corinthians 13: 9: ***‘For we know in part, and we prophesy in part.’*** Talking about the world to come, 1 Corinthians 13: 12 confirms: ***‘For now we see in a mirror dimly, but then face to face; now I know in part, but then I shall know fully just as I also have been fully known.’*** At this time only YHVH Himself knows exactly how things will finally come together. Whether the scenario sketched in this sermon come about or not, we have the assurance that if we overcome and make it into the Kingdom of Elohim, we will become kings and priests ruling under Yahshua on the earth. We read about this in Revelation 5: 9 & 10 ***‘And they sang a new song saying, “Worthy art Thou to take the book, and to break its seals; for thou wast slain, and didst purchase for Elohim with Thy blood men from every tribe and tongue and people and nation. And Thou hast made them to be a kingdom and priests to our Elohim; and they will reign upon the earth.”’*** It is also confirmed in Revelation 2: 26 as follows: ***‘And he who overcomes, and he who keeps My deeds until the end, to him I will give authority over the nations.’***

However, at this point in time, Satan wants us to believe that we are losing the battle. Nevertheless, we are assured that YHVH wants everyone of us to succeed, as we read in 2 Peter 3: 9, ***‘YHVH is not slow about His promise, as some count slowness, but is patient toward you, not wishing for any to perish but for all to come to repentance.’*** But it is important that we continue to practice righteousness by keeping the Sabbath and Feast Days of Elohim as given in Leviticus 23; praying and studying regularly (as these are the only two ways of staying in contact with our heavenly Father); eating only kosher foods; and repenting and returning to Torah, as soon as we have sinned. In addition we need to remain positive and remind ourselves on a regular basis, saying: “I am overcoming, I will be made a pillar in the temple of My Elohim and Yahshua will write upon me the Name of Elohim” as is recorded in Revelation 3: 12.

---

<sup>13</sup> Romans 3: 1 – 4; Romans 9: 1 – 5; Psalm 147: 19 & 20; Nahum 1: 15; Malachi 2: 1 – 8; Jeremiah 23: 32 – 36 & 39; Ezekiel 13: 2 – 4 & 9; and Isaiah 47: 13. Also Exodus 19: 9; John 5: 45 – 47; Matthew 23: 1 – 2; Leviticus 23: 2 – 4 YHVH said to Moses: ***‘(YHVH)’s appointed times which you shall proclaim’.***

## **Chapter 7: By their fruits you will know them.**

There are so many religions and churches in the world today. How is it possible in all the confusion to find people who teach the truth of YHVH? To identify true converted believers and distinguish them from those who follow their traditions and opinions, we need to go beyond external appearances. Ask yourself: Does your walk with YHVH come from Scriptural truths, or the traditions of men?

There are many in Christianity and other religions who have a zeal for Elohim, but not according to knowledge. Rav Shaul explains the reason why so many in both houses of Israel are spiritually blind in Romans 10: 1 – 3, saying: ***‘Brethren, my heart’s desire and my prayer to Elohim for them (the Jews in this case) is for their salvation. (2) For I bear them witness that they have a zeal for Elohim, but not in accordance with knowledge. (3) For not knowing about Elohim’s righteousness, and seeking to establish their own, they did not subject themselves to the righteousness of Elohim.’*** Similarly many in Christianity and some other religions are very sincere about their faith. But, without realizing it, they are sincerely wrong! Christianity are sincere but like the Pharisees in Rav Shaul’s day lack understanding of the righteousness of Elohim. A very good example of this may be read in Luke 18: 9 - 14, as follows: ***‘And He (Yahshua) also told this parable to certain ones who trusted in themselves that they were righteous, and viewed others with contempt: (10) “Two men went up into the temple to pray, one a Pharisee, and the other a tax-gatherer. (11) The Pharisee stood and was praying thus to himself, ‘Elohim, I thank Thee that I am not like other people; swindlers, unjust, adulterers, or even like this tax-gatherer. (12) I fast twice a week; I pay tithes of all that I get.’ (13) But the tax-gatherer, standing some distance away, was even unwilling to lift up his eyes to heaven, but was beating his breast, saying, ‘Elohim, be merciful to me, the sinner!’ (14) I tell you, this man went down to his house justified rather than the other; for everyone who exalts himself shall be humbled, but he who humbles himself shall be exalted.’”*** In this parable the Pharisee appears to be a model of all true believers: one who does all the right things; he pays his tithes regularly; he prays and fasts frequently; in addition he thanks Elohim for his righteousness. He sees himself as a believing righteous man and he no doubt also impresses other believers greatly. The Pharisee is one of those people who trust in himself and his own righteousness, whilst he despises others.

The tax-gatherer has a very different view of his life as a believer. Most people would have suspected him of being a corrupt individual, filled with greed, and would have avoided him like the plague. Once we start comparing ourselves with others we develop the wrong attitude of self-righteousness. Such an attitude gives us a false sense of security – we believe that we are OK and need not strive for improvement any longer. But, we know according to this parable that this tax-gatherer is the one who truly repents and recognizes how small he is compared to YHVH. He admits his sins and in humility begs for forgiveness. We need to understand that YHVH looks at people differently from the way we see them. We see the outside of a person, whilst YHVH looks at the heart. Like the Pharisee in Messiah’s parable, they cannot believe that there is any likelihood of them to being wrong. Because they came to believe a false gospel, they do not obey Elohim’s Torah and because of a lack of understanding they are convinced that they are serving YHVH (or J\*e\*s\*u\*s as they call the Savior). In addition, because they reject the Torah, they do not even know what sin is.

In the beginning after YHVH recreated the earth, Satan introduced a lie to replace the truth. In Genesis 2: 16 & 17 YHVH commanded the man saying: ***“From any tree of the garden you may eat freely; (17) but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you shall surely die.”*** We read about Satan’s lie in Genesis 3: 4 & 5, as follows: ***‘And the serpent said to the woman, “You surely shall not die! (5) For Elohim knows that in the day you eat from it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like Elohim, knowing good and evil.’*** Satan’s lie is perpetuated today, through the traditions of men. We read Yahshua’s own words to the Pharisees in Matthew 15: 1 – 9, as follows: ***‘Then some Pharisees and scribes came to Yahshua from Jerusalem, saying, (2) “Why do Your disciples transgress the tradition of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat bread?” (3) And He answered and said to them, “And why do you yourselves transgress the commandment of Elohim for the sake of your tradition? (4) For Elohim said, ‘HONOR YOUR FATHER AND MOTHER,’ and, ‘HE WHO SPEAKS EVIL OF FATHER OR MOTHER, LET HIM BE PUT TO DEATH.’ (5) But you say, ‘Whoever shall say to his father or mother, “Anything of mine you might have been helped by has been given to Elohim,” (6) he is not to honor his father or his mother.’ And thus you invalidated the word of Elohim for the sake of your tradition. (7) You hypocrites, rightly did Isaiah prophesy of you, saying, (8) ‘THIS PEOPLE HONORS ME WITH THEIR LIPS, BUT THEIR HEART IS FAR AWAY FROM ME. (9) BUT IN VAIN DO THEY WORSHIP ME, TEACHING AS DOCTRINES THE PRECEPTS OF MEN.’”***

Like with the Pharisees, many traditions of men are on-going in the lives of many ‘so-called’ believers, who have been deceived into thinking that they are living their lives according to the Scriptures (or the Bible as it is known to them). Even though the Scriptures have never changed, the desires of man to do things his own



way are still making the Torah of YHVH of no effect, in the lives of many believers. As in the case with many Christians and even Messianic/Nazarene believers, Rav Shaul's fellow Jews held to erroneous ideas about certain important sections of the Scriptures. The difference being that they learned and knew many basic truths. Such Scriptural knowledge provides them with an enormous advantage. However, it would be even more beneficial if they practiced what they knew. The Jews have an advantage in that they have a firm foundation, whereas Gentiles, who have no knowledge of the true Elohim and His ways, have no such foundation. However, the principle applies – those Christians and Nazarene Israelites/Jews who believe the Scriptures to be the word of Elohim, but think they are allowed to pick and choose which (Scriptural) teachings they wish to apply to their own lives, are equally mistaken. Many of them have falsely been taught to ignore some commandments of Elohim in place of the traditions of men. The fact that many of them are familiar with the Scriptures is like in the case with our Jewish brothers of great value. However, knowledge even though of great value is not enough. They must learn to interpret and understand the Scriptures correctly, and to use it to guide them in practicing righteousness. But, Christianity and even so-called Messianic/Nazarene Jews/Israelites under the influence of Satan have been misled to follow the traditions and in some case the desires and lusts of men.

Because of the traditions of men Elohim's commandment to keep the seventh day Sabbath, has become of no effect, by man's desire to do things his own way. Likewise, because of the traditions of men, Elohim's appointed Feast Days, are of no effect. Christianity keeps Sunday, Xmas and Easter instead, and many in Nazarene/Messianic Israel, follow a calendar of their own making, rather than obeying the Scriptures. Some in Nazarene Israel even call the calendar which they *'fathomed out'*, the *'Biblically ordained calendar'*, thus contradicting and making the Scriptures of no effect. The Feast Days of YHVH gave all believers the blessing of getting to know Elohim's plan of Salvation for all mankind, but man is not interested in doing things according to the way of Elohim. YHVH says through the prophet Isaiah in Isaiah 1: 14, ***"I hate your new moon festivals and your appointed feast."*** But He says in Nahum 1: 15 ***'Behold on the mountains the feet of him who brings good news, Who announces peace! Celebrate your feasts, O Judah; Pay your vows. For never again will the wicked one pass through you; He is cut off completely.'***

It is the same with true immersion. The traditions of men have made water baptism of no effect, by sprinkling or pouring water onto the heads of small babies. True immersion is for a repentant adult believer – Yahshua being our prime example. Immersion is a symbol of being buried with Yahshua into death; to be raised with Him from the dead, and to walk in newness of life (as per Romans 6: 1 – 6). Likewise because of the traditions of men, the Set-apart Names of YHVH and Yahshua are being made void by the use of titles like G-D and L-RD. In the preface of a number of modern translations of the Bible, as is the case with the New American Standard Bible, the Editorial Board THE LOCKMAN FOUNDATION, openly tells the reader that the word G-D is translated from the Hebrew word Elohim and the word L-RD is translated from the word YHVH. The word Lord (lower case letters) is translated from the word Adonai.

Yes the traditions of men have made the Word of YHVH to no effect, in respect of many Scriptural subjects. YHVH gave us (the Scriptures) His manual, to show us what is clean to eat and what is not. YHVH our creator knows what will keep our bodies healthy, or not. However, many so-called Bible believers have also made this manual to no effect, because of a misunderstanding of some New Covenant scriptures, as well as the desires of men to eat things because they insist that: *'It tastes so good!'* My answer to that is: *'Rubbish – Does Cray Fish really taste that good; does Ostrich really taste that good. I do not think so!'* All those who are eating such meats are trying to prove that they are in control of their own lives. They arrogantly think and say to themselves: *'Nobody tells me what to do!'* Without realizing it, they are making gods out of themselves. Are they also forgetting the very first command in Exodus 20: 3, YHVH saying: ***"You shall have no other gods before Me."*** By knowing the Scriptures we have a distinct advantage. However, we need to continue to study, diligently adding to what we know, as well as correcting what we misunderstood. We need to understand that it is vitally important for us to study the Scriptures daily, as it is through the Scriptures that YHVH corrects us. We need to develop David's attitude asking like he did in Psalm 139: 23 & 24, saying: ***'Search me, O Elohim, and know my heart; Try me and know my anxious thoughts; (24) And see if there be any hurtful way in me, And lead me in the everlasting way.'***

To find out who Elohim's true people are, Yahshua gave us a foolproof test in Matthew 7: 20 & 21, as follows: ***"so then, you will know them by their fruits. (21) Not everyone who says to Me, 'Master, Master,' will enter the kingdom of heaven; but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven."*** In addition Yahshua gave a second method to find them in John 13: 35, saying: ***"By this all men will know that you are My disciples, if you have love for one another."*** Love and obedience are according to the word of YHVH inseparable, as we read in 1 John 5: 3, ***'For this is the love of Elohim, that we keep His commandments; and His commandments are not burdensome.'*** We are further told in Romans 13: 10, that: ***'Love does no wrong to a neighbor; love therefore is the fulfillment of the law.'*** The relationship between love and obedience is the key that distinguishes the true people of YHVH from those who are

deceived by Satan. We read this in 1 John 3: 10, as follows: ***‘By this the children of Elohim and the children of the devil are obvious; anyone who does not practice righteousness is not of Elohim, nor the one who does not love his brother.’***

YHVH wants us to prove our love for Him by our works, as we read in James 1: 22 – 25: ***‘But prove yourselves doers of the word, and not merely hearers who delude themselves. (23) For if anyone is a hearer of the word and not a doer, he is like a man who looks at his natural face in a mirror; (24) for once he has looked at himself and gone away he has immediately forgotten what kind of person he was. (25) But one who looks intently at the perfect law, the law of liberty, and abides by it, not having become a forgetful hearer but an effectual doer, this man shall be blessed in what he does.’*** The point is that YHVH does not accept lip service. Yahshua quoted the prophet Isaiah in Matthew 15: 8, saying: ***‘THIS PEOPLE HONORS ME WITH THEIR LIPS, BUT THEIR HEART IS FAR WAY FROM ME.’*** The fruits of obedience should be evident in the lives of those who truly serve YHVH.

Everything that YHVH requires of us and every principle of right living given in the Scriptures, is based on the two commandments described by Yahshua as the foremost in Matthew 22: 37 – 40, as follows: ***“YOU SHALL LOVE YHVH YOUR ELOHIM WITH ALL YOUR HEART, AND WITH ALL YOUR SOUL AND WITH ALL YOUR MIND.”*** (38) ***“This is the great and foremost commandment. (39) ‘The second is like it, ‘YOU SHALL LOVE YOUR NEIGHBOR AS YOURSELF.’ (40) On these two commandments depend the whole law and the Prophets.”*** At immersion into Yahshua’s saving Name, we are given a portion of the Set-apart Spirit of YHVH. However we need to grow in grace and knowledge to guard us from being carried away by false prophets as we are warned in 2 Peter 3: 17 & 18, as follows: ***‘You therefore, beloved knowing this beforehand, be on your guard lest, being carried away by the error of unprincipled men, you fall from your own steadfastness, (18) but grow in the grace and knowledge of our Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah. To Him be the esteem, both now and to the day of eternity. Amen.’***

The true obedient and converted servants of YHVH are pictured in Revelation 12 as the woman under attack by Satan, just prior to Yahshua’s return. We read accordingly in Revelation 12: 17, ***‘And the dragon was enraged with the woman, and went off to make war with the rest of her offspring, who keep the commandments of Elohim and hold to the testimony of Yahshua.’*** Please note that the servants of Elohim are described as both keeping the commandments of Elohim and everything taught them by Yahshua. It is therefore impossible for true believers to claim to know Elohim, without obeying His Torah. This is confirmed in 1 John 2: 3 – 6, as follows: ***‘And by this we know that we have come to know Him, if we keep His commandments. (4) The one who says, “I have come to know Him,” and does not keep His commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him; (5) but whoever keeps His word, in him the love of Elohim has truly been perfected. By this we know that we are in Him: (6) the one who says he abides in Him ought himself to walk in the same manner as He walked.’*** Like I have said in previous sermons, Yahshua Messiah is our perfect example. He is the standard against which we need to measure ourselves. Many who accept Messiah (or Christ as they call Him) have no idea what sin is. They do not even know what to repent off, and as a result Satan has deceived many in to a so-called false conversion. These deceived people believe on Messiah, without understanding any of His teachings. They believe that they will one day be ‘saved’, without repenting of disobeying any of Elohim’s Torah. Satan has indeed deceived the whole world.

Because of Satan’s influence and the traditions (and appetites) of men, many people live in unbelief. Satan has through the religions of the world invented a counterfeit for every doctrine found and taught in the Scriptures. We need to humbly ask ourselves: *‘Who do I serve and obey?’* If we truly serve and obey YHVH our Elohim, we need to start studying the Scriptures for ourselves, to see whether the doctrines that we are being taught are so, or not. In addition, we need to pray and ask YHVH to guide us in our studies, and to lead us into all truth through His Set-apart Spirit. Let’s make certain that we are known by the fruits of the Spirit of Elohim, and not by the insincere fruits of the traditions and lusts of men.

## **Chapter 8: Who is the Anti-Messiah?**

There are those who say that we who believe in the Oneness of Elohim are according to the second part of 1 John 2: 22 the 'anti-Messiah'. The term anti-Messiah (or Antichrist) appears only in the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> books of John. We read in 1 John 2: 22, starting at the beginning of the verse: ***'Who is a liar but the one who denies that Yahshua is the Messiah? This is the anti-Messiah, the one who denies the Father and the Son.'*** What is this saying? It identifies the anti-Messiah as those, who deny that Yahshua is the Messiah and those who deny the Father and the Son. The anti-Messiah is therefore anyone who denies the identity of the Messiah and Almighty YHVH. We are informed in 1 John 4: 1 – 4 to be wary of people who say: 'The spirit laid it upon my heart, to tell you so and so', as follows: ***'Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits to see whether they are from Elohim; because many false prophets have gone out into the world. (2) By this you know the Spirit of Elohim: every spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh is from Elohim; (3) and every spirit that does not confess Yahshua is not from Elohim; and this is the spirit of the anti-Messiah, of which you have heard that is coming, and now it is already in the world. (4) You are from Elohim, little children, and have overcome them; because greater is He who is in you than he who is in the world.'***

In verse 2 above, we have an additional element to ponder, i.e. that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh. It also identifies the spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh as being from Elohim, and the spirit that does not confess (or denies) Yahshua as not being from Elohim. What might you ask is this talking about? Like with us today, there were many who joined the original Nazarene assembly, but who later left again, because they believed differently. We read accordingly in 1 John 2: 18 & 19, ***'Children, it is the last hour; and just as you heard that anti-Messiah is coming, even now many anti-Messiahs have arisen; from this we know that it is the last hour. (19) They went out from us, but they were not really of us, for if they had been of us, they would have remained with us; but they went out, in order that it might be shown that they all are not of us.'*** We've had the same thing happening in our midst and know now that those who left us were never Nazarene Jews/Israelites. Some of them continued in their belief that YHVH consist of two separate beings, whilst others were more concerned about using the Set-apart Name of YHVH, than honoring His name. We honor the Name of YHVH by doing His will.

So we see that even in those early days of our Nazarene Jewish faith, there were some who denied that Yahshua came in the flesh. The anti-Messiah is identified in 2 John 7 as a deceiving spirit that refuses to confess that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh. This same deceiving spirit, who was working in Rav Yochanan's (John's) time, is also active today. In verses 8 & 9 of 2 John, we read: ***'Watch yourselves, that you might not lose what we have accomplished, but that you may receive a full reward. (9) Anyone who goes too far and does not abide in the teachings of Messiah, does not have Elohim; the one who abides in the teaching, he has both the Father and the Son.'*** Some of you might recall how a leader in our Nazarene Israelite Two house community, converted to Judaism, because this individual believed, that since YHVH is one, we have no more need of Yahshua our Messiah. This is what is referred in verse 9 above as going too far. Even though we read in the second part of Psalm 118: 21, ***'And Thou hast become my salvation*** (Yeshua in Hebrew)', we and all of mankind need the salvation of YHVH, namely Yahshua – because as long as there are human beings on the earth, we need Messiah our mediator. He is the only way that we as human beings are able to relate to Almighty YHVH. We read accordingly in Galatians 3: 20 ***'Now a mediator is not for one party only; whereas Elohim is only one.'*** This is alluding to the Oneness of Elohim, but also to His role as the Savior (or Moshiah) of Israel. We will get back to this again later in this sermon.

The spirit of anti-Messiah is present in people or an individual person, but is not a person as such. In fact the spirit of anti-Messiah could also be present in us. It is possible to identify the spirit of anti-Messiah according to the definition given to us in 1 John 4: 1 & 2 (quoted already). In fact, this matter is considered so important that we are warned in 2 John 10 not to associate with those who do not acknowledge Yahshua Messiah as coming in the flesh. We read in 2 John 11, ***'for the one who gives him a greeting participates in his evil deeds.'*** This method of testing is simple and anyone is able to classify him or herself as either having the spirit of the anti-Messiah, or the Spirit of Elohim. However, it is not as simple as that. Most Christians, whether they call themselves Methodist, Presbyterian, Roman Catholic, Jehovah's Witness, Seventh-day Adventist, or even Messianic/Nazarene Jews/Israelites, despite vast differences in their faith, believe exactly that. However, some of these Churches believe that YHVH is composed of two separate beings; some say that He consists of three persons in one and another group goes as far as to say that Yahshua was an Angel before His human birth. They all confess faith in the Scriptures, known as the Bible to most of them. Yet the same Scriptures state in Ephesians 4: 4 - 6, that: ***'There is one body and one Spirit, just as also you were called in one hope of your calling; (5) one Master*** (MarYah in Aramaic, meaning YHVH), ***one faith, one immersion, (6) one Elohim and Father of all who is over all and through all and in all.'***

But, is the confession that Yahshua has come in the flesh enough evidence that one has the Spirit of Elohim? Or, does our belief in the Oneness of Elohim make us true believers? I don't think so, as we read in James 2: 19, **'You believe that Elohim is one, You do well; the demons also believe, and shudder.'** We see in the Scriptures that the demons knew the identity of Yahshua. We read in Matthew 8: 28 & 29, **'And when He (Yahshua) had come to the other side into the country of the Gadarenes, two men who were demon-possessed met Him as they were coming out of the tombs; they were so exceedingly violent that no one could pass by that road. (29) And behold, they cried out, saying, "What do we have to do with You, Son of Elohim? Have You come here to torment us before the time?"'** Many in Christianity believe that it is Satan who will throw the wicked into the so-called 'hellfire' and torment them with his pitchfork for all eternity.

Satan has deceived the whole world (as per Revelation 12: 9) and has succeeded in selling his own desires as well as his final destination, to his deceived audience. Satan wanted to go to heaven to take over the throne of YHVH in rebellion. We read about this in Isaiah 14: 13 & 14 as follows: **"But you said in your heart, 'I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of Elohim, And will sit on the mount of assembly In the recesses of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.'"** Yahshua confirmed in Luke 20: 36 that angels cannot die and because Satan is a fallen angel, he also cannot die. A second witness to this is recorded in Revelation 20: 10, where we see that the devil that deceived mankind was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone and will be tormented day and night forever and ever. Christianity, Moslems, and a number of other religions believe Satan's lie that they like him are immortal; they believe that 'good' people go to heaven, when they die, beholding the face of YHVH forever, whilst the wicked go to hell to burn there eternally. However, this Satan inspired doctrine is nowhere to be found in the Scriptures. Human beings are made from physical matter and without having received the Set-apart Spirit of YHVH at repentance and immersion; they are mortal and shall die. When physical matter is thrown into a fire, it burns until it becomes ashes. This is exactly what will happen to the wicked, who will not accept Yahshua as their Savior, according to Malachi 4: 1, **"For behold, the day is coming, burning like a furnace; and all the arrogant and every evildoer will be chaff; and the day that is coming will set them ablaze."** says YHVH of hosts. **"so that it will leave them neither root nor branch."**

But, it will not be Satan who will throw the wicked into the lake of fire. John the Immerser talking about Yahshua said in Matthew 3: 11 & 12, **"As for me, I immerse you with water for repentance, but He who is coming after me is mightier than I and I am not fit to remove His sandals; He will immerse you with the Set-apart Spirit and fire. (12) And His winnowing fork is in His hand, and He will thoroughly clear His threshing floor; and He will gather His wheat into the barn, but He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire."** Satan and His demons knew and feared Yahshua because they knew He will one day throw them into the lake of fire. Satan himself does not deny that Yahshua has come in the flesh. Satan deceives people by less obvious methods. He misquotes the Scriptures in order to tempt us, as he also tried with Yahshua in Matthew 4.

Let's consider again the test Scripture in 1 John 4: 2 **'By this you know the Spirit of Elohim: every spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh is from Elohim.'** Yes, Yahshua is the Messiah, but what does that mean? Do you believe that Messiah came in the flesh? This is indeed a mystery, the answer of which is given in 1 Timothy 3: 16, as follows: **'And by common confession great is the mystery of godliness: Elohim who was revealed in the flesh (as we are told in John 1: 14), Was vindicated (justified) in the Spirit, Beheld by angels, Proclaimed among the nations, Believed on in the world, Taken up in glory.'** We also read in Isaiah 7: 14 **'Therefore YHVH Himself will give you a sign; Behold a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel.'** - meaning Elohim with us. Yes, brethren, Yahshua is Messiah, but He is also YHVH in the flesh. Do you now understand what it means to confess that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh? It implies that Yahshua was somewhere else before He was born as a 'man'. Knowing the Scriptures, we are able to confirm this in John 1: 1 – 3 and 14, as follows: **'In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. (2) He was in the beginning with Elohim. (3) All things came into being by Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being'<sup>14</sup>. (14) And the word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.'** Yes, Yahshua is Elohim in the flesh: Immanuel meaning Elohim with us. It is this very fact about Yahshua our Messiah which tests the spirit of the professing believer.

The Hebrew word 'Moshiyah' is used in Isaiah 45: 15, as follows: **'Truly, Thou art an Elohim who hides Himself, O Elohim of Israel, Savior!'** The last part of verse 15 is transliterated as 'Elohey Yisrael, Moshiyah' in Hebrew. The word Moshiyah is also the final word found in Isaiah 63: 8, as follows: **'For He said, "Surely,**

<sup>14</sup> Elohim created the universe by the word of YHVH, as is confirmed in Psalm 33: 6.

**they are My people, Sons who will not deal falsely.” So He became their Savior (Moshiyah).’** We see here that it is YHVH the Elohim of Israel who hides Himself, who is our Savior or Moshiyah. YHVH said in Deuteronomy 31: 18 **“But I will surely hide My face in that day because of all the evil which they will do, for they will turn to other gods.”** Nevertheless we read in Isaiah 30: 20 **‘Although YHVH has given you bread of privation and water of oppression, He, your Teacher will no longer hide Himself, but your eyes will behold your Teacher.’**

Who is Yahshua our Messiah? And who is YHVH? Quoting again from the last part of 1 John 2: 22 as well as 23, we read: **‘This is the anti-Messiah, the one who denies the Father and the Son. (23) Whoever denies the Son does not have the Father; the one who confesses the Son has the Father also.’** Do you know the identity of our Savior? We have already shown in the sermon that Yahshua is the Almighty, the creator and only true Elohim. We see a prophesy about Yahshua in Isaiah 9: 6 - 7 saying: **‘For a child will be born to us, a son will be given to us; And the government will rest on His shoulders; And His name will be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty Elohim, Eternal Father, Prince of Peace. (7) There will be no end to the increase of His government or of peace, On the throne of David and over his kingdom, To establish it and to uphold it with justice and righteousness from then on and forever more, The zeal of YHVH of hosts will accomplish this.’** Satan is doing everything in his power to suppress and deny the knowledge about the identity of Yahshua. We know that Yahshua is YHVH in the flesh and as we read in Colossians 2: 9 **“For in Him the fullness of Deity (Elohim) dwells in bodily form.”** Yahshua is not half Elohim and half man - He is Elohim in the flesh. This fact is confirmed in Philippians 2: 6 – 8, as follows: **‘who, although He existed in the form of Elohim (the image or form of YHVH Himself which Moses saw as is recorded in Numbers 12: 8), did not regard equality with Elohim a thing to be grasped, (7) but emptied Himself, taking the form of a bond-servant, and being in the likeness of them (meaning He looked like us). (8) And being found in the appearance as a man, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross.”** Christians and Messianics not understanding the plan of YHVH explained in Romans 11, often tries to convert Jews, by telling them about G-d who became a human being. However, they do not understand that YHVH did not become a man in human flesh, but that He took on the form of a bond-servant – He appeared or looked like a man, but He was fully Elohim.

We should not try to convert our Jewish brothers as YHVH Himself has blinded them. We read in Romans 11, that He has done this to allow us, the lost tribes of the house of Israel, to come in so that eventually He can save all Israel. We read in Romans 11: 32 **‘For Elohim has shut up all in disobedience that He might show mercy to all.’** In addition the Chabad-Lubavitch in the USA issued the following statement in regard to the preoccupation of many with identifying the Messiah, in February 1998: **‘The deification of any human being is contrary to the core and foundation of the Jewish Faith. The various Talmudic, Midrashic and other sources which seem to ascribe superhuman spiritual attributes to certain righteous people were never meant to be deification and great care must be taken when quoting them. Belief in the coming Messiah and awaiting his imminent arrival is a basic tenet of the Jewish faith. It is clear, however, that conjecture as to the possible identity of Messiah is not part of the basic tenets of Judaism.’** Besides the point that we have proven that Yahshua came in the form of a man, we should not try to evangelize Yahshua by trying to portray Him as YHVH who became a man. Any teaching that denies the full deity of Yahshua the Messiah, comes from the deceiving spirit of the anti-Messiah, which is essentially anti-YHVH. This is the deceiving spirit who refuses to acknowledge Him as the Supreme Being. Nothing has changed. In Deuteronomy 6: 4 YHVH told Moses to teach all Israel, saying: **“Hear, O Israel! YHVH is our Elohim YHVH is one!”** Are we who believe in the Oneness of Elohim anti-Messiah? No, according to 1 John 2: 23 **‘Whoever denies the Son does not have the Father; the one who confesses the Son has the Father also.’** Yes the Rock that we read about in Deuteronomy 32: 4 is YHVH/Yahshua and this is confirmed in 1 Corinthians 10: 4 as follows: **“and all drank the same spiritual drink, for they were drinking from the spiritual rock which followed them: and the rock was Messiah.”**

Consider for the moment the word stone (eben) in Hebrew: אבן

The two words – ‘Father’ & ‘Son’ overlap in the word ‘stone’

אב            בן            אבן

We can literally say the Son is in the Father and the Father is in the Son as is confirmed by Yahshua in John 10: 37 & 38: **“If I do not do the works of My Father, do not believe Me; but if I do them, though you do not believe Me, believe the works, that you may know and understand that the Father is in Me and I in the Father.”**

Yahshua is not another YHVH: He was only a small portion of the One YHVH that was manifested in the flesh, the purpose of which was that He the Creator of Mankind could be their kinsman redeemer – He died for the sins of mankind and to be able to remarry His bride Israel, whom He divorced because of her adultery with the pagan gods of this world. Only the life of YHVH is worth more than the lives of all mankind together – so only He could redeem us from the second death. Do you acknowledge Yahshua Messiah as coming in the flesh. Remember this is how we identify the Spirit of Elohim as opposed to the spirit of anti-Messiah!

Is it wrong to worship Yahshua? Let us turn to Philippians 2: 9 & 10 for the answer: ***‘Therefore also Elohim highly exalted Him, and bestowed on Him the name which is above every name, that at the name of Yahshua EVERY KNEE SHOULD BOW, of those who are in heaven, and on earth and under the earth.’*** Both YHVH and Yahshua is YHVH (or Elohim) and should be worshipped, however, Yahshua who is the Salvation of YHVH said in John 14: 13 & 14 ***“And whatever you ask in My name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. (14) If you ask Me anything in My name, I will do it.”*** We therefore always conclude our prayers in Yahshua’s saving name.

## **Chapter 9: What is a true believer?**

Yahshua told his disciples in Matthew 5 to 7 how to identify a true believer. A true believer is one who keeps the teachings of YHVH with a Spiritual intent. We read in Matthew 5: 17 that Yahshua did not come to do away with His Father's laws, as many in Christianity falsely believe, but to fulfill it. Reading on in Matthew 5, we see that Yahshua came to make the law more binding: We read in verses 43 & 44, Yahshua saying: ***"You have heard that it was said, 'YOU SHALL LOVE YOUR NEIGHBOR, and hate your enemy.'"*** (44) ***"But I say to you, love your enemies, and pray for those who persecute you."*** Brethren, if we only love our family, friends and like-minded believers; how will we even think of proclaiming the good news of the coming kingdom of Elohim, to the whole world? What does it matter, I hear some ask.

We as Nazarene Israelites are called to become first fruits in the world tomorrow; but we are also called to be watchmen during this present age. As watchmen we need to warn people of impending troubles; declare to the people of YHVH their sins (as per Isaiah 58: 1); and tell the destitute people in the world about the coming kingdom of Elohim, giving them hope of a better world to come. Proclaiming the gospel of the coming kingdom of Elohim is a prerequisite for the kingdom of Elohim to come, as we read in Matthew 24: 14: ***"And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in the whole world for a witness to all the nations(not to convert them), and then the end shall come."*** As Nazarenes, we have to counter the many false prophets who are misleading fellow believers as well as many people in the world. We have recently seen how false prophets in our very midst are trying to make alterations in times and in law, by changing the timing of the Sabbath, as we are warned about in Daniel 7: 25.

We all want people to treat us with dignity and respect, don't we? How is this possible in the world we live in? We read Yahshua's own words, in Matthew 7: 12, on how to achieve this, as follows: ***"Therefore, however you want people to treat you, so treat them, for this is the Law and the Prophets."*** Yes, even though some of us were taught differently, this is according to Yahshua, what the 'Old Covenant' taught. This is known as the golden rule, which most remember in its simplified form as: *'Do unto others what you want them to do unto you.'* It is an excellent slogan which is often seen dangling on walls and charm bracelets. But, the question is: Does it work? We often see in TV shows and movies, how vindictive people always try to get even. Yet we read in Luke 6: 36 – 37, ***"Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful. (37) And do not judge and you will not be judged; and do not condemn, and you will not be condemned; pardon, and you will be pardoned."*** Forgiveness should be practiced as a way of life, but as we know, this is the last thing on the minds of most of us. Yahshua's teachings in Matthew 5 – 7 covers the issues that we struggle with in our daily lives, and reaches to the simple lack of consideration that makes life unpleasant for others. Scriptures decry a society whose religion is a mere form, without the power to change the lives of people.

Yahshua knew that some who listened to His teachings would call Him their Master, and even call their group by His name or title, i.e. 'Christian', 'Nazarene' or 'Messianic', but would not put His teaching into practice. This is why He said in Matthew 7: 21, ***"Not everyone who says to Me, 'Master, Master,' will enter the kingdom of heaven; but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven."*** This is a very similar statement to the one we read in the Old Covenant in Malachi 1: 6, ***"A son honors his father, and a servant his master. Then if I am a father, where is My honor? And if I am a master, where is My respect?" says YHVH of hosts to you, O priests who despise My name. But you say, "How have we despised Thy name?"*** It is true that this is talking about those who refuse to use the Name of YHVH, however, we need to make sure that we honor the Name of YHVH and not only use it. We honor YHVH by keeping His commandments. In fact Yahshua told His disciples in Matthew 18: 3 ***"Truly I say to you, unless you are converted and become like little children, you shall not enter the kingdom of heaven."*** We as believers become children of Elohim, when we are immersed in Yahshua's name. We are given a portion of the Set-apart Spirit, when the Elders lay hands on us (as we are told in Acts 8: 16 & 17), at which time we are begotten anew as children of Elohim, to be born again at our resurrection.

Our faith is as we read in Acts 18 verse 25 known as ***"the way of the Master"*** and in verse 26 as ***"the way of Elohim"***. However, because of false teachings, some believe that Yahshua (or as many in Christianity call Him 'J\*e\*s\*u\*s') our loving and merciful Savior, did away with His very strict Father's Laws. Nevertheless, He said in John 14: 6 & 7: ***"I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, but through Me. (7) If you know Me, you would have known My Father also; from now on you know Him, and have seen Him."*** Yahshua being YHVH in the flesh inspired His disciple John to write in 1 John 5: 3, ***"For this is the love of Elohim, that we keep His commandments; and His commandments are not burdensome."*** We need to let even our innermost thoughts be ruled by YHVH our Elohim. We need to repent and return to the teachings of Elohim, known as His Torah. Every time we disobey the commandments of Elohim, we sin and need to repent. No person (other than Yahshua) has ever lived, who has not broken Elohim's law, as we read in Romans 3: 23. We all need to repent. We must ask YHVH that

Messiah's shed blood cover our sins; that the sacrifice of His life be accepted in our stead; so that the penalty of our sin can be removed from us.

In Isaiah 55: 7 – 9 we read: ***'Let the wicked forsake his way, And the unrighteous man his thoughts; And let him return to YHVH, And He will have compassion on him; And to our Elohim, For He will abundantly pardon. (8) "For My thoughts are not your thoughts, Neither are your ways My ways." declares YHVH. (9) "For as the heavens are higher than the earth, So are My ways higher than your ways, And My thoughts than your thoughts."*** A true believer seeks to know Elohim's way of life. Isaiah was describing true repentance here. It is YHVH our Elohim who helps us see our sin. When He calls us, He opens our minds and starts us on the way to repentance. The question is: How does He call people to repentance? YHVH uses many different methods to lead individuals to repentance as we read in Romans 2: 4, ***'Or do you think of the riches of His kindness and forbearance and patience, not knowing that the kindness of Elohim leads you to repentance?*** In Matthew 28: 19 & 20, Yahshua instructed believers, saying: ***"Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, immersing them in the name (one name) of the Father and the Son and the Set-apart Spirit, (20) teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."*** We are according to this commission responsible to ensure, that those who come to believe in YHVH are suitably equipped to commence their walk on *'the way of Elohim.'*

In the beginning of this sermon we heard that true believers keep the teachings or Torah of YHVH with a Spiritual intent. What is true Spirituality? There are usually four signs that people in the world use as evidence of true Spirituality. These are as follows:

1. Many in the world associate Spirituality with the way people speak: They consider people who use spiritual sounding words and phraseology as being highly Spiritual. They believe that unless a preacher is full of emotional enthusiasm, fluent in Spiritual sounding expressions, and able to generate in his congregants customary emotional outburst expected in such meetings, he is not Spiritual. However, some people are by nature emotional, whilst others are not, and this is not to discount true spiritual expression resulting from an honest heart. However some are conditioned to respond in a particular way, believing that such a response is the "Christian" or even 'Messianic' thing to do.
2. Then there are those who believe that when they have a great deal of Scriptural knowledge they are truly Spiritual. However, without real repentance and showing the fruits of the Spirit in their lives, such knowledge is not enough. Our main goal should not be to know the Scriptures, but rather to come to know Elohim. We read Yahshua's own words in this regard in John 17: 3 ***"And this is eternal life, that they may know Thee, the only true Elohim, and Yahshua Messiah whom thou hast sent."***
3. Then there are people who believe that they are saved by their faith alone. They seldom, if ever refer to such things as repentance and obedience to Elohim's will and Law. Yes, faith is an important element in belief in YHVH, but we are created to do good works, as we read in Ephesians 2: 8 – 10: ***'For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, it is the gift of Elohim, (9) not as a result of works, that no one should boast. (10) For we are His workmanship, created in Messiah Yahshua for good works, which Elohim prepared beforehand, that we should walk in them.*** We are not saved by works, but we are saved for good works. In addition we read in James 2: 17 & 18, ***'Even so faith, if it has no works, is dead, being by itself. (18) But someone may well say, "You have faith, and I have works; show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works."***
4. Finally, some believe that true spirituality consists of a rigid standard of righteousness. However, Rav Shaul said about the religious leaders of his day in Romans 10: 2 & 3, ***'For I bear them witness that they have a zeal for Elohim, but not in accordance with knowledge. (3) For not knowing about Elohim's righteousness, and seeking to establish their own, they did not subject themselves to the righteousness of Elohim.'*** As I said in a recent sermon, you may talk the talk, but do you walk the walk. You may wear tzitzit daily and a Kippah during worship services, but how do you treat your family and others.

As far as true spirituality is concerned, Yahshua is the only standard against which we should measure ourselves. We read accordingly in Philippians 2: 5 ***'Have this attitude in yourselves which was also in Messiah Yahshua.'*** The only way for us to have the mind of Messiah in us, is through the Set-apart Spirit indwelling us. After our immersion and the laying on of hands, YHVH gives us His Set-apart Spirit as a deposit of our inheritance, with a view to redemption. We read in Romans 8: 9 & 10 ***'However, you are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed the Spirit of Elohim dwells in you. But if anyone does not have the Spirit of Messiah, he does not belong to Him. (10) And if Messiah is in you though the body is dead because of sin, yet the spirit is alive because of righteousness.'*** The spiritual mind is a mind that is filled to overflowing with genuine love for both Elohim and humanity – including our enemies.



This calls to mind the Shema which we as Israelites say every morning when we wake up, and at night before we go to sleep. The Shema, recorded in Deuteronomy 6: 4 – 9, reads as follows: ***“Hear, O Israel! YHVH is our Elohim, YHVH is one! And you shall love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your all your soul and with all your might. (6) And these words, which I am commanding you today, shall be on your heart; (7) and you shall teach them diligently to your sons and shall talk of them when you sit in your house and when you walk by the way and when you lie down and when you rise up. (8) And you shall bind them as a sign on your hand and they shall be as frontals on your forehead. (9) And you shall write them on the doorposts of your house and on your gates.”***

There are people in Christianity, but also in our Nazarene community, who say that they need not wear tzitzit or put mezuzahs on their doorpost, because they are Spiritual, and do not need physical reminders to keep the commandments. Yes, when we are called by YHVH we should be dead to physical things that make us sin. Real-spiritual – mindedness is the mind of love for Elohim. What is love? Love does not mean hating your neighbor enough to try and steal his wife, because you love (or more correctly lust after) her. Because of the wrong connotation that people attach to the word love, I will quote what love is from the KJV<sup>15</sup>. Love or charity as it is referred to in 1Corinthians 13: 4 – 7(KJV), are as follows: ***‘Charity suffereth long (is patient), and is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up (does not brag and is not arrogant), (5) doth not behave itself unseemly; seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil; (6) Rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth; (7) Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.’*** A typical example of love as expressed in verse 7 is how much a mother is prepared to suffer to provide for her children’s needs.

Even though we receive a portion of the Set-apart Spirit, at immersion, we as believers remain flesh and blood human beings. The only difference is that from then on, compelled by the Set-apart Spirit, we start eating the kosher foods prescribed in Leviticus 7 (verses 25 – 27); 11 and Deuteronomy 14, in obedience to YHVH (and because it is good for us): We also start keeping the Sabbath and Feast Days of Elohim given in Leviticus 23, in obedience to His Torah, and get to know His plan of salvation for all mankind, by so doing. Let’s at this point get back to the topic of love. The two questions that come to mind are: How much do we love YHVH? And are there limits to the love we have for Him? Yes, some who do things for show sometimes go overboard with physical paraphernalia, etc. Notice in Matthew 23: 5 Yahshua talking about the religious leaders of His day, saying: ***“But they do all their deeds to be noticed by men; for they broaden their phylacteries, and lengthen the tassels of the garments.”*** In similar fashion, there are people in some circles who have themselves whipped and crucified to show their ‘love’ for G-d. But, we know that YHVH does not require that from us.

However, to us who are aware that Yahshua has not ‘done away with’ any of His Father’s laws, there remain certain things which YHVH requires us to do. These are things such as the making and wearing of tzitzit as a reminder to keep His Torah, as He instructed Moses in Numbers 15: 38 & 39, saying: ***“Speak to the sons of Israel and tell them that they shall make for themselves tassels on the corners of their garments throughout their generation, and that they shall put on the tassels of each corner a cord of blue. (39) And it shall be a tassel for you to look at and remember all the commandments of YHVH, so as to do them and not follow after your heart and your own eyes, after which you played the harlot.”*** These tassels are to warn specifically married men not to look around at other women. What about the other seemingly unreasonable requirements that YHVH wants from us, such as not to eat meat and milk products together? What about putting mezuzahs on the doorways of our homes?

Are you like those in our community who claim that, because they are in the Spirit, they are no longer required to do such physical things? If so, then I suggest that you take the pinprick test to prove your Spirituality? Simply take a pin and prick yourself on the finger. If you do not feel any pain and no blood comes forth from the small wound; you are Spirit. But if you feel the pain and have to wipe away the blood from your finger, you are physical and like most of us, require constant reminders to keep you from sinning. Please also notice in Matthew 23: 5 quoted earlier, Yahshua said that the religious leaders broaden their phylacteries and lengthen their tassels to make it more visible to others, but He did not say that they should not wear them any longer, did He? As Nazarene Israelites, Yahshua should always be held up as our example. Ask yourself, did Yahshua wear tzitzit? Was Yahshua immersed? Was Yahshua circumcised? We know the answer to the last

---

<sup>15</sup> Few people in the world today are aware that there are three different types of love. These types of love are best described in the Greek language, as follows: At the highest level is ‘Agape’ love: this is love for Elohim, it is a total giving love; it means total commitment to YHVH – no matter what. We are not born with Agape love; it is acquired by maturity (see Romans 5: 5). Next we have ‘Philia’ love: this is simply brotherly love, friendship and companionship. An example of brotherly love is given in John 15: 13, as follows ***‘Greater love has no one than this, that one lay down his life for his friends.’*** Finally we have ‘Eros’ love, which is romantic love for someone of the opposite gender.

two questions, but what about the first? Let us turn to Matthew 14 where we read about Yahshua in verses 35 & 36, as follows: ***'And when the men of that place recognized Him, they sent into all that surrounding district and brought to Him all who were sick; (36) and they began to entreat Him that they might just touch the fringe (tassel) of His cloak; and as many as touched it were cured.'*** A second witness to this is recorded in Matthew 9: 20.

The works that we do cannot save us. Yahshua has already died for the sins of the entire world, and we can do nothing to save ourselves. However, we show our Father that we love and obey Him by keeping His commandments. How Spiritual are you? We read in James 2: 26 ***'For just as the body without the spirit is dead, so also faith without works is dead.'*** YHVH does not want us to crucify ourselves for Him and as I said in a previous sermon, He does not require penance. However, He has described the way He wants us to serve Him in the Scriptures. Ask yourself: Am I prepared to follow Him all the way, or not? Am I prepared to do whatever He requires of me, or not? Am I questioning the things that YHVH requires of me? Last week we read about Korah's rebellion in the weekly Torah portion. If you recall, Korah questioned the leadership of Moses and Aaron, the two people whom YHVH chose to lead Israel. We know the end result was that the earth opened and swallowed Korah and the 250 men with him. Fire also came forth and consumed them. We might not in this day and age be destroyed by YHVH in the same way that He did Korah and the 250 with him. But the wicked are warned of a similar fate in Malachi 4: 1, as follows: ***"For behold, the day is coming, burning like a furnace; and all the arrogant and every evildoer will be chaff; and the day that is coming will set them ablaze," says YHVH of hosts, "so that it will leave them neither root nor branch."*** We read further in verses 2 & 3, what will happen to those who fear the name of YHVH enough to do what is required of them, as follows: ***"But for you who fear (revere) My name the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings; and you will go forth and skip about like calves from the stall. (3) And you will tread down the wicked, for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet on the day which I am preparing," says YHVH of hosts.'*** HalleluYah!

## **Chapter 10: Ancient Jewish marriage customs – a picture of Yahshua and His bride.**

The ancient Jewish marriage consisted of two parts. The first part was known as the betrothal and is similar to a modern day engagement. The betrothal was like marriage considered a legally binding institution, except that the couple did not live together at that time. The betrothal was so binding that it could not be broken without a **'get'** or an orthodox divorce. The young man would as a next step prepare a contract (or covenant) to present to his bride-to-be and her father. In the contract he shows his willingness to provide for the young lady and described the price that he is prepared to pay her father for his permission to marry his daughter. The price usually included a tract of land, or silver, or gold.

This process can be likened to Yahshua's first advent. Yahshua came from heaven to His bride's home (the earth) to present His marriage contract. The covenant made, was that He would redeem or cancel out the certificate of debt due by us, His bride, for breaking the Torah commandments of YHVH, paying for her transgressions, by dying on her behalf on the impalement stake. We read accordingly in 1 Peter 1: 18 - 20, ***'Knowing that you were not redeemed with perishable things like silver or gold from your futile way of life inherited from your forefathers, (19) but with precious blood, as of a lamb unblemished and spotless, the blood of Messiah. (20) For He was foreknown before the foundation of the world, but has appeared in these last times for the sake of you.'*** Yahshua left His home (heaven) to come to earth (His bride's home) to pay the ultimate price for His bride (those of us who are prepared to follow Him).

After the price was agreed to between the young man and his bride-to-be's father, the young man would pour a glass of wine for his future bride and present it to her. By drinking the glass of wine, she would indicate her acceptance of the young man's proposal, effectively sealing it. A written contract containing promises to provide and care for His bride is presented by the young man. The young man and his bride-to-be will as a result be officially betrothed. The betrothal usually lasts for between one and two years, during which time the couple would not see each other.

In exactly the same way as the groom poured a glass of wine for his future bride, Yahshua poured wine for His disciples (those who learned from Him). We read Yahshua's words in Matthew 26: 27 – 29, as follows: ***'And when He had taken a cup and given thanks, He gave it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you; (28) for this is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for forgiveness of sins. (29) But I say to you, I will not drink of this fruit of the vine from now on until that day when I drink it new with you in My Father's kingdom."*** Yahshua's disciples (like us today, when partaking of the Passover) drank of the wine, thus accepting the covenant (or contract) with Him. In fact every year when we partake of the cup of wine at Passover, we confirm the covenant with our future bridegroom Yahshua. Our wedding contract is the Scriptures, which is also the manual of how we should behave towards YHVH our Elohim.

Once the glass of wine is drunk by the bride-to-be, the couple is betrothed to get married. At this point in time the groom-to-be presents his gifts to his future bride and her father. In a similar way Yahshua paid for our sins with His lifeblood (see John 19: 34), and also gave us the gift of the Set-apart Spirit to guide us into all truth (see Acts 2: 4). Immersion serves a two-fold purpose. Firstly, we are immersed when we repent and turn to YHVH, accepting that Yahshua's blood was shed to atone for our sins. It pictures putting away our old life styles and accepting the way of YHVH from then on. Secondly it pictures us partaking of the death, burial and resurrection of Yahshua, to become one with Him, as we read in Romans 7: 1- 4, as follows: ***'Or do you not know, brethren (for I am speaking to those who know the law – talking specifically about the law of marriage and divorce), that the law has jurisdiction over a person as long as he lives? (2) For the married woman is bound by law to her husband while he is living; but if her husband dies, she is released from the law concerning the husband. (3) So then if, while her husband is living, she is joined to another man, she shall be called an adulteress; but if her husband dies, she is free from the law, so that she is not an adulteress, though she is joined to another man. (4) Therefore, my brethren, you also were made to die to the law through the body of Messiah, that you might be joined to another, to Him who was raised from the dead, that we might bear fruit for Elohim.'***

After paying the bride's price the betrothed young man pledges that he will go away to prepare a place for His bride in His father's house, after which he will return to fetch her. Yahshua similarly pledged in John 14: 2 & 3, saying: ***"In My Father's house are many dwelling places; if it were not so, I would have told you; for I go to prepare a place for you. (3) And if I go and prepare a place (a position in Elohim's government) for you, I will come again, and receive you to Myself; that where I am (in the kingdom of Elohim), there you may be also.'*** In the ancient Jewish tradition, the bridegroom could only get his bride after his own father approved and let him go to fetch her. We know that YHVH will shorten the great tribulation for His elect's sake, when Yahshua will return, as we read in Mark 13: 19 & 20, ***"For those days will be a time of tribulation such as has not occurred since the beginning of the creation which Elohim created, until now, and never shall. (20) And unless YHVH had shortened those days, no life would have been***

**saved; but for the sake of the elect whom He chose, He shortened the days.”** However, we read Yahshua’s own words regarding the timing of this in Mark 13: 32 & 33, as follows: **“But of that day or hour no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father alone. (33) Take heed, keep on the alert; for you do not know when the appointed time is.”**

During the time that the betrothed young man has gone back to his father’s house, to prepare a room for his bride, the bride is set-apart or consecrated; she was bought for a price and after having been immersed or mikvahed, she is preparing for marriage. She would procure expensive cologne and learn to apply it, in order to make herself more attractive for her future bridegroom. Because she did not know when her groom would return, she had to remain in a constant state of readiness. In addition, because bridegrooms usually came for their brides in the middle of the night, the bride had to keep her lamp burning and have her belongings ready at all times. An example of this is given by Yahshua in the parable in Matthew 25: 1 – 6, as follows: **“Then the kingdom of heaven will be comparable to ten virgins, who took their lamps, and went out to meet the bridegroom. (2) And five of them were foolish, and five were prudent. (3) For when the foolish took their lamps, they took no oil with them. (4) but the prudent took oil in flasks along with their lamps** (they prepared themselves by taking the Scriptures with them to study). **(5) Now while the bridegroom was delaying, they all got drowsy and began to sleep. (6) But at midnight there was a shout, ‘Behold the bridegroom! Come out to meet him.’”** The bridegroom, whilst preparing the wedding chamber for his bride-to-be in his father’s house, will ask his father several times to see if the wedding chamber is ready. But, the father will not give approval until it is completely ready. At that time he will give his approval, stating that the wedding chamber is ready and that his son should go and get his bride. The bridegroom would come during the night and secretly ‘abduct’ his wife from her father’s home to take her back to the wedding chamber. However, when the groom gets close to his bride-to-be’s home, he would shout and blow on a trumpet, in order to give her prior warning of his arrival. The groom and his friends would enter his bride-to-be’s home and they would take her and her bridesmaids with them.

In the same way our bridegroom will come for us, His bride-to-be. As we read in Matthew 25: 6 (paraphrased), at midnight there was a shout to warn the bride-to-be and her entourage that the groom is near. The Feast of Trumpets is known in Jewish literature as the wedding day of Moshiach. We read in Revelation 19: 6 – 9, **‘And I heard, as it were, the voice of a great multitude and as the sound of many waters and as the sound of mighty peals of thunder, saying, “Hallelujah! For YHVH our Elohim, the Almighty, reins. (7) Let us rejoice and be glad and give the glory to Him, for the marriage of the Lamb has come and His bride has made herself ready.”(8) And it was given to her to clothe herself in fine linen, bright and clean; for the fine linen is the righteous acts of the saints. (9) And he said to me, “Write, ‘Blessed are those who are invited to the marriage supper of the Lamb.’” And he said to me, “These are true words of Elohim.”’**

The bridegroom takes his bride and spread his prayer shawl or tallit over her and take her to the wedding chamber, where they will consummate the marriage. They will spend a period of seven days in the wedding chambers, whilst a friend of the groom would guard the door of the wedding chamber. After the consummation of the marriage, the groom would take the bed sheets and give it to his friend to hand to the family of the bride. The bride’s family would keep the bed sheets as evidence that the bride was indeed a virgin. As much as the bed sheets were given to the bride’s family as evidence of her virginity, Yahshua’s clothing bloodied during His impalement will be proof that we are acceptable to the Father, becoming at one with the Bridegroom. It is the covering by His garment that will ensure that our sins are covered and that we will be accepted as His bride.

Scriptures teach that the coming of Yahshua will be preceded by the Great Tribulation, known by the Jewish Sages as the ‘time of Jacob’s trouble.’ When Yahshua comes to ‘abduct’ or snatch away His bride, the dead in Messiah will rise first, and those who are alive shall be caught up together in the clouds, to meet Yahshua in the air. Yahshua’s wife will be hidden in the wedding chamber for seven days – during the Feast of Tabernacles, and be protected from the time of Jacob’s trouble. We read accordingly in Isaiah 26: 19 – 21, **‘Your dead will live; Their corpses will rise. You who lie in the dust, awake and shout for joy, For your dew is as the dew of the dawn, And the earth will give birth to the departed spirits. (20) Come, my people enter into your rooms, And close your doors behind you; Hide for a little while, Until indignation runs its course. (21) For behold, YHVH is about to come out from His place To punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity; And the earth will reveal her bloodshed, And will no longer cover her slain.’** King David confirmed this in Psalm 27: 5, saying: **‘For the day of trouble He will conceal me in His tabernacle; In the secret place of His tent He will hide me; He will lift me up on a rock.’** The ancient Jewish marriage chamber could be a picture of the rooms in Yahshua’s Father’s house, described in John 14 quoted earlier.

After the seven day honeymoon period, the couple would come out of the wedding chamber and join the guests for a very festive marriage feast. Similarly after the seven day Feast of Tabernacles, Yahshua would come out to be crowned King and High Priest, and those of us who made it into the kingdom, will rule under Him as kings and priests during his millennial rule. The bride will continue to serve Her Husband during the millennium and the Great White Throne judgment. As the bride and groom would celebrate their wedding supper, so would Yahshua and His bride celebrate their marriage supper. We read so in Revelation 19: 7 – 9, ***“Let us rejoice and be glad and give the glory to Him, for the marriage of the Lamb has come and His bride has made herself ready.”*** (8) ***And it was given to her to clothe herself in fine linen, bright and clean; for the fine linen is the righteous acts of the saints.*** (9) ***And he said to me, “Write, ‘Blessed are those who are invited to the marriage supper of the Lamb.’”*** ***And he said to me, “These are the true words of Elohim.”*** After the marriage supper is over, the bride and groom would leave the house of the groom and move to their own home. Similarly Yahshua and His bride will leave the wedding chamber in His Father’s house and move to Jerusalem, from where He will rule the world, with His bride. What a wonderful picture, which those of us keeping the Feast Days of YHVH get to understand.

## **Chapter 11: What is the meaning of the four cups of wine?**

The four cups of wine used in the Jewish Passover has to do with the ancient Hebrew marriage process. Once a young Hebrew man becomes interested in a Hebrew woman, the prospective groom makes his first move, by bringing his father to the intended bride's home. They bring with a betrothal cup of wine together with the price he is willing and able to pay for his future bride. When they arrive at the prospective bride's home they would knock and her father would peek through a small window to identify the visitors, and then look at his daughter to confirm that she is in agreement. She would open the door and if her answer is yes the betrothal process will commence. Once the door is opened the only question that remains, is to work out the terms of the agreement.

This is exactly what Yahshua is saying to His future bride in Revelation 3: 20, in this way: ***'Behold, I stand at the door and knock; if anyone hears My voice and opens the door, I will come in to Him, and will dine with him and he with Me.'*** When you open the door He comes in and the restoration process begins. It is at that point that you have salvation and He asks if you would enter into the betrothal covenant with Him. Will you walk in a loving relationship with Him as your future bridegroom? But, we need to remember that the choice to follow Him remains ours, similar to that of the ancient Hebrew bride. If the prospective bride decided not to open the door to the bridegroom, the young man would simply have turned around and gone back home; and even after opening the door the prospective bride could end the process at any point during the negotiations.

However, once the couple is betrothed to one another the agreement is binding and could not be cancelled without proper grounds, such as should the bride being found not to be a virgin. The young man prepared a marriage contract (transliterated in Hebrew as a *'Ketubah'*), which he will give to the bride-to-be and her father. The marriage contract includes the gift or price he is prepared to pay the young woman's parents as an expression of his love for her and for bringing her up. In order to find out if his marriage proposal was accepted by the bride-to-be, the young man would pour a glass of wine for her and wait to see if she will drink it. This is the first cup of wine and represents a blood covenant between the two families. This cup is drunk as soon as the door is closed. Once the bride-to-be drinks the cup, she would have shown her acceptance of the young man's proposal and they would be betrothed. Then before the young man leaves, he would give the gift to his bride-to-be. After this the bride-to-be has to wait for him to return and collect her. This is when the young man would announce as Yahshua did in John 14: 2, saying: ***"In My Father's house are many dwelling places; if it were not so, I would have told you; for I go to prepare a place for you."*** In ancient times the young man would return to his father's house and build a room for her there. The young man was not allowed to do a careless job and had to obtain his father's approval before he could deem it ready for his future bride.

At this point in time neither the young man or his bride-to-be knows when he will return, but it is as Yahshua told his disciples in Matthew 24: 36, saying: ***"But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, nor the son, but the Father alone."*** During the future groom's absence, the bride-to-be would prepare herself, in order to be pure and beautiful when the groom returns one day. During this time of preparation she would wear a veil wherever she went, to show that she is betrothed and spoken for. Once the wedding chamber meets the young man's father's approval, the father would send the young man to return to his future bride's home to collect her. According to the ancient Hebrew wedding custom the bride-to-be kept a lamp beside her bed, and her bridesmaids also waited with her with oil available for their lamps. Similar as to the parable in Matthew 25 when the bridegroom would return to his future bride's home with a shout and the sound of a shofar to inform her to be ready. He will usually come after sunset and could arrive as late as midnight.

When the wedding company arrives at the groom's father's house they will enter the wedding chamber for a period of seven days to consummate the marriage. The groom's best friend would guard the wedding chamber's door so that no one could enter or exit during the seven day honeymoon period. After the seven days the groom would hand the bed sheets bearing the blood the bride shed due to her first intercourse. This is to show that his wife was pure before the wedding, but it also represents a blood covenant similar to Elohim's covenant with His people. During the seven day honeymoon, the couple's friends would celebrate their wedding, until the couple comes out of the wedding chamber, at which time there would be congratulations and the marriage supper will commence.

The four cups of wine is a reminder of the four covenants, which are progressive in nature. Each of the four covenants assists to set up, support and reinforce the ancient Hebrew wedding contract. It all starts when the groom comes to his prospective bride's home and knocks at the door. Once the prospective groom entered his future bride's home, they would work out the details of the wedding and would dine together. The members of the two families would also drink three of the four cups of wine, at certain points throughout the

negotiations. The initial cup was for Sanctification, which represented a blood covenant between the two families and is consumed as soon as the groom and his father entered the future bride's home. This is when the two families agree to serve one another and is therefore also known as the servant's cup. As the word 'Sanctification' shows that the future bride sets herself apart for her future groom only, in this way the two families also agree to become one family.

The second cup was the cup of Betrothal or the cup of bargaining, but also the cup of Dedication which showed a covenant of salt between the two families. This cup was drunk by the future bride and her groom together with both their fathers. The families represented by the fathers, agree to become friends with their son and daughter, and with each other. During the meal the two families would thrash out the details of the marriage contract, and once they have ironed out all their differences they would enter into a friendship covenant as they set-out the terms of the upcoming wedding. This is in the same way as Rav Shaul admonished believers in Messiah in Philippians 2: 12, saying: ***'So then my beloved, just as you have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your salvation with fear and trembling.***'

The third cup is the cup of Redemption or the cup of inheritance, which represent the sandal covenant and also indicate the shared inheritance of the marriage partners. The third cup was drunk by the bride and the groom after the meal came to an end, to indicate their commitment to one another. This cup officially sealed the marriage contract. After the bargaining was concluded, the families get a scribe to record the terms of the agreement, known as the Ketubah. After this cup the prospective groom and his father would return to the father's home where the groom would prepare the wedding chamber for his future bride. This cup also agrees with the cup which Yahshua shared with His disciples during His last Passover before His impalement. This is when Yahshua washed His disciples feet, thereby transferring His inheritance to them with the sandal covenant. When Yahshua died saying in John 19: 30, ***"It is finished!"*** He was essentially also saying 'kallah' meaning My bride – showing that now that He died, He will be able to remarry His bride again, whom He divorced because of her adultery after His resurrection, ascension and eventual return to earth. Since it was customary for the prospective husband not to drink wine until he returns to fetch his bride one day, Yahshua also said in Luke 22: 17 – 18, ***"Take this and share it among yourselves; (18) for I say to you I will not drink of the fruit of the vine from now on until the kingdom of Elohim comes."***

Once we are in a relationship with Yahshua we cannot restructure our relationship with Him to suit us. The Ketubah that we agreed to with Messiah is the Torah. The marriage contract is made up of five parts worked out between the two families during the meal they shared together, as follows:

1. To start with the collective family history of both the groom and the bride, including family trees and narratives.
2. This is followed by a personal and family history of the bride, with a family tree and narratives.
3. Third followed a personal family history of the groom, with family tree and narratives.
4. Fourth the story of how the bride and groom met, and
5. Fifth and lastly a section detailing both the bride's and the groom's responsibilities before and after the wedding.

The five books of the Torah resemble the five parts of the ancient Hebrew marriage Ketubah, as follows:

1. Genesis gives the combined history of the bride and the groom.
2. Exodus gives the personal and family history of the bride.
3. Leviticus gives the history of Elohim's family, and Lawgivers, namely the Levites.
4. Numbers relate Elohim's love affair with His people in the wilderness and records both His joy and sorrow as He reaches out to His bride.
5. Deuteronomy stipulates the responsibilities of both the bride and the groom.

This tells us that the Torah is written as a marriage contract between Elohim and His people Israel.

After the couple drank the third cup of wine the groom had to pay the price for his bride, namely thirty pieces of silver, as stipulated in Leviticus 27: 4. The price that Yahshua paid for us was to pay our death penalty for disobedience to Torah. The free gift He gives us at immersion is when He redeems us and we are saved – is salvation. This is when we accept Him as our personal Passover. After this the groom and His father left for their home where the son had the responsibility to prepare a place or position under the control of his father, who was the only one who could judge when the groom's preparation for his bride were complete and sufficient.

The fourth cup of wine, the wine of Praise, shared between the bride and groom during the wedding ceremony, after the groom returned to fetch his bride from her father's house. The fourth cup awaits those

who are chosen to be the bride of Messiah. It will be consumed on the wedding day and will seal Yahshua's union with His bride. However, to be able to qualify for the fourth cup of wine, we need to have met all the previous requirements by entering into the first three.



## **Chapter 12: The lighting of candles before the Sabbath- what does it mean?**

There are some in our Nazarene Jewish/Israelite faith (and likeminded believers) who insinuate that the lighting of candles before the Sabbath is a non-Scriptural custom of the Jews, which we should not adopt. My purpose with this sermon is to show why our Jewish brothers as well as most of us are lighting Sabbath candles/lamps. Having discussed the ancient Jewish wedding customs in our last sermon, I would like to show in this sermon, how according to the Jewish tradition, the Sabbath is personified as the bride (or Israel) and YHVH the Elohim of Israel as the groom. On the wedding day the groom is seen as a king and the bride as a queen. The two words *'bride'* and *'queen'* are also used to describe the Sabbath Day according to the Talmud (Shabbat 119a). Because the Sabbath is seen as being a bride or a queen, it represents the feminine component of creation.

The Hebrew term for the first part of the ancient Jewish wedding ceremony is betrothal: *'kiddushin'* meaning sanctified. Kiddushin comes from the three letter Hebrew root (kaf, dalet and shin) - **קדש**. The Hebrew word for sanctify (kodesh) is also derived from these same Hebrew root letters. It is for this reason that the traditional Jewish Rabbi's interpret the Scriptural statement: ***"Then Elohim blessed the seventh day and sanctified it"*** as meaning that He betrothed the Sabbath to His people Israel. Further more traditional Judaism holds that YHVH the Elohim of Israel entered into a marriage covenant with Israel at mount Sinai. We read why they came to believe this in Jeremiah 2: 1 & 2, as follows: ***'Now the word of YHVH came to me saying, (2) "Go and proclaim in the ears of Jerusalem, saying, 'Thus says YHVH, "I remember concerning you the devotion of your youth, The love of your betrothals, Your following after Me in the wilderness."***

In the traditional Jewish marriage ceremony, the bride is sanctified, before the actual marriage takes place. We read accordingly in Exodus 19: 10 & 11, ***'YHVH also said to Moses, "Go to the people and consecrate them today and tomorrow, and let them wash their garments; (11) and let them be ready for the third day, for on the third day YHVH will come down on Mount Sinai in the sight of the people.'*** This alludes to Messiah, who left the earth 2000 years ago (or two days in Elohim's sight – as per Ps. 90: 4 & 2 Peter 3: 8), and will soon return to rule the world from Jerusalem. On the other hand, prior to the traditional wedding ceremony, the bride is sanctified by being mikvahed (or immersed) in a pool of water. The ceremony will also have two witnesses present. They will escort the bride to the wedding canopy called the *'chupah'* where the marriage ceremony will occur. When YHVH entered into the covenant (marriage) with Israel, Moses was seen as being one of the witnesses. In Exodus 19: 17, we see Moses being the witness who escorts the bride to the *'chupah'* as follows: ***'And Moses brought the people out of the camp to Meet Elohim, and they stood at the foot of the mountain.'*** Mount Sinai was seen as the *'chupah'* in the marriage that took place between YHVH and Israel. In addition, when a bride and groom are married in the traditional sense, they will have a marriage contract, stating the terms and conditions of the marriage. The Rabbi's in traditional Judaism saw the marriage contract between YHVH and Israel as being the Torah that YHVH gave to Moses at Mount Sinai.

The ring that was given to the bride was seen as being the Sabbath. Keeping the Sabbath is a sign or token to remember the eternal love between YHVH and His bride. The Sabbath is an eternal covenant between YHVH and His people. It is to be kept forever. We read further in Exodus 31: 12 – 18 ***'And YHVH spoke to Moses, saying, (13) "But as for you speak to the sons of Israel saying, 'You shall surely observe My Sabbaths; for this is a sign between Me and you throughout your generations, that you may know that I am YHVH who sanctifies you. (14) Therefore you are to observe the Sabbath, for it is holy to you. Everyone who profanes it shall surely be put to death; for whoever does any work on it, that person shall be cut off from among his people. (15) For six days work may be done, but on the seventh day there is a Sabbath of complete rest, holy to YHVH; whoever does any work on the Sabbath day shall surely be put to death. (16) So the sons of Israel shall observe the Sabbath, to celebrate the Sabbath throughout their generations as a perpetual covenant. (17) It is a sign between Me and the sons of Israel forever; for in six days YHVH made heaven and earth, but on the seventh day He ceased from labor, and was refreshed. (18) And when He had finished speaking with him upon Mount Sinai, He gave Moses the two tablets of the testimony, tablets of stone, written by the finger of Elohim.'***

Notice in verse 13 of the above quoted Scripture, that YHVH spoke about His Sabbaths not only about His Sabbath. This means that not only is the Sabbath a sign between YHVH and His people, but so are all His Sabbaths, meaning both the weekly and annual Sabbaths or annual Set-apart days, signs that we are His people, and that YHVH is our Elohim. We are therefore obliged to not only keep the weekly Sabbath, but also the annual Sabbaths as we are commanded in Leviticus 23: 1 – 4: ***'YHVH spoke again to Moses saying, (2) "Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, '(YHVH)'s appointed times (feasts) which you shall***

**proclaim as Set-apart convocations – My appointed times (feasts) are these: (3) ‘For six days work may be done; but on the seventh day there is a Sabbath of complete rest, a Set-apart convocation. You shall not do any work; it is a Sabbath to YHVH in all your dwellings. (4) These are the appointed times of YHVH, Set-apart convocations which you shall proclaim at the times appointed for them.’”**

There are two important Hebrew words in the quoted portion, which are translated as appointed times (or feasts) and convocations, explaining the significance of the weekly Sabbath, starting from Friday at sundown to Saturday at sundown. The word feast comes from the Hebrew word transliterated as ‘mo’ed’ meaning an appointment. It means a fixed or set time. In verse 2 of Leviticus 23, we see that the Sabbath is also a Set-apart (holy) convocation. This is the Hebrew word transliterated as ‘miqra’ meaning an assembly or rehearsal. YHVH is therefore telling His people that the Sabbath is an appointed time during which He wants us to rehearse. But what is it that YHVH wants us to rehearse? The Sabbath is when we rehearse the Torah, teaching us about His kingdom and our redemption through the Messiah and the Messianic age (known as the Athid Lavo).

In the traditional Jewish home, the Sabbath is welcomed by the woman of the house, by lighting two Sabbath candles and saying the following blessing: *‘Blessed are you YHVH Elohim, King of the Universe, who has set us apart by Your commandments and commanded us to kindle the lamp.’* As in a traditional wedding ceremony, where at least two witnesses are required to be present, the two lit candles are known as the two witnesses. However there are more interpretations as to the meaning of the two candles: one of these being that, the candles represent, Moses and Elijah, or the Torah and the Prophets. Obedience to the Torah and the Prophets will set-apart the family of Elohim, after which YHVH will enter into the second part of the traditional Jewish marriage ceremony, to consummate the marriage between Him and His bride.

In a previous sermon I mentioned how Yahshua showed His primarily Jewish audience at the time, that the Torah and the Prophets spoke about Him, in John 5: 43 – 47, saying: ***“I have come in My Father’s name, and you do not receive Me; if another shall come in his own name, you will receive him. (44) How can you believe, when you receive glory from one another, and you do not seek the esteem that is from the one and only Elohim? (45) Do not think that I will accuse you before the Father; the one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have set your hope. (46) For if you believed Moses, you would believe Me; for he wrote of Me. (47) But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe My words?”*** When reading this, we should not be deceived to assume that, because Yahshua addressed mainly His Jewish audience here, that this admonition is aimed at Jews only; on the contrary, verse 47 makes it clear that we cannot believe in Yahshua’s words, unless we believe the writings of Moses.

After His death and resurrection Yahshua again showed His disciples and the woman who came to His tomb, in Luke 24: 25 – 27, and in verses 44 – 47, that the Torah and the Prophets spoke about Him, as follows: ***‘And He said to them, “O foolish men and slow of heart to believe in all that the prophets have spoken! (26) Was it not necessary for the Messiah to suffer these things and to enter into His esteem (glory)?” (27) And beginning with Moses and with all the prophets, He explained to them the things concerning Himself in all the Scriptures (meaning the Tanach being the only Scriptures available at the time).’ (44) ‘Now He said to them, “These are My words which I spoke to you while I was still with you, that all things which are written about Me in the Law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled.” (45) Then He opened their minds to understand the Scriptures. (46) and He said to them, “Thus it is written, that the Messiah should suffer and rise again from the dead the third day; (47) and that repentance for forgiveness of sins should be proclaimed in His name to all the nations, beginning from Jerusalem.”’***

Yahshua prayed that YHVH sanctify His called out ones through His word, meaning the Tanach. We read His prayer in John 17: 1 – 5 & 17, as follows: ***‘These things Yahshua spoke; and lifting up His eyes to heaven, He said, “Father, the hour has come; glorify Thy Son, that the Son may glorify Thee, (2) even as Thou gavest Him authority over all mankind, that to all whom Thou hast given Him, He may give eternal life. (3) And this is eternal life, that they may know Thee, the only true Elohim, and Yahshua Messiah whom thou hast sent. (4) I glorified Thee on the earth, having accomplished the work which Thou hast given Me to do. (5) And now, glorify Thou Me together with Thyself, Father, with the glory which I had with thee before the world was. (17) Sanctify them in the truth; Thy word is truth.”’***

The two candles which are lit on the Sabbath by the woman of the house, represents the Torah and the Prophets which speak of Yahshua our Messiah. And since the Sabbath is personified as the bride (or Israel), the two candles represent Israel, the Bride and Her future husband, Yahshua the Messiah. This is as it is pictured in Revelation 19: 7 & 8, as follows: ***“Let us rejoice and be glad and give the glory to Him, for the marriage of the Lamb has come and His bride has made herself ready.”(8) And it was given to her to clothe herself in fine linen, bright and clean; for the fine linen is the righteous acts of the saints.’***

The candles lit on the Sabbath by the lady of the house are called lamps or lights. The word for lamp in the Scriptures is the Hebrew word transliterated as 'Ner/Nerah'. The word lamp and light are very important concepts throughout the Scriptures. The Torah of Elohim is likened unto a lamp in Psalm 119: 105, stating: ***"Thy word is a lamp to my feet, And a light to my path."*** Keeping the commandments and Torah of Elohim is like a lamp guiding us in a dark world to do Elohim's will. This is confirmed in the first part of Proverbs 6: 23, as follows: ***'For the commandment is a lamp, and the teaching is light.'*** We also see that the good news or gospel of Yahshua our Messiah is called a light in 2 Corinthians 4: 3, 4 & 6: ***'And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing, (5) in whose case the god of this world (Satan) has blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that they might not see the light of the gospel of the esteem of Messiah, who is the image of Elohim. (6) For Elohim, who said, "light shall shine out of darkness," is the One who has shone in our hearts to give the light of the knowledge of the esteem (glory) of Elohim in the face of Messiah.'*** Yahshua confirms that He is indeed our light in John 8: 12, as follows: ***'Again therefore Yahshua spoke to them saying, "I am the light of the world; he who follows Me shall not walk in the darkness, but shall have the light of life."*** In addition we read in John 12: 35, 36 & 46, ***'Yahshua therefore said to them, "For a little while longer the light is among you. Walk while you have light, that darkness may not overtake you; he who walks in the darkness does not know where he goes. (36) While you have the light, believe in the light, in order that you may become sons of light. (46) I have come as light into the world, that everyone who believes in Me may not remain in darkness."***

We read in 1 John 1: 5 that Elohim is light, as follows: ***'And this is the message we have from Him and announce to you, that Elohim is light, and in Him there is no darkness at all.'*** Because Yahshua is Elohim, he is also light. An internet friend and fellow Nazarene named Tsippi Cohen put it like this: *'Our Heavenly "Father" .. unknowable and unapproachable decides that He wishes to be known, ... to do this He reaches within Himself (Atzimi) and from Himself and within Himself. His very own being the "heart" of His essence is the "Word" which comes forth from within Him. The "Word" has always existed as the expression of the "Father" and was the vehicle of creation which burst forth from within the "Father" to create the universes after the "Father" constricted His being to form a void in which the universes would be created. This process of constriction is known as the Tzimtzum and in Hebrew physics the "Light" that burst forth from the "Father" after the constriction is the "Kav" or ray of light, .. which Scripturally can be nothing else other than His "Word". We know that when we are immersed in the name of Yahshua, we are given a portion of the Set-apart Spirit of Elohim. We therefore read in Proverbs 20: 27 ***'The spirit of man is the lamp of YHVH, searching all the innermost parts of his being.'****

We as believers in Yahshua our Messiah are told to let our light shine into the world, in Matthew 5: 14 – 16 ***"You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden. (15) Nor do men light a lamp, and put it under the peck-measure, but on the lampstand; and it gives light to all who are in the house. (16) Let your light shine before men in such a way that they see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in heaven."*** As mentioned at the beginning the lamp is associated with a traditional Jewish marriage. This is confirmed in Jeremiah 25: 10, ***"Moreover, I will take from them the voice of joy and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bride, the sound of the millstones and the light of the lamp."***

In the traditional Jewish wedding, the city of Jerusalem is seen as the city of the bride. We read in Revelation 21: 2, 9 -11, ***'And I saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from Elohim, made ready as a bride adorned for her husband. (9) And one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls full of the seven last plagues, came and spoke with me, saying, "Come here, I shall show you the bride, the wife of the Lamb." (10) And he carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain, and showed me the holy city, Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from Elohim, (11) having the glory of Elohim. Her brilliance was like a very costly stone, as a stone of crystal-clear jasper.'***

YHVH instructed Moses in Exodus 25 to make a lampstand with 6 branches, each holding a lamp, with a seventh in the middle. We read in Exodus 25: 37, ***"Then you shall make its lamps seven in number; and they shall mount its lamps so as to shed light on the space in front of it."*** We read further in Exodus 40: 24 & 25, ***'Then he placed the lampstand in the tent of meeting, opposite the table, on the south side of the tabernacle. (25) And he lighted the lamps before YHVH, just as YHVH had commanded Moses.'***

YHVH gave us the Sabbath as a day of rest and rejuvenation. The word Shabbat means 'to rest'. Today we are so busy that few of us have time to spend the beginning of the Sabbath together as a family. Lighting the candles at least 20 minutes before the Sabbath commences, helps us unwind and take our focus from the world and its worries and refocus on YHVH. The reason for this is that we are not allowed to kindle a fire on the Sabbath. Once the candles are lit, it should be allowed to burn out completely and should not be quenched. The Sabbath begins at sundown on Friday evening. As mentioned before the woman of the house usually lights the Sabbath candles. From a Nazarene point of view, we remember that YHVH chose a

woman, Miriam, to carry and bring forth Yahshua the light of the world. Lighting the first candle reminds us about the creation of the universe, as we read in Genesis 1: 1 & 3, as follows: ***'In the beginning Elohim created the heavens and the earth. (3) Then Elohim said, "Let there be light"; and there was light.'*** The second candle represents redemption. Yahshua our redeemer said in John 8: 12, ***"I am the light of the world; he who follows Me shall not walk in the darkness, but shall have the light of life."*** The woman may at this point offer up a prayer for her family and fellow believers; for peace during the Sabbath and most of all, for the peace of Jerusalem: which we know will only happen when Yahshua returns one day.

There are much more to celebrating the Sabbath than what I gave you here. But my purpose was simply to tell you why we light candles at the commencement of the Sabbath. I hope that this gives you a glimpse at what is really a scripturally supported custom. Also be mindful that according to 1 Peter 2: 9, ***'(But) you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a Set-apart nation, a people for Elohim's own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.'*** Baruch HaShem YHVH!

---

#### **Herewith the short candle lighting service that we follow:**

The lady of the house covers her head with a headscarf before lighting the two candles. A daughter may also light a pair of candles, as she learns from her mother.

The lady prays as follows: *'ABBA YHVH, we thank You for all the blessings of Your rest and peace this evening. Let the Ruach HaKodesh be with us as we partake of this Sabbath. Fill our hearts and minds with Your shalom, Your shalom that surpasses all understanding. Guide each of us that we may bless one another with our words and actions. We ask Your blessing over our home and family. Pour out Your Ruach upon us as we partake of Your Sabbath, Your rest. May our home, our hearts and our minds be used by You to bring the news that Messiah has come, has risen and will come again! In the name of Yahshua Messiah we pray. Amein.'*

Lighting the Candles. (As the candle is lit, remember that YHVH chose another woman, Miriam, to bring forth "the Light of the world" namely Yahshua our Messiah.)

The lady continues praying: *'Blessed are you YHVH Elohim, King of the Universe, who has set us apart by Your commandments and commanded us to kindle the lamp.'*

The first candle represents creation, as per Genesis 1: 1, 3: ***'In the beginning Elohim created the heavens and the earth. (3) Then Elohim said, "let there be light"; and there was light.'***

The second candle represents redemption, as per John 8: 12: ***'Again therefore Yahshua spoke to them, saying: "I am the light of the world; he who follows Me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life."'***

The lady may continue to pray silently, and will end by saying: *'In the name of Yahshua Messiah we pray. Amein.'*

### Chapter 13: Servant leadership.

Yahshua taught His disciples the principle of servant leadership throughout His ministry and especially in John 13, when He washed His disciples' feet before His last Passover. We read in John 13: 12 – 16, ***'And so when He had washed their feet, and taken His garments, and reclined at the table again, He said to them, "Do you know what I have done to you? (13) You call Me Teacher and Master (MarYah in Aramaic meaning YHVH); and you are right, for so I am. (14) If I then, the Master and the Teacher, washed your feet, you also ought to wash one another's feet. (15) For I gave you an example that you also should do as I did to you. (16) Truly, truly, I say to you, a slave is not greater than his master; neither is one who is sent greater than the one who sent him.'*** The point is that we are to follow Yahshua's example in what He did and said whilst He was on earth. We need to study Yahshua's life and ways in the Scriptures so that we may get to know Him and do what He taught.

We read accordingly the parable that He taught His disciples in Luke 6: 39 – 49, as follows: ***'And He also spoke a parable to them: "A blind man cannot guide a blind man, can he? Will they not both fall into a pit? (40) A pupil is not above his teacher; but everyone, after he has been fully trained, will be like his teacher. (41) And why do you look at the speck that is in your brother's eye, but do not notice the log that is in your own eye? (42) Or how can you say to your brother, 'Brother, let me take out the speck that is in your eye," when you yourself do not see the log that is in your own eye? You hypocrite, first take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the speck that is in your brother's eye. (43) For there is no good tree which produces bad fruit; nor, on the other hand, a bad tree which produces good fruit. (44) For each tree is known by its own fruit. For men do not gather figs from thorns, nor do they pick grapes from a briar bush. (45) The good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth what is good; and the evil man out of the evil treasure brings forth what is evil; for his mouth speaks from that which fills his heart. (Essentially meaning that we have to judge people by what they do and teach others to do.)" (46) "And why do you call Me, 'Master, Master,' and do not do what I say? (Those who teach us should do and teach what Yahshua taught His disciples, whilst He was on earth) (47) Everyone who comes to Me and hears My words, and acts upon them, I will show you whom he is like: (48) he is like a man building a house, who dug deep (searched the Scriptures) and laid a foundation upon the rock (Messiah himself, not Peter, Paul or any other apostle); and when a flood rose, the torrent burst against that house and could not shake it, because it had been well built. (If our doctrine is based on the word of YHVH, or the teachings of Yahshua, we will withstand any storm). (49) But the one who has heard, and has not acted accordingly, is like a man who built a house upon the ground without any foundation: and the torrent burst against it and immediately it collapsed and the ruin of the house was great."*** Ask yourself, who or what is the foundation of the group that you follow? Is it the rock of our Salvation Yahshua, or is it a group or leader, who teaches that they have been given the Oracles of Elohim, because the Jews were unfaithful? Do you follow the commandments of YHVH or the traditions of men?

Reliability is a key characteristic required in any group club or association. There are people in our movement that we know we can count on whilst there are others who are inconsistent. A steadfast, faithful type of reliability is not easily to be found in society, today. Look at the pattern that you have established in your own life. Do you recognize a model of reliability? What happens when things go wrong in your life? How will those who know you, like your spouse, your children and your friends, rate your reliability? Reliability is something that we learn by practicing it in all the areas of our lives, such as at work, in marriage, the way we teach our children and at Sabbath services. We have all seen a person/leader that is according to James 1: 8, ***'being a double-minded man, unstable in all his ways.'*** Such leaders and people cause more damage to our community than what they will ever understand. They hurt many people in a wake of disappointment, because they teach doctrines based on traditions of men. The pattern that they leave in the wake of false teachings and actions, are evidenced by broken relationships. In addition they cause people to dishonor the Name of YHVH.

Those who are teaching us should be faithful no matter what happens. Faithfulness is a vital part of a believers walk with Elohim. It takes a very good follower to become a great leader. We read in 1 John 2: 3 - 6 talking about Yahshua, saying: ***'And by this we know that we have come to know Him, if we keep His commandments. (4) The one who says, "I have come to know Him," and does not keep His commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him: (5) but whoever keeps His word, in him the love of Elohim has truly been perfected. By this we know that we are in Him: (6) the one who says he abides in Him ought himself to walk in the same manner as He walked.'*** David knew that it takes a good follower to become a great leader. He followed king Saul, even when king Saul wanted to kill him. This means that whilst you are following, you put aside your needs and wants, in order that through the present leader the plan of YHVH can be fulfilled. Whilst some are prepared to do this, others will shy away from it. There is a great deal to learn from following and supporting a good leader. Because of the inability of many to

follow, there is a great deal of division in the Nazarene Israelite community at this time. People will easily accuse or point out the imperfections of an earthly leader, even though perfection is not a prerequisite for leadership. Followers as well as their leaders need a great deal of the fruits of the Spirit to effectively follow and lead. This world is after all our training ground for leadership in the kingdom of Elohim. When Yahshua was on earth He was and still is our leader. However, He was also a follower, in that He said that He does or say nothing which His Father did not want Him to say and do. Yes, in Him the fullness of Elohim (Deity) dwells in bodily form (as per Colossians 2: 9), but we should also put on the mind of Messiah, so that we are controlled by Him, in what we do and say. Yahshua is our leader but as a follower of His Father YHVH, He was full of long-suffering and humility, as we read in Philippians 2: 8, as follows: ***'And being found in appearance as a man, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on the cross.'***

YHVH is presently calling the Israelites whom He has dispersed amongst the nations of the world, to come out of bondage, like He did the ancient Israelites out of Egypt. At that time the Israelites moved forward as one, after YHVH displayed His power to deliver them from slavery in Egypt through a series of plagues. Today, people are coming out of the religions and education systems of the world in record numbers in search for a better way. But this time the process is slower and the journey is not very orderly. The reason for this is that people do not trust those in leadership any longer. In fact some do not even trust their parents and grandparents in respect of religious matters any longer and rightly so. We read fittingly in Jeremiah 16: 19, ***"O YHVH, my strength and my stronghold, And my refuge in the day of distress, To Thee the nations will come From the ends of the earth and say, "Our fathers have inherited nothing but falsehood, Futility and things of no profit."*** There are many steps towards the restoration process and not all people are at the same level at the same time. Some started coming out many years ago, whilst others are only being called out at this time. It is for this reason that those that are coming out need people to guide them onto the right path.

Our Father YHVH is not an Elohim of confusion, as we read in 1 Corinthians 14: 33, ***'for Elohim is not an Elohim of confusion but of peace, as in all the ecclesia of the saints (believers).'*** We should not be yoked together with unbelievers as we are told in 2 Corinthians 6: 14 - 18, ***'Do not be bound together with unbelievers; for what partnership have righteousness and lawlessness, or what fellowship has light with darkness? (15) Or what harmony has Messiah with Belial, or what has a believer in common with an unbeliever? (16) Or what agreement has the temple of Elohim with idols? For we are the temple of the living Elohim; just as He said, "I WILL DWELL IN THEM AND WALK AMONG THEM; AND I WILL BE THEIR ELOHIM, AND THEY SHALL BE MY PEOPLE. (17) Therefore, COME OUT FROM THEIR MIDST AND BE SEPARATE," says YHVH. "AND DO NOT TOUCH WHAT IS UNCLEAN; And I will welcome you. (18) "And I will be a father to you, And you shall be sons and daughters to Me," Says YHVH Almighty.'*** We also read in Amos 3: 3, ***'Do two men walk together unless they have made an appointment.'*** As explained in last week's sermon the word appointment comes from the Hebrew word transliterated as 'mo'ed', meaning Feast Day of Elohim. This verse is essentially saying that two cannot walk together, unless they agree on the timing of the Feast Days of Elohim.

There is a great need for order in our community at this time. We need to start marching to Zion in an orderly fashion. Imagine the chaos if the Israelites did not have a leader. How long would they have lasted on their own? Ask yourself: How long will you and I last on our own? There was a time during which the nation of Israel were leaderless, and they depended on their own independent accepted wisdom. We read about it in Judges 2: 19 & 20, as follows: ***'But it came about when the judge died, that they would turn back and act more corruptly than their fathers, in following other gods to serve them and bow down to them; they did not abandon their practices or their stubborn ways. (20) So the anger of YHVH burned against Israel, and He said, "Because this nation has transgressed My covenant which I commanded their fathers, and has not listened to My voice.'*** Is that truly the legacy that we want to leave our children? We the Israel of Elohim are to become a nation that He wants to use as an example to the rest of the world: A light shining in the darkness. It was like that when Israel first left Egypt and it will be like that when Messiah returns. We should get to a point in our walk with YHVH our Elohim, where we are willing to lay aside personal preferences and agendas for the greater purpose of restoring the kingdom of Elohim. We should be people of whom YHVH will say, they are people after My own heart, as He said of king David.

Spiritual authority is spoken about throughout the Scriptures. YHVH has always risen up those that he wanted to lead His people. In most of those times, the individuals that He chose did not seek such an office. When looking at those that YHVH has chosen to lead His people at this time, we need to ask: Did they seek the office on their own, or did they consider their calling an obligation to serve YHVH our Elohim? Have they proven their faithfulness and reliability over a period of years, or are they new converts? A good example of how to identify a true leader is the instruction that Rav Shaul gave in 1 Timothy 3: 2 – 7, as follows: ***'An overseer, then, must be above reproach, the husband of one wife, temperate, prudent, respectable,***

**hospitable, able to teach, (3) not addicted to wine or pugnacious, but gentle, un-contentious, free from love of money. (4) He must be one who manages his own household well, keeping his children under control with all dignity (5) (but if a man does not know how to manage his own household, how will he take care of the ecclesia of Elohim?); (6) and not a new convert, lets he become conceited and fall into condemnation incurred by the devil. (7) And he must have a good reputation with those outside the ecclesia, so that he may not fall into reproach and the snare of the devil.'**

In addition we should consider whether the Spiritual leader who we are following, is busy building his own kingdom, or proclaiming the Kingdom of Elohim? There are many leaders today who are trying to build a kingdom, of their own design. Their despotic approach is usually masked by accusations against those who question them, along with claims that 'YHVH told me so, or the Spirit laid it upon my heart'. Leaders must in the most be about our Father's business, and not be busy doing their own commercial business. When we want to understand whose kingdom a leader is busy building, we need to ask the following pertinent questions:

1. Is the leader promoting Torah, otherwise known as the instruction manual of YHVH? The foundation or cornerstone of the Kingdom of Elohim is Yahshua the rock of our Salvation, also known as the Word of YHVH or Torah. It is impossible for anyone to build the kingdom of Elohim, without being grounded in Torah. Those who deny the Deity of Yahshua, i.e. that Yahshua is YHVH in the flesh, pervert the Scriptures. In addition those who deny the Oneness of Elohim are denying or contradicting YHVH and His Word.
2. Does the leader question the writings of Rav Shaul known in Christian Bibles as Paul? It is usually after denying the writings of Rav Shaul, that such people start making up their own doctrines.
3. Does the leader hold onto Yahshua, whilst rejecting parts of Torah? We need to remember Yahshua's own words in this respect in Matthew 5: 18 & 19, as follows: **"For truly I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass away from the Law, until all is accomplished. (19) Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments, and so teaches others, shall be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven."** So the question to answer: Is the earth still here? If so, then YHVH our Elohim's Torah is still in force today.
4. In the same way those who hold to Torah, whilst denying the authority of Yahshua might miss their eternal award. We read in Jeremiah 8: 9, **"The wise men are put to shame, They are dismayed and caught: Behold they have rejected the word of YHVH, And what kind of wisdom do they have?"**
5. There are those in the Nazarene Israelite faith, who go to people who do not believe in Yahshua, but contradict what He said in the Brit Chadashah, regarding the Pharisees.
6. Does the leader have the fruit of the Spirit in his life; Does he love the brethren enough to teach them freely to serve and obey YHVH only. Is he a servant leader or does he lord it over the people that he teach. However, do not forget that we as Nazarene Israelites are watchmen over the people of Israel, and according to Isaiah 58: 1, should: **"Cry loudly, do not hold back; Raise your voice like a trumpet, And declare to My people their transgressions, And to the house of Jacob their sins."** Leaders should generally live by and have higher standards than those who follow them. They (like their followers) should have evidence of the fruits of the Spirit, listed in Galatians 5: 22 & 23, in their lives. The example that a leader sets is very important in today's world. We read in James 3: 1, **'Let not many of you become teachers, my brethren, knowing that as such we shall incur a stricter judgment.'** We need to ensure that the leader we follow is a true servant-leader, fully aware of this section of the Scriptures in James 3.
7. There are many in our Nazarene Israelite community who get the jitters when someone mentions authority. The abuses of our past lives are automatically transferred to expected future abuses. However YHVH said in Jeremiah 23: 4, **"I shall also raise up shepherds over them and they will tend them; and they will not be afraid any longer, nor be terrified, nor will any be missing," declares YHVH.'** Lazy spiritual habits have led to people blindly accepting doctrines of men, instead of verifying the things they are taught, by self-study and checking if things are indeed so. Because people have in the past accepted false teachings, there are thousands of denominations and different groups today. We should not be a people who take the easy way out. Let us check each new teaching that we receive, by checking the Scriptures to see if things are as the teaching states it.

Let us learn from our past mistakes, but not throw the baby out with the bathwater. Each member of the body of Messiah is required for the body to function properly. When anyone fails to walk in his calling, the entire body is affected negatively. Let us come to order and plan to stop the bickering, strife and jealousy, which leads to unnecessary division. We should pray for those sending us Torah based teachings. We should pray

for proper guidance and Spirit filled teachings from those who are followers of Yahshua. Let us ask YHVH through Yahshua to send us good leaders, and that He teach us to become good followers. After all, we are all trying to be about our Father's business: Let us do things Elohim's way and leave our children a legacy of orderly believers which are prepared to usher in the kingdom of Elohim. HalleluYah!



## **Chapter 14: "See to it that no one misleads you."**

Do you assume that people who are known by Yahshua's title, i.e. Nazarenes, Messianics, or even Christians are followers of His beliefs, teachings and practices? Whilst Yahshua was on earth, He said in Matthew 24: 5, **"For many will come in My name, saying, 'I am the Messiah,' and will mislead many."** Quoting from the 'New American Standard Bible', I am fully aware that the last word from the quoted section is 'Christ' and not Messiah. However, when Yahshua was talking to His disciples about this matter two thousand years ago, the word 'Christ' was not known in the language in which He spoke to them. In translating the Scriptures into many languages, many of the original titles (and names), were changed to titles which might mean the same, but are associated with a counterfeit of the true faith, and also leads to confusion.

The Brit Chadashah (New Covenant) presents a detailed historical picture of the roots of two religions that profess to follow Yahshua and are known by His title, or translated title. Two opposing religions have emerged since Yahshua our Messiah ascended to heaven. Both these religions claim to follow His teachings. However, the original believers in Yahshua the Messiah were not known as Christians, but as the Jewish sect of the Nazarenes, as is recorded in Acts 24: 5 & 14. Their faith was also referred to as the way of Elohim, as we read in Acts 18: 25 & 26, as follows: ***'This man had been instructed in the way of YHVH; and being fervent in spirit, he was speaking and teaching accurately the things concerning Yahshua, being acquainted only with the immersion of John; (26) and he began to speak out boldly in the synagogue. But when Priscilla and Aquila heard him, they took him aside and explained to him the way of Elohim more accurately.'*** Like I mentioned in a previous sermon, worshipping YHVH is a way of thinking, acting and living, which affects every aspect of our lives. The disciples were Jewish believers in Yahshua who kept the Torah of YHVH as defined in Revelation 12: 17 & 14: 12. The Torah contains the teachings of Elohim and (we) Nazarene Jews/Israelites consider it to be the rules by which we live our lives: i.e. they regulate our moral precepts; dietary regulations; agricultural science; financial success; sexual behavior and religious practice.

The second religion which emerged after Yahshua's ascension to heaven was started by Simon Magus<sup>16</sup>, a man who used to practice magic in the city of Samaria, as we read in Acts 8: 9 – 11, ***'Now there was a certain man named Simon, who formerly was practicing magic in the city, and astonishing the people of Samaria, claiming to be someone great; (10) and they all, from smallest to greatest, were giving attention to him, saying, "This man is what is called the Great Power of G-d," (11) And they were giving him attention because he had for a long time astonished them with his magic arts.'*** Simon Magus was also the person who wanted to buy the Ruach HaKodesh from the apostle Peter, as is recorded in verses 18 - 20 of Acts 8, as follows: ***'Now when Simon saw that the Spirit was bestowed through the laying on of the apostles' hands, he offered them money, (19) saying, "Give this authority to me as well, so that everyone on whom I lay my hands may receive the Set-apart Spirit." (20) 'But Peter said to him, "May your silver perish with you, because you thought you could obtain the gift of Elohim with money!"'*** Simon Magus was the father of the counterfeit religion known as Christianity today. They follow J\*e\*s\*u\*s\* who abolished His Father's laws and ushered in 'the dispensation of grace'. The Nazarene movement which began with Yahshua the Jew is still composed of a small group of people who keep the commandments of Elohim and have faith in Him, whereas Christianity has grown to include every tribe and nation on the earth.

Yahshua and His disciples often spoke of false prophets, apostles, teachers, and brethren. Most of those of us, coming from Christianity, believe without hesitation that Yahshua and His disciples were specifically talking about Christianity. I agree that in a sense they were talking about Christianity, but, I am of the opinion that this is more so, talking about people like and amongst us, who have been called out of Christianity and the other religions of the world, to worship Elohim, keeping His Torah and have faith in Yahshua the Messiah. My reasons for saying this are two-fold:

1. Whilst Yahshua was on earth there was not a single person in the land of Israel, known as a Christian or even by the name J\*e\*s\*u\*s C\*h\*r\*i\*s\*t\*.

---

<sup>16</sup> A search in Google reveals that: *'The Gnostic Simon claimed that he was an incarnation of God; a common enough "Guru-ist" claim, then [Hans Jonas, The Gnostic Religion, p.104] as well as now. But he also claimed that he had incarnated in human form in order to rescue the fallen Divine "Thought", who had been trapped by the angels and archangels of this world, and forced to reincarnate through successive female bodies (in Greek, the word "thought" (ennoia) is female), such as Helen of Troy, and was now in the body of a prostitute called Helena. It was for her sake that the Father had taken on human form (Simon), and in redeeming her (as she is the archetype of the divine Spirit that had fallen into the darkness of this world and Forgotten its true nature) he also makes possible the redemption of all his followers as well.'* ([http://www.kheper.net/topics/Gnosticism/Simon\\_Magus.htm](http://www.kheper.net/topics/Gnosticism/Simon_Magus.htm))

2. Yahshua said that many will come in His name – which was Yahshua, and not another name and will mislead many.

Christianity is not using Yahshua's name or authority. Yes, there are many Christians in the Seventh Day Adventist and some Churches of G-d groups, who keep the Sabbath, eat kosher foods, and keep the Feast Days of Elohim to a fashion. In addition some Seventh Day Adventists even use the correct names and titles of our heavenly Father and His Son. However, we know who they are and what they believe. The Churches of G-d refuse to use the Set-apart names of Elohim, and the Seventh Day Adventist still keep pagan holidays, like Xmas and Easter. In addition the Churches of G-d believe in two (YHVH)'s and the Seventh Day Adventist in the so-called trinity. Most of us, who have been called out of Churchianity by YHVH, are aware of their false doctrines and will not easily be deceived by Christian teachers any longer. We are familiar with the fact that Christianity follows a savior who is markedly different from Yahshua the Messiah. So the remaining question is: Who were Yahshua and His disciples talking about? Who are the ones who will be able to deceive us, those called out by YHVH to become first fruits among His creatures?

To answer the question I will commence by explaining a few basic principles: The word 'church' or 'congregation' throughout the Scriptures refers to a people and not a building. The English word 'church' is translated from the Greek word 'ecclesia' which means an assembly of 'called out people'. The Hebrew term for an assembly of Elohim's people is 'qahal'. The original ecclesia in the Brit Chadashah was Jewish. They understood themselves to be the people of Elohim who revealed Himself in the Tanach (Hebrews 1: 1 – 2), and understood themselves to be the true children of Israel, with Abraham as their forefather as per Romans 4: 1 – 3, 23 – 25 & 5: 1 as follows: ***'What then shall we say that Abraham, our forefather according to the flesh, has found? (2) For if Abraham was justified by works, he has something to boast about; but not before Elohim. (3) For what does the Scripture say? "AND ABRAHAM BELIEVED ELOHIM, AND IT WAS RECKONED TO HIM AS RIGHTEOUSNESS."*** (23) ***Now not for his sake only was it written, that it was reckoned to him, (24) but for our sake also, to whom it will be reckoned, as those who believe in Him who raised Yahshua our Master from the dead, (25) He who was delivered up because of our transgressions, and was raised because of our justification. (1) Therefore having been justified by faith, we have peace with Elohim through our Master Yahshua Messiah.'***

We read that the original 'qahal' or 'ecclesia' was started in the wilderness by Moses when he received the Torah from the Hand of YHVH on Mount Sinai, as in Acts 7: 38, as follows: ***"This is the one who was in the congregation in the wilderness together with the angel who was speaking to him on Mount Sinai, and who was with our father's; and he received living oracles to pass on to you."*** In addition we read in 1 Corinthians 10: 1 – 4, ***'For I do not want you to be unaware, brethren, that our fathers were all under the cloud, and all passed through the sea; (2) and all were immersed into Moses in the cloud and in the sea; (3) and all ate the same spiritual food; (4) and all drank the same spiritual drink, for they were drinking from a spiritual rock which followed them; and the rock was Messiah.'*** YHVH promised Abraham, before the existence of Israel, that he would be the father of a chosen people, as in Genesis 12: 1 – 3. Abraham, who lived almost 2,000 years before the first advent of Messiah, is the father of the people of Israel through Jacob, whose name YHVH changed to Israel. According to Romans 4: 1, Abraham was the father of 'those who believe'. However, Elohim's promise to Abraham involved more than the promise of many descendants. Rav Shaul explained in Galatians 3: 16 that the promised 'Seed' would be Messiah, as follows: ***'Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. He does not say, "And to seeds," as referring to many, but rather to one, "And to your seed," that is Messiah.'*** But, it is only through Yahshua our Messiah that we can claim the eternal inheritance promised to Abraham's seed as we read from the often quoted Galatians 3: 29, as follows: ***'And if you belong to Messiah, then you are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to promise.'***

Yahshua was a Jew and did not start a new religion as many in the world suggest. He continued in the original faith of our forefathers Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. However, there have been many misunderstandings since the first advent of Messiah. Firstly, Christianity has assumed that they have replaced the 'Jews' to become the new Israel of G-d. The commission that Yahshua gave His disciples after His resurrection, was to immerse new believers in the name of the Father, The Son and the Set- apart Spirit and to teach them to obey everything that He commanded them to do (see Matthew 28: 19 & 20). Yahshua condemned those who replaced the commandments of Elohim, with the traditions of men. In fact He said in Matthew 19: 17, ***"Why are you asking Me about what is good? There is only One who is good; but if you wish to enter into (eternal) life, keep the commandments."*** In addition He warned in Matthew 7: 22 & 23 ***'Many will say to Me on that day, "Master, Master, did we not prophesy in Your name, and in Your name cast out demons, and in Your name perform many miracles?" (23) And then I will declare to them, "I never knew you: DEPART FROM ME, YOU WHO PRACTICE LAWLESSNESS.'*** Yahshua knew that false teachers would arise who would reject the commandments of Elohim for a distorted gospel of no law – lawlessness.

Secondly, the Jews in Messiah's day misunderstood the reason for His first advent, because of what happened to the nation of Israel many years before the arrival of Messiah, His first advent was to reconcile the nation of Judah and Israel, making them into one nation once again. We read accordingly in Ephesians 2: 11 – 22, as follows: ***'Therefore remember, that formerly you, the Gentiles in the flesh, who are called "Uncircumcision" by the so-called "Circumcision," which is performed in the flesh by human hands – (12) remember that you were at that time separate from Messiah, excluded from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers to the covenants of promise, having no hope and without Elohim in the world. (13) But now in Messiah Yahshua you who formerly were far off have been brought near by the blood of Messiah. (14) For He Himself is our peace, who made both groups into one, and broke down the barrier of the dividing wall, (15) by abolishing in His flesh the enmity, which is the Law of commandments contained in ordinances, that in Himself He might make the two into one new man, thus establishing peace, (16) and might reconcile them both in one body to Elohim through the cross, by it having put to death the enmity. (17) AND HE CAME AND PREACHED PEACE TO YOU WHO WERE FAR AWAY (the lost tribes of Israel), AND PEACE TO THOSE WHO WERE NEAR (the Jews); (18) for through Him we both have our access in one Spirit to the Father. (19) So then you are no longer strangers and aliens, but you are fellow citizens with the saints and Elohim's household, (20) having been built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Messiah Yahshua Himself being the corner stone, (21) in whom the whole building, being fitted together is growing into a Set-apart temple of the Master; (22) in whom you also are being built together into a dwelling of Elohim in the Spirit.'***

Many Jews in Messiah's time knew from the prophecies about Him in the Tanach, that He was the Messiah, but they expected Him to save them from their Roman masters at that time. However, the religious leaders of Messiah's time did not know who He was. This was all in accordance with Elohim's plan. We read in 1 Corinthians 1: 24 that Yahshua is the power and wisdom of Elohim. We read therefore in 1 Corinthians 2: 4 – 8, ***'And my message and my preaching were not in persuasive words of wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and the power, (5) that your faith should not rest on the wisdom of men, but on the power of Elohim (Yahshua), (6) Yet we do speak wisdom among those who are mature; a wisdom, however, not of this age, nor of the rulers of this age, who are passing away; (7) but we speak Elohim's wisdom (Yahshua) in a mystery, the hidden wisdom, which Elohim predestined before the ages of glory; (8) the wisdom which none of the rulers of this age has understood; for if they had understood it, they would not have crucified the Master of glory.'*** We know that if the Religious Leaders of Messiah's day understood who He was, they would not have had Him crucified. And if He did not die, we would even today, remain in our sin. For we read in Romans 5: 10 ***'For if while we were enemies, we were reconciled to Elohim through the death of His Son, much more, having been reconciled, we shall be saved by His life.'***

Thirdly many Nazarenes/Messianics misunderstand what Yahshua said to Peter in Matthew 16: 18 & 19. The original ecclesia in the wilderness was built upon the same rock, as the one Yahshua told Peter about in Matthew 16: 18. He is the rock on which we should build our (house) faith, as we read in Matthew 7: 24 – 27, ***'Therefore everyone who hears these words of Mine, and acts upon them, may be compared to a wise man, who built his house upon the rock. (25) "And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and burst against that house; and yet it did not fall, for it had been founded upon the rock. (26) "And everyone who hears these words of Mine, and does not act upon them, will be like a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand. (27) "And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and burst against that house; and it fell, and great was its fall."*** Yahshua told Peter that he is a stone (Petros), but that He would build His ecclesia upon this rock (Petra – meaning Himself). Peter understood this as we read in Acts 4: 11 & 12, where talking about Yahshua, he said: ***"He is the STONE WHICH WAS REJECTED by you, THE BUILDERS, but WHICH BECAME THE VERY CORNER stone. (12) "And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name under heaven that has been given among men, by which we must be saved."*** Peter further explained in 1 Peter 2: 5 - 8, saying: ***'you also, as living stones, are being built up as a spiritual house for a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices acceptable to Elohim through Yahshua Messiah. (6) For this is contained in Scripture: "BEHOLD I LAY IN ZION A CHOICE STONE, A PRECIOUS CORNER stone, AND HE WHO BELIEVES IN HIM SHALL NOT BE DISAPPOINTED." (7) This precious value, then, is for you who believe. But for those who disbelieve, "THE STONE WHICH THE BUILDERS REJECTED, THIS BECAME THE VERY CORNER stone," (8) and, "A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENSE"; for they stumble because they are disobedient to the word, and to this doom they were also appointed.'***

Next we need to find out what *'the keys of the kingdom of heaven'* were, that Yahshua said He gave Peter and the apostles in Matthew 16: 19? The answer to this question, lies in understanding that keys are used to unlock doors/locks or even mysteries. The keys of the kingdom of heaven, therefore, simply mean to have

access to the kingdom of heaven. Both Peter (Rav Kepha) and Paul (Rav Shaul) understood this statement, as we read in Acts 2: 38, ***“And Peter said to them, “Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah, for the forgiveness of your sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Set apart Spirit.”*** In Romans 8: 11 Paul wrote: ***“But if the Spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you. He who raised Yahshua from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Set-apart Spirit who indwells you.”*** Continuing in Matthew 16: 19, we need to determine what Yahshua meant by saying: *‘and whatever you shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.’* Does it mean that the apostles and those of us who came after them have the right to change anything in the Torah and the Prophets; and that whatever we change on earth, will also be binding in heaven? This is seemingly what Christianity and even some Nazarenes believe today. However, we know that this cannot be true, as Yahshua Himself said in Matthew 5: 17(paraphrased) that He did not come to abolish the Law or the Prophets, but to make it more binding (as may be deduced from reading verses 21 – 49 of Matthew 5). If it did not mean that they have the right to change the teachings in the Tanach, does it perhaps mean that He took the Oracles of Elohim away from the Jews of His day and gave it to the apostles, as many Nazarenes suggest? We know that this can also not be true, as Rav Shaul who was personally trained by Yahshua (as may be read in the book of Acts), confirmed after Yahshua’s ascension to heaven, that the Jews have the Oracles of Elohim (as per Romans 3: 1 & 2). Yes, those who assume that they have the right to decide the timing of Elohim’s Set-apart times are simply misunderstanding Yahshua’s words - they are deceived and deceive others to follow them in their deception.

This is part of the deception that Yahshua warned us against. Yahshua meant that when we immerse someone on earth, in the name of Yahshua, the covenant made will also be binding in heaven. The covenant that Yahshua made with us and His apostles entails, that if we keep our part of the covenant entered into at immersion, we will be raised immortal at Yahshua’s return. At this time we are simply assisting Yahshua in building the ecclesia or temple of Elohim, by adding living stones to the spiritual house for a Set-apart priesthood to offer up spiritual sacrifices acceptable to Elohim. The Torah including the Set-apart Days of YHWH (i.e. the doctrine of the ecclesia) are already established and will only be corrected, if necessary when Yahshua (Shiloh) returns one day. This is confirmed in Genesis 49: 10, where we read: ***‘The scepter shall not depart from Judah, Nor the ruler staff from between his feet, Until Shiloh comes, and to Him shall the obedience of the peoples.’*** We also read in Psalm 60: 7 that Judah is Elohim’s Lawgiver: rulership will only pass from Judah, when Yahshua comes to rule us from Jerusalem. Yes, He already came a first time, but at that time the people were not obedient to Him at all. In addition, we know that His first advent was not to come and rule us, but to reconcile us back to the Father, and to ensure that the two houses of Israel are united again as the temple of Elohim, as already quoted in Ephesians 2.

Let’s also not forget Yahshua’s own words in John 5: 43 & 44 where He said: ***“I have come in My Father’s name, and you do not receive Me; if another shall come in his own name, you will receive him. (44) How can you believe, when you receive glory from one another, and do not seek the glory that is from the one and only Elohim?”*** Are we following Yahshua or those who come in their own names, such as the Karaites, the Congregations/Assemblies of YHWH, or whoever assumes the right to follow their interpretation of the ‘Biblical calendar’ or other Torah established doctrine? Selah!

At this point I would like to add two additional, more recent heresies. Firstly there are those in our community who teach that Rabbis or teachers (and their followers) may marry more than one wife, quoting that our Father’s in the faith had more than one wife. However we see the qualification of a leader or teacher given in 1 Timothy 3: 2 – 7, stating: ***‘An overseer, then, must be above reproach, the husband of one wife, temperate, prudent, respectable, hospitable, able to teach, (3) not addicted to wine or pugnacious, but gentle, un-contentious, free from love of money. (4) He must be one who manages his own household well, keeping his children under control with all dignity (5) (but if a man does not know how to manage his own household, how will he take care of the ecclesia of Elohim?); (6) and not a new convert, lets he become conceited and fall into condemnation incurred by the devil. (7) And he must have a good reputation with those outside the ecclesia, so that he may not fall into reproach and the snare of the devil.’*** These teachers who teaches polygamy is therefore also deceived and deceiving their followers. By marrying a second wife, such teachers are essentially disqualifying themselves, from being teachers/leaders of a Nazarene congregation.

Finally, I would like to mention the ones who determine to mislead people regarding the timing of the Sabbath. We know from the Scriptures that the Sabbath commences on Friday at sunset and ends on Saturday at sunset. Those who teach differently are simply doing Satan’s work in deceiving people to break the everlasting covenant (or sign) with YHWH, that we are His people and that He is our Elohim. Many in the ecclesia which Yahshua built, remained faithful, but like today, others had lost their first love. Some were lukewarm and spiritually blind as we read in Revelation 3: 14 – 22. Besides the growing problem of spiritual weak members, false prophets were like today infiltrating the community. It is therefore abundantly clear that

even though Yahshua was warning those of us who initially came out of Christianity about their false teaching, at this time the warnings relate to leaders and people in our midst, as we read in 2 Peter 2: 1 – 3, ***‘But false prophets also arose among the people, just as there will also be false teachers among you, who will secretly introduce destructive heresies, even denying the Master who bought them, bringing swift destruction upon themselves. (2) And many will follow their sensuality, and because of them the way of the truth will be maligned; (3) and in their greed they will exploit you with false words; their judgment from long ago is not idle, and their destruction is not asleep.’*** Let us heed the words of Yahshua and make sure that we do not worship YHVH in vain as He warned in Mark 7: 7, saying: ***“BUT IN VAIN DO THEY WORSHIP ME, TEACHING AS DOCTRINES THE PRECEPTS OF MEN.”***

## **Chapter 15: Faith in Yahshua – what does it mean?**

Very few people today understand the much talked about, but little understood topic of faith. The question is do we need faith, and why? The answer to this question is given in Hebrews 11: 6, as follows: ***“And without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to Elohim must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who seek Him.”*** To have faith in Elohim means that we believe in Him, although we cannot see Him. In addition it means that we believe in what He says: trusting Him enough to do what He says in His word. The Scriptures contain many examples, where ordinary people who had faith in Elohim, had their prayers to YHVH answered. We read in Romans 15: 4, accordingly: ***“For whatever was written in earlier times was written for our instruction, that through perseverance and the encouragement of the Scriptures we might have hope.”*** The examples in the Scriptures were written to strengthen our hope and faith.

Presently as in the past and will be in the future, there are people who believe in Yahshua the Messiah, also known as the word of Elohim, and those who do not believe in Him. To believe in Yahshua means that we believe in His name, meaning the salvation of YHVH, as well as believe in what He taught whilst He was on earth. When the wickedest of sinner comes to repentance - meaning having remorse for his past sins and return in obedience to Torah, his faith in Yahshua will make him clean, through doing according to Elohim's word. Those who believe the word of Elohim will be saved, whereas those who do not will die (the second death), as is confirmed in Mark 16: 16, as follows: ***“He who has believed and has been immersed shall be saved; but he who has disbelieved shall be condemned.”*** This is talking about those whom YHVH calls out of the world by his word to become first-fruits, as is recorded for us in James 1: 18, like so: ***‘In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’***

Rav Shaul taught that faith in Yahshua involves living by Elohim's word, as we read in 1 Thessalonians 2: 13, ***‘And for this reason we also constantly thank Elohim that when you received from us the word of Elohim's message, you accepted it not as the word of men, but for what it really is, the word of Elohim, which also performs its work in you who believe.’*** We know from studying the Scriptures that salvation is a free gift by the grace of Elohim, as is recorded in Ephesians 2: 8 & 9, ***‘For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, it is a gift of Elohim, (9) not as a result of works, that no one should boast.’*** However, before anyone misunderstands Rav Shaul added in Romans 3: 31, saying: ***‘Do we then nullify the Law through faith? May it never be! On the contrary, we establish the Law.’*** The point is that once YHVH has forgiven us our sins, He expects us to start obeying Him.

The fact that Yahshua, who were innocent and without sin, died for the punishment of our sins, should convince us to repent and come to believe in the teachings of Elohim. However, there are those who refuse to receive salvation at any cost. The reason for this reaction is that such people do not want Yahshua to reign over them. We read Yahshua's conversation with Nicodemus in John 3: 16 - 18, saying: ***“For Elohim so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish, but have eternal life. (17) For Elohim did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world should be saved through Him. (18) He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of Elohim.”*** It is by the knowledge that Yahshua Messiah died for our sins that we come to have faith in His saving Name. It is by faith that we are immersed in His saving Name. And by faith we await our glorification and immortality at the first resurrection, when Messiah comes to rule the world from Jerusalem.

We as believers face decisions, requiring us to choose between doing things Elohim's way, or doing what appeals to our own desires or human nature, on a daily basis. Doing things Elohim's way, usually takes a lot more effort and sacrifice, than what it takes doing it our own way. Following our own desires is also much more appealing as it could ensure immediate gratification, material gain and/or increased pride. By faith believers reject their own desires and choose to do Elohim's will. Once a believer becomes a true follower of Yahshua, he distinguishes himself from the unbelievers in the world. In Matthew 10: 34 - 38, Yahshua Messiah said: ***“Do not think that I came to bring peace on earth; I did not come to bring peace, but a sword. (35) For I came to SET A MAN AGAINST HIS FATHER, AND A DAUGHTER AGAINST HER MOTHER, AND A DAUGHTER-IN-LAW AGAINST HER MOTHER-IN-LAW; (36) and A MAN'S ENEMIES WILL BE THE MEMBERS OF HIS HOUSEHOLD. (37) He who loves father or mother more than Me is not worthy of Me; and he who loves son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me. (38) And he who does not take his cross and follow after Me is not worthy of Me.”*** If the world accepted Yahshua, there would be no need for the sword, for all would be true disciples of Yahshua and would be united as one. However, this is not so, because individual members of a family or ecclesia become convicted by their conscience, to stand alone and is eventually compelled to separate themselves from those with whom they

associated before. This is when the line of separation is drawn, and the individual stand upon the word of Elohim, whilst the others upon the teachings and traditions of men.

Prior to His impalement Yahshua bestowed upon His disciples His legacy of peace, as we read in John 14: 27, saying: ***“Peace I leave with you; My peace I give to you; not as the world gives, do I give to you. Let not your heart be troubled, nor let it be fearful.”*** Yahshua gave His disciples the peace that is born of truth; a peace that cannot be extinguished because of division. Yahshua’s heart was full of love and compassion for every human being, and if His love was truly understood by those he came to save, there would have been no need for the sword. Yahshua’s peace was that which was born of love towards those who were plotting to kill him. But, He did not compromise, He hated sin and reproved and rebuked transgressors to repent and return to being obedient to the teachings of Elohim. The reason why He was hated by the world is because the world loved unrighteousness and loved sin. The same will happen to us - those aiming to please Elohim and who is preaching truth are hated and will also be persecuted. Yahshua warned that this will happen in John 15: 16 – 20, as follows: ***“You did not choose Me, but I chose you, and appointed you, that you should go and bear fruit, and that your fruit should remain, that whatever you ask of the Father in My name, He may give to you. (17) This I command you, that you love one another. (18) If the world hates you, you know that it has hated Me before it hated you. (19) If you were of the world, the world would love its own; but because you are not of the world, but I chose you out of the world, therefore the world hates you. (20) Remember the word that I said to you, ‘A slave is not greater than his master.’ If they persecuted Me, they will also persecute you; if they kept My word, they will keep yours also.”*** The believers in Yahshua may strive for peace and may earnestly desire to overcome the spirit of disagreement, but Satan will stir up his agents to bring strife and division, until he is bound in the abyss for a thousand years, at the beginning of Messiah’s rule. It will be a serious mistake on our part, to compromise the truth for the sake of unity. It would be like giving up the peace that Yahshua gave to His disciples and by extension us His modern day disciples, in order to make peace or associate with unbelievers. The sacrifice is too costly for us, the children of Elohim, to make peace with the world and those who compromise the truth, thus giving up on the word of Elohim.

Not everyone on earth, who is part of Elohim’s chosen people are believers in Yahshua today. At this time YHVH is calling out people to become first fruits unto Him, who will rule under Yahshua during the coming millennium. Whilst He is calling out a remnant from the lost tribes of Israel, YHVH has blinded the minds of our Jewish brothers, so that they do not recognize or believe the Identity of the Messiah (as is confirmed in Romans 11: 32), who is destined to take over the rulership of the world. So has He allowed Satan to blind the minds of the unbelieving, that they might not see the light of the gospel of the glory of Messiah, who is the image of Elohim. Yes, YHVH wants all men to be saved, as we read in 1Timothy 2: 3 & 4, in this way: ***“This is good and acceptable in the sight of Elohim our Savior, (4) who desires all men to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.”*** However He does not want to save all at this time, as Yahshua explained in Matthew 13: 11, 12 & 19, saying: ***“To you it has been granted to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it has not been granted. (12) For whoever has, to him shall more be given, and he shall have an abundance; but whoever does not have, even what he has shall be taken away from him. (19) When anyone hears the word of the kingdom, and does not understand it, the evil one comes and snatches away what has been sown in his heart, This is the one on whom seed was sown beside the road.”*** This is the seed that did not have time to grow, because the birds came and ate it (as we read in verse 4 of Matthew 13).

Continuing on in Matthew 13 from verse 13 to 17, we read: ***“Therefore I speak to them in parables; because while seeing they do not see, and while hearing they do not hear, nor do they understand. (14) And in their case the prophecy of Isaiah is being fulfilled, which says, ‘YOU WILL KEEP ON HEARING, BUT WILL NOT UNDERSTAND; AND YOU WILL KEEP ON SEEING, BUT WILL NOT PERCEIVE; (15) FOR THE HEART OF THIS PEOPLE HAS BECOME DULL, AND WITH THEIR EARS THEY SCARCELY HEAR, AND THEY HAVE CLOSED THEIR EYES LEST THEY SHOULD SEE WITH THEIR EYES, AND HEAR WITH THEIR EARS, AND UNDERSTAND WITH THEIR HEART AND RETURN, AND I SHOULD HEAL THEM.’ (16) But blessed are your eyes, because they see; and your ears, because they hear. (17) For truly I say to you, that many prophets and righteous men desired to see what you see, and did not see it; and to hear what you hear, and did not hear it.”*** At this time YHVH is calling out those whom He wants to be part of His first fruits to assist Yahshua in teaching those who live during the millennium and beyond, to obey his Torah, and to live as His children for all eternity. This is confirmed for us in Romans 8: 23, where we read; ***‘And not only this, but also we ourselves, having the first fruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting eagerly for our adoption as sons, the redemption of our body.’***

There are those who believe that only those of us called during this age will be saved, as first fruits. However, in studying Romans 11, we see that there will also be many righteous Jews who will be saved. In fact YHVH

has at this time blinded them to reject Yahshua, so that we may come in. We also understand from the Scriptures that Yahshua came for us the lost sheep of the house of Israel – those who used to believe that we are Gentiles. He came to reconcile us to our brother Judah and to bring us, the lost tribes of Israel, also known as the prodigal son, back to the Father's house, as is explained in Ephesians 2, 11 – 21. He is currently calling us out of the world, and as we read in verses 25 – 26 of Romans 11, once or ***'until the fullness of the Gentiles has come in; and thus all Israel (both houses) will be saved.'*** When studying the parable of the prodigal son in Luke 15, from verse 11 on, we see that the eldest son never left the Father. Yes, he became jealous when, at the return of his brother, His father welcomed him with a celebratory homecoming, because it was difficult for him to understand why his reckless brother deserved such a welcome. However, we see that after the prodigal son's attitude had become humble, repenting and trusting, his father said in Luke 15: 32: ***'But we had to be merry and rejoice, for this brother of yours was dead and has begun to live, and was lost and has been found.'*** This is exactly what our Father YHVH does for us, when we repent and return to Him.

Rav Shaul tells us in Romans 11 not to become arrogant towards the Jews, for not accepting Yahshua, and for being broken off at present, but to rejoice because of Elohim's kindness toward us. We see clearly according to Zechariah 12: 7, that: ***'YHVH also will save the tents of Judah first in order that the glory of the house of David and the glory of the inhabitants of Jerusalem may not be magnified above Judah.'*** It is true that Yahshua our Messiah is the door and that all who want to enter the kingdom of Elohim will have to go through Him. We read Yahshua's own words in this regard in John 10: 9, as follows: ***'I am the door; if anyone enters through Me, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture.'*** In addition we read in Philippians 2: 9 - 11, ***'Therefore also Elohim highly exalted Him (meaning Yahshua), and bestowed on Him the name which is above every name, (10) that at the name of Yahshua EVERY KNEE SHOULD BOW, of those who are in heaven, and on earth and under the earth, (11) and that every tongue should confess that Yahshua Messiah is Master (MarYah – meaning YHVH in Aramaic), to the glory of Elohim the Father.'***

What about our Jewish brothers you might ask? When will they be saved? We have already seen the answer in Romans 11: 26, i.e. after all those of us whom YHVH is calling at this time have come in. The timing of this blessed event is also explained in Zechariah 12: 10, as follows: ***"And I will pour on the house of David and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace and supplication, so that they will look on Me whom they have pierced; and they will mourn for Him, as one mourns for an only son, and they will weep bitterly over Him, like the bitter weeping over a first-born."*** We read in the following verse that when Yahshua returns the Jews will be in synagogue as it says that: ***'the family of the house of David by itself, and their wives by themselves.'*** It also informs us about the other Jewish families who will be by themselves and their wives by themselves. This is no doubt talking about a time when our Jewish brothers will be in their synagogues (since their men and women sit in separate locations in the synagogue during services), to observe one of the appointed times of YHVH our Elohim. We know that Yahshua our Messiah will one day return on the Feast of Trumpets, also known as Rosh Hashanah. So here we find our Jewish brothers keeping Rosh Hashanah at the return of Yahshua Messiah. This will be a new age for the world, when Messiah will return to rule us from Jerusalem, for the next thousand years. The Jews who are assembled in the Synagogue on that day, will see Yahshua's hands, like His disciple Thomas saw His hands and exclaimed: ***"My Master and my Elohim!"*** There is no doubt in my mind that YHVH will at that time save our Jewish brothers as part of all Israel.

The first fruits consisting of both houses of Israel will then rule under Yahshua as kings and priests. From the above, we are confident that Yahshua who is returning for us on the Feast of Trumpets, or Yom Teruah, will also find our Jewish brothers in their synagogues at that time. This is one of many reasons why we accept the present day Hebrew calendar, the one given to the Jews, as part and parcel of the Oracles which YHVH has entrusted to them. There are obviously many today who do not believe this. My question to them is: When Yahshua returns to the earth on Yom Teruah one day, our Jewish brothers will be observing Rosh Hashanah, are you also going to have a Set-apart convocation at that time, or are you only going to keep it two days later, after you have seen the crescent moon? Many arrogantly reject the word of Elohim, not understanding key Scriptures like Romans 11: 18 – 21, where we read: ***'do not be arrogant toward the branches; but if you are arrogant, remember that it is not you who supports the root, but the root supports you. (19) You will say then, "Branches were broken off so that I might be grafted in." (20) Quite right, they were broken off for their unbelief, but you stand by your faith. Do not be conceited, but fear; (21) for if Elohim did not spare the natural branches, neither will He spare you.'*** Brethren this is talking about us, the remnant according to Elohim's choice (Romans 11: 5). We should be careful how we live and what we say about our Jewish brothers at this time. I believe that instead of being arrogant towards our Jewish brothers, we should rejoice, that YHVH has broken them off, so that we, the first fruits will have an opportunity to enter the kingdom of Elohim as kings and priests with them.



To conclude I am glad to add, that after the millennium rule of Messiah, there will be a second resurrection. Subsequent to the second resurrection, those who accept Yahshua as their savior, after He has opened their minds to understand the Scriptures, will also be saved, as the second harvest. This is confirmed for us in Isaiah 25: 7 - 9, as follows: ***'And on this mountain He will swallow up the covering which is over all peoples, Even the veil which is stretched over all nations. (8) He will swallow up death for all time, And YHVH Elohim will wipe tears away from all faces, And He will remove the reproach of His people from all the earth; For YHVH has spoken. (9) And it will be said in that day, "Behold, this is our Elohim for whom we have waited that He might save us. This is YHVH for whom we waited; Let us rejoice and be glad in His salvation."*** Death will only be destroyed after the second resurrection, as may be read in Revelation 20: 14. This almost sounds too good to be true, but I can assure you that it is. Do you believe the word of Elohim? Then you better believe this. Yes, there are many who claim to be Elohim's people, but who might be destroyed, all the same. The reason for their demise is given in Hosea 4: 6, as follows: ***'My people are destroyed for a lack of knowledge, Because you have rejected knowledge. I also will reject you from being My priest. Since you have forgotten the law of your Elohim, I also will forget your children.'***

## **Chapter 16: What is the purpose of life?**

Did you know that the Scriptures reveal the purpose of mankind here on earth? Even though mankind seems to be totally helpless to solve many of the problems facing us, the Scriptures offer solutions and answers to all our problems. You see mankind was created by an intelligent and Almighty Being for a specific purpose. The first words in the Scriptures state emphatically in Genesis 1: 1, ***“In the beginning Elohim created the heavens and the earth.”*** For us who have proven the existence of YHVH our Elohim and that the Scriptures is the word of YHVH from Genesis to Revelation, YHVH created the universes through His Word, and we cannot argue the point, as we read in Psalm 33: 6, ***‘By the word of YHVH the heavens were made.’***

We know from studying the first chapter of Genesis that we are different from the plants and animals that Elohim created. We read in Genesis 1: 21, ***‘And Elohim created the great sea monsters, and every living creature that moves, with which the waters swarmed after their kind, and every winged bird after its kind; and Elohim saw that it was good.’*** Continuing on in verses 25 and 26 of Genesis 1, we read: ***‘And Elohim made the beasts of the earth after their kind, and the cattle after their kind, and everything that creeps on the ground after its kind; and Elohim saw that it was good. (26) Then Elohim said, “Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our Likeness; and let them rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky and over the cattle and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.”’*** Here we see that we are different from animals. We see that different from them, we are made in the image of Elohim. We were created to have a relationship with YHVH our Elohim, distinctly different to the animal life that Elohim created. The image of Elohim is a manifestation of Elohim which served as the pattern or blue print according to which Adam was created.

The question is: why did YHVH create us? If we consider all the birds, fish and animals that Elohim created, we realize that very few of them are able to think, plan and/or make what they planned and designed. Yes, weaver birds build nests and beavers build dams, but all their nests and dams are built according to the same model. They are never able to improve or make their nests or dams according to another pattern. They like all animals and insects do things strictly according to instinct and not by design, like their human counterparts, do. Human beings are able to design and build homes, cars, airplanes, ships, submarines, computers and whatever they require to achieve their goals. Over time man learned to use metals, make bricks and build phenomenal structures. A fellow believer sent me an article of a building being built in Dubai reaching 1, 5 miles into the sky. Mankind developed explosives allowing him to literally move mountains. However, because our forefathers did not obey YHVH in the Garden of Eden, mankind also learnt how to develop explosives powerful enough to destroy the entire population of the earth a number of times over. Why did YHVH create man with such incredible intellect to create or rather make whatever is required to make life easy, yet so destructive and totally helpless to solve key problems? When studying the Scriptures, we will soon realize that when YHVH created man in the beginning, man was not in his final finished form.

YHVH created mankind from physical matter, in His image, with mind power to think, plan and create. But, He created them with free moral agency to decide between good and evil. YHVH planned mankind to eventually become the ultimate masterpiece of all his creation – when finished millions of us, subsequently made spirit beings in the kingdom of Elohim. We read in Genesis 2: 7, ***‘Then YHVH Elohim formed man of dust from the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.’*** When YHVH breathed into man the breath of life he became a living soul. We read in John 4: 24 that Elohim is composed of Spirit and not of physical matter. Nowhere in the Scriptures do we read about an immortal soul. As opposed to man, YHVH being composed of Spirit, is immortal and cannot die. We read in Genesis 3: 19, YHVH said to Adam, ***“By the sweat of your face you shall eat bread, Till you return to the ground, Because from it you were taken; For you are dust, and to dust shall you return.”*** Even though eternal life was available to Adam and Eve, they did not embrace it yet. We read accordingly in Genesis 3: 22 that they did not take from the tree of life, which was also in the midst of the garden, to eat of it and live forever.

Man at that time had to make a choice. They had to choose to eat the fruit of the tree of life, or the forbidden tree of knowledge of good and evil. They had to show through their lives that they would develop the perfect character of YHVH and follow His way of life. But, YHVH has allowed all of mankind to be led into sin by Satan, thus allowing us to see for ourselves where disobedience to His teachings leads us. We read in the first part of Romans 6: 23, ***‘For the wages of sin is death.’*** As opposed to Satan's lie, that after disobeying YHVH our forefathers would not die, death was introduced. In fact there are even today, only two ways of life: The first being the way of cooperation, giving, sharing and serving; and the second being the way of greed, lust, competition, jealousy, envy and get. At creation YHVH set in motion spiritual laws which cannot be broken. These laws dictate that there has to be a cause for every effect. There cannot be peace and happiness, without something causing it. YHVH told Adam and Eve, that if they would eat of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, they would certainly die. The reason for this was that He wanted them to choose

what is good for them, and to avoid evil. The tree of life was simply a symbol of Elohim's teachings or Torah. The tree of life was a symbol of the gift of Elohim's Set-apart Spirit, His love which fulfills the law. YHVH explained His way of life to Adam and Eve, because He already set in motion the laws that cause all good, as well as the effects of breaking them. YHVH gave man his own choice; He could choose to do right, or he could choose to do evil. We know that in the end Adam and Eve sinned, induced by the lies and temptation of Satan.

Adam and Eve only had Elohim's word that they were mortal and could die. Then Satan disputed the word of Elohim. Satan appealed to Adam and Eve's human vanity telling them that their intellectual powers were so great they could determine for themselves what is good and evil. As with many Nazarene (or like-minded) believers today, their intellectual vanity intoxicated them and they were fascinated by the prospect. Their power of observation convinced them that the forbidden tree was good for food, pleasant to their eyes and desirable to make them wise. They put their trust in their own human reasoning. This is not any different from people who contradict the word of Elohim today – If YHVH says that He is One, mankind is tempted to use their 'intellect' to verify that what He says is not so, rather than to check to see, if what He says is indeed so. Instead we should be like the brethren in Berea, spoken about in Acts 17: 11, as follows: ***'Now these were more noble-minded than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with great eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily, to see whether these things were so.'*** Not, not so. In deciding for themselves what is good and what is evil, mankind rejected Elohim's Torah, resulting in their death.

In taking the forbidden fruit, the first human beings have followed Satan in a way contrary to Elohim's Torah. This resulted in error from assuming a false assertion, taken for granted without proof, and building on the false assertion. And because the foundation is false, the entire structure is defective. Mankind has rejected Elohim's word – His instruction manual for us – the foundation of all knowledge. YHVH gave us the basis of all knowledge and expected us to develop additional knowledge, but we chose the wrong direction. It is like driving from Cape Town to Johannesburg, but taking the wrong route and landing up in Port Elizabeth. Just like our first parents who rejected the most vital dimension in all knowledge, we continued to reject the very foundation of all knowledge. It is for this same reason that human knowledge is failing to solve the problems facing us today. Adam was offered eternal life, but he made the wrong choice. Ever since then mankind has gone their own way. Instead of being governed by Elohim, mankind decided to govern themselves. Man's education systems have produced computers, nuclear power stations and flights into outer space, yet we cannot solve our human problems. The reason why we cannot solve our problems is that they are spiritual in nature, and because we have rejected Elohim's spiritual laws, we are incapable of dealing with them.

However, YHVH has not left us destitute and His spiritual creation is still on-going: If those, whom He calls during this age, respond positively, YHVH begins to re-educate them, giving them a portion of His Spirit at immersion. He also continues to reshape them to conform more and more to His image and character. YHVH tells us in Romans 8: 14 & 15, ***'For all who are being led by the Spirit of Elohim, these are sons of Elohim. (15) For you have not received a spirit of slavery leading to fear again, but you have received a spirit of adoption as sons by which we cry out, "Abba! Father!"'*** The Set-apart Spirit works in us, so that we eventually bring forth the fruits of the Spirit (as per Galatians 5: 22 & 23). However, except for those of us specifically called, Elohim is allowing mankind to demonstrate their helplessness without His Set-apart Spirit. We read accordingly in Romans 11: 29 – 32, ***'for the gifts and the calling of Elohim are irrevocable. (30) For just as you once were disobedient to Elohim, but now have been shown mercy because of their (our Jewish brothers) disobedience, (31) so these also have been disobedient, in order that because of the mercy shown to you they also may now be shown mercy. (32) For Elohim has shut up all in disobedience that He might show mercy to all.'***

Our calling begins in the mind. Repentance for breaking the commandments; the initial step to salvation, is a change of mind. When we are immersed, we receive the indwelling of the Set-apart Spirit, thus renewing our minds. This is how the new man is begotten in Elohim's righteousness and in true set-apartness. Adam was made out of matter. To be able to enter the kingdom of Elohim, we need to be born again. Yahshua explained to Nicodemus in John 3: 5 & 6, saying: ***"Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of Elohim. (6) That which is born of flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit."*** Since we are born from a fleshly or earthly father, so we must be born by the Spirit of Elohim of the heavenly Father. When we repent, we are brought through a process, where we see how wrong our ways were in the past – until we come to surrender to YHVH our Elohim. If we change our ways and thinking in this life, guided by Elohim's Spirit, we become new creatures in Yahshua Messiah. If we become conformed to His image we will finally become a finished spiritual creation. Since Elohim created the universe through His Word, who later became Yahshua (the Salvation of Yah), our spiritual creation also starts with Yahshua. This means that the entire creation begins in Messiah and is also finished by Him. He became our living example to show us the way to the kingdom of Elohim.

We read in the book of Hebrews what Messiah Yahshua has been doing, what He is doing presently and what He will be doing in the future. Starting in Hebrews 1: 1 – 2, we read: ***‘Elohim, after He spoke long ago to the fathers in the prophets in many portions and in many ways, (2) in these last days has spoken to us in His Son, whom He appointed heir of all things, through whom also He made the world.’*** The words *‘all things’* mentioned here refer to the universe. Reading on in verse 3 of Hebrews 1, ***‘And He is the radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature, and upholds all things by the word of His power.’*** This is saying that Yahshua being the image of Elohim is upholding the entire universe by the word of His power. In other words Yahshua has been appointed by YHVH, to administer His government over the entire universe. There are several places in the Scriptures where believers who have been immersed and in whom the Set-apart Spirit dwells, are called ***‘heirs of Elohim and fellow heirs with Messiah’*** (this example being from Romans 8: 17). Does that mean that we are going to rule the entire universe with Messiah?

Next we read in Hebrews 2: 6, ***‘But one has testified somewhere saying, “WHAT IS MAN, THAT THOU REMEMBEREST HIM? OR THE SON OF MAN, THAT THOU ART CONCERNED ABOUT HIM?”*** We read the answer in Hebrews 2: 7 - 10, as follows: ***“THOU HAST MADE HIM FOR A LITTLE WHILE LOWER THAN THE ANGELS; THOU HAST CROWNED HIM WITH GLORY AND HONOR, AND HAST APPOINTED HIM OVER THE WORKS OF THY HANDS; (8) THOU HAST PUT ALL THINGS IN SUBJECTION UNDER HIS FEET.”*** For in subjecting all things to him, He left nothing that is not subject to him. But now we do not yet see all things subjected to him. (9) But we do see Him who has been made for a little while lower than the angels, namely, Yahshua, because of the suffering of death crowned with glory and honor, that by the grace of Elohim He might taste death for everyone. (10) For it was fitting for Him, for whom are all things, and through whom are all things, in bringing many sons to glory, to perfect the author (or leader) of their salvation through sufferings.’ Wow, do you understand what this is saying? We read in Ephesians 1: 18 - 21, ***‘I pray that the eyes of your heart (your understanding) may be enlightened, so that you may know what is the hope of His calling, what are the riches of the glory of His inheritance in the saints, (19) and what is the surpassing greatness of His power toward us who believe. These are in accordance with the working of the strength of His might (20) which He brought about in Messiah, when He raised Him from the dead, and seated Him at His right hand in the heavenly places, (21) far above all rule and authority and power and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this age, but also in the one to come.’***

The good news is if the word of YHVH lives in us we will abide forever, as we read in 1 Peter 1: 22 – 25, as follows: ***‘Since you have in obedience to the truth purified your souls for a sincere love of the brethren, fervently love one another from the heart, (23) for you have been born again not of seed which is perishable, but imperishable, that is, through the living and abiding word of Elohim. (24) For, “ALL FLESH IS LIKE GRASS, AND ALL ITS GLORY LIKE THE FLOWER OF GRASS. THE GRASS WITHERS, AND THE FLOWER FALLS OFF, (25) BUT THE WORD OF YHVH ABIDES FOREVER.” And this is the word which was preached to you.’*** Yahshua did not only pay the penalty of our past sins. He was not only our kinsman redeemer, canceling out our certificate of debt, but by it Elohim is creating in us something much more superior than Adam was, prior to sinning. He is creating in us beings that are higher than angels, to rule the universe under Yahshua. YHVH created man in Genesis 1 out of physical matter in His image, but is at this time taking us through a process; from our calling, to justification and eventually at resurrection, our glorification, as we read in Romans 8: 29 - 30, ***‘For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the first-born among many brethren; (30) and whom He predestined, these He also called; and whom He called, these He also justified; and whom He justified, these He also glorified.’*** We read accordingly in 1 Corinthians 15: 49, ***‘And just as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.’*** Yes, brethren, after YHVH has made us in His image and molded us according to His purpose, we shall be like Him, as we read in 1 John 3: 1 & 2, ***‘See how great a love the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called children of Elohim; and such we are. For this reason the world does not know us, because it did not know Him. (2) Beloved, now we are children of Elohim, and it has not appeared as yet what we shall be. We know that, when He appears, we shall be like Him, because we shall see Him just as He is.’*** YHVH is showing us His plan of redemption through Yahshua. We have a choice; like Adam and Eve had, but instead of choosing death, we can choose eternal life. Once you get to understand this truth, your mind will be filled with hope, as we read in 1 John 3: 3, as follows: ***‘And everyone who has this hope fixed on Him purifies himself, just as He is pure.’***

## **Chapter 17: What should the bride of Messiah do to qualify?**

Those of us called by YHVH during this age, to qualify as first-fruits in the world to come, are also known as the future or potential bride of Messiah. Because the bride of Messiah will share the throne of the universe with Him, she must of necessity also be suitably trained and prepared for her high calling. Since the crown of righteousness will only be awarded to those who overcome, the bride of Messiah must be trained in spiritual warfare to overcome the forces of evil, hostile to Elohim. As opposed to those who insist that we move away from the cities and towns where we live and earn our living, to secluded small towns, where according to them, we could dwell in safety with more time to study, the world around us is in fact, a laboratory in which those destined for the Kingdom of Elohim, are getting practical experience of how to overcome, the world, Satan and self. Yes, I agree, we need to stop partaking of the paganism of the world in which we live, but should be an example of how to live, to those around us. As much as YHVH protects us wherever we may find ourselves, if we are obedient to His word<sup>17</sup>, so does He protect us from those who curse and bear false witness against us<sup>18</sup>.

YHVH has bestowed upon His redeemed the highest honor; He has exalted us to become the bride of Messiah, in addition He is creating in us beings that are higher than angels, to rule the universe under Yahshua, as we are told in Psalm 8: 4 - 6 (KJV), as follows: ***'What is man, that Thou are mindful of him? and the son of man, that Thou visitest him? (5) For Thou hast made him a little lower than the angels, and hast crowned him with glory and honour. (6) Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands, thou hast put all things under his feet.'*** After our immersion (as per Acts 2: 38) and once the elders have laid their hands on us (as per Acts 8: 17), we receive the Set-apart Spirit and are saved from our past sins. From then on we are required to start behaving according to the teachings of Elohim given in His word. We read accordingly in Romans 13: 13 & 14, as follows: ***'Let us behave properly as in the day, not in carousing and drunkenness, not in sexual promiscuity and sensuality, not in strife and jealousy. (14) But put on the Master Yahshua Messiah*** (meaning follow His example), ***and make no provision for the flesh in regard to its lusts.'*** Some time ago I gave a sermon on servant leadership. Similarly to there being a leadership vacuum in society today, so are there not many leaders in our community. What do I mean by leadership? I get copies of what I believe to be one of the best magazines that I have read in a long time, known as "Jewish Life" from the local Orthodox synagogue. The July 2008 issue contains an article by Rabbi Dr. Akiva Tatz, entitled 'WHO'S LEADING THE LEADER?' In this article Rabbi Tatz gave a superlative definition of a good leader, as follows: ***"By leadership, we mean the ability to lead oneself on the right path and achieve mastery over one's own desires."*** Consequently, I believe, from a Nazarene Israelite point of view, that a true leader should not be doubtful, as he should know, and know that he knows, what he believes<sup>19</sup>. However, if such a leader should find that according to two or three Scriptural witnesses a position that he held in the past were wrong, he will be big enough to repent and change accordingly.

After all, the future bride of Messiah should walk in light and not in darkness, as we read in Romans 13: 11 – 12, as follows: ***'And this do, knowing the time, that it is already the hour for you to awaken from sleep; for now salvation is nearer to us than when we believed. (12) The night is almost gone, and the day is at hand. Let us therefore lay aside the deeds of darkness and put on the armor of light.'*** The bride should cast off works of darkness and put on the armor of light. We also read Yahshua's words to Rav Shaul in Acts 26: 18, saying: ***'to open their eyes so that they may turn from darkness to light and from the dominion of Satan to Elohim, in order that they may receive forgiveness of sins and an inheritance among those who have been sanctified by faith in Me.'*** We have been delivered from darkness, ensuring our access to the coming kingdom of Elohim, as we read in Colossians 1: 13 & 14, stating that: ***'For He delivered us from the domain of darkness, and transferred us to the kingdom of His beloved Son, (14) in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.'*** Elohim commanded the light to shine out of darkness, as we read in 2 Corinthians 4: 6, ***For Elohim, who said: "Light shall shine out of darkness," is the One who has shone in our hearts to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of Elohim in the face of Messiah.'***

Yahshua is coming to marry a bride who has cleansed herself with the washing of the word: i.e. studying the Scriptures, with a view to correct what we are doing wrong – using the Scriptures as a mirror to show up all our spots and blemishes, and then to clean up the same. We read fittingly in Ephesians 5: 25 – 27, as follows: ***'Husbands love your wives, just as Messiah also loved the ecclesia and gave Himself up for her; (26) that He might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word, (27)***

---

<sup>17</sup> We do not have to be overly concerned about the place of safety, since YHVH will take us there when the time comes, as we read in Psalm 27: 5: ***'For in the day of trouble He will conceal me in His tabernacle (alluding to the Feast of Sukkoth); In the secret place of His tent He will hide me; He will lift me up on a rock.'***

<sup>18</sup> We have the example of Balak the king of Moab who wanted Balaam to curse the nation of Israel in Numbers 22.

<sup>19</sup> Examples are: Who Yahshua the Messiah is.; and when do we keep the Feast Days of Elohim?

**that He might present to Himself the ecclesia in all her glory, having no spot or wrinkle or any such thing; but that she should be set-apart and blameless.**’ The bride-to-be is told to prepare herself by putting on things, as is mentioned in Colossians 3: 10, 12 & 14, in this way: **‘and have put on the new self who is being renewed to a true knowledge according to the image of the One who created him. (12) And so, as those who have been chosen of Elohim, Set-apart and beloved, put on a heart of compassion, kindness, humility, gentleness and patience; (13) bearing with one another, and forgiving each other, whoever has a complaint against anyone; just as the Master forgave you, so should you. (14) And beyond all these things put on love, which is the perfect bond of unity.**’ We also read Rav Shaul’s admonition in Ephesians 5: 1 – 4, as follows: **‘Therefore be imitators of Elohim, as beloved children; (2) and walk in love, just as Messiah also loved you, and gave Himself up for us, an offering and a sacrifice to Elohim as a fragrant aroma. (3) But do not let immorality or impurity or greed even be named among you, as is proper among saints; (4) and there must be no filthiness and silly talk, or course jesting, which are not fitting, but rather giving of thanks.’**

If we are students or disciples of the way of our Master Yahshua, we will strive to become like Him in every respect. We read in Luke 6: 40, that: **“A pupil is not above his teacher; but everyone after he has been fully trained, will be like his teacher.”** After we have become fully trained, we are commissioned by Yahshua in Matthew 28: 19 & 29, to: **“Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, immersion them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Set-apart Spirit, (20) teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”** We are told here, that eventually, after we have been suitably trained, it is our duty to immerse new believers and to teach them, the things that we have learnt from Yahshua, through His servants. In addition as Nazarene Israelites we are watchmen (see Isaiah 62: 6) and should declare to the people of Elohim, their transgressions and to Jacob their sins (see Isaiah 58: 1). As the future bride we should also be mindful of the fact that when YHVH forgive us our past sins, they are gone and forgotten, as we read in Psalm 103: 2 – 4 & 12 & 13, as follows: **‘Bless YHVH, O my soul, And forget none of His benefits; (3) Who pardons all your iniquities; Who heals all your diseases; (4) Who redeems your life from the pit; Who crowns you with loving-kindness and compassion. (12) As far as the east is from the west, So far has He removed our transgressions from us. (14) Just as a father has compassion on his children, So YHVH has compassion on those who fear Him.’** This means, that once we have repented and turned back to obeying YHVH and His teachings (Torah), we are forgiven. However, YHVH also require that we forget our past sins and way of life: Even though we, like the ancient Israelites, recall annually how YHVH delivered us out of Egypt (in our case sin), when we keep the Passover and Unleavened Bread, we need not recall the sins we practiced, before we came to repentance. Those of us who came out of Christianity, should therefore also forget the paganism that we were involved in, prior to becoming believers.

When we attend the Feast Days of Elohim, we should recall what each of these days mean and how they relate to Elohim’s plan of salvation for all mankind. In addition we should study the Scriptures applicable to the Feast day(s) that we are observing. YHVH wants us to rejoice during the Feast of Tabernacles, remembering that it pictures the thousand year millennium during which we will rule under Yahshua from Jerusalem. Talking about the second tithe, which we should spend during the Feast Days of YHVH, we read in Deuteronomy 14: 22 – 26, as follows: **“You shall surely tithe all the produce from what you sow, which comes out of the field every year. (23) And you shall eat in the presence of YHVH your Elohim, at the place where He chooses to establish His name, the tithe of your grain, your new wine, your oil and the first-born of your herd and your flock, in order that you may learn to fear YHVH your Elohim always. (24) And if the distance is so great for you that you are not able to bring the tithe, since the place where YHVH your Elohim chooses to set His name is too far away from you when YHVH your Elohim blesses you, (25) then you shall exchange it for money, and bind the money in your hand and go to the place which YHVH your Elohim chooses. (26) And you may spend the money for whatever your heart desires, for oxen, or sheep, or wine, or strong drink, or whatever your heart desires; and there you shall eat in the presence of YHVH your Elohim and rejoice, you and your household.’** YHVH wants us to save a tithe of our income, for use on whatever we desire (including strong drink if we so desire), during the Feast of Tabernacles. He wants us most of all to enjoy ourselves during the Feast and rejoice with our families. During the Feast Days, we should be instructed or reminded about the meaning of the Feast Days and how they relate to Elohim’s plan of salvation for all mankind. However, we should not recall the pagan festivals and its revelry that we used to keep. We should also forget about the unclean foods that we used to eat, during these pagan holidays and never say to people *‘I know it was wrong, but I enjoyed it when we could eat it’*, especially on the Sabbath or during the Feast days of Elohim. We need to remember that both the Sabbath and the Feast of Tabernacles picture the millennium rule of Yahshua. We should not talk about the things that are abhorrent to YHVH during His Set-apart times, which is supposed to be a *‘miqra’* or rehearsal of the wonderful world to come.

The bride-to-be should follow her future groom and forsake all else. We read fittingly in Matthew 16: 24, ***‘Then Yahshua said to His disciples, “If anyone wishes to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me.”’*** In following in the footsteps of our Master Yahshua, we will do the good works, described in the word of Elohim. The purpose of good works being as Yahshua told us in Matthew 5: 16: ***“Let your light shine before men in such a way that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in heaven.”*** This is another reason why we do not go and hide on a small desolate little island, for our own safety. We read in verses 14 & 15 of Matthew 5, that: ***“You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden. (15) Nor do men light a lamp, and put it under the peck-measure, but on the lampstand; and it gives light to all in the house.”*** After a disciple is fully trained, he should bear much fruit, as Yahshua said in John 15: 8, ***“By this is My Father glorified, that you bear much fruit, and so prove to be my disciples.”*** True disciples will continue to study the word of Elohim, as we read in John 8: 31 & 32, ***‘Yahshua therefore was saying to those Jews who had believed Him, “If you abide in My word, then you are truly disciples of Mine; (32) and you shall know the truth and the truth shall make you free.”’***

Since we are going to become kings and priests under Yahshua Messiah, our duties will include implementing and teaching the Torah commandments to those who survive the great tribulation to live on into the millennium ruled by Messiah. It is for this reason that we should not only study the Scriptures, but also learn to inculcate them into our lives. We apply the Scriptures in our lives by keeping the Torah teachings of Elohim: i.e. eating kosher foods; keeping the Sabbath and Feast days of Elohim; and practicing righteousness as a way of life. At the beginning of this sermon, I mentioned that the future bride has to be trained in Spiritual warfare to overcome the forces of evil, hostile to Elohim. We all know that Spiritual warfare cannot be fought with the arms and armor designed by man. The only way to fight in the constant Spiritual battle before us, is specified in Ephesians 6: 10 – 19, as follows: ***‘Finally, be strong in the Master, and in the strength of His might. (11) Put on the full armor of Elohim, that you may be able to stand firm against the schemes of the devil. (12) For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the powers, against the world forces of this darkness, against the spiritual forces of wickedness in the heavenly places. (13) Therefore, take up the full armor of Elohim, that you may be able to resist in the evil day, and having done everything, to stand firm. (14) Stand firm therefore, HAVING GIRDED YOUR LOINS WITH TRUTH (Yahshua said in John 17: 17 ‘Thy word is truth.’), and HAVING PUT ON THE BREASTPLATE OF RIGHTEOUSNESS (doing righteousness protects the heart or conscience), (15) and having shod YOUR FEET WITH THE PREPARATION OF THE GOSPEL OF PEACE (believing the gospel of the coming kingdom of Elohim, gives us peace, in knowing that all the evil of the present age will come to an end); (16) in addition to all, taking up the shield of faith (faith will shield us from the wrong attitudes that Satan continually broadcasts into our world.) with which you will be able to extinguish all the flaming missiles of the evil one. (17) And take THE HELMET OF SALVATION (i.e. faith in Yahshua as He is our helmet of salvation), and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of Elohim. (We see in Hebrews 4: 12 (paraphrased) that the word of Elohim is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing as far as the division of soul and spirit, i.e. convincing us of sin). (18) With all prayer and petition pray at all times in the Spirit, and with this in view, be on alert with all perseverance and petition for all saints.’***

The secrets of overcoming Satan’s lies are the future bride’s steadfast prayers and her obedience to the commandments of YHVH. Only doers of the word of YHVH can be the bride. We read accordingly in Ephesians 2: 8 – 10, as follows: ***‘For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, it is the gift of Elohim; (9) not as a result of works, that no one should boast. (10) For we are His workmanship, created in Messiah Yahshua for good works, which Elohim prepared beforehand that we should walk in them.’*** In fact we are commanded to do good works, as we read in 1 Peter 2: 11 & 12, as follows: ***‘Beloved, I urge you as aliens and strangers to abstain from fleshly lusts, which wage war against the soul. (12) Keep your behavior excellent among Gentiles, so that in the thing in which they slander you as evildoers, they may on account of your good deeds, as they observe them, glorify Elohim in the day of visitation’*** Many are called at present, but not all of those who are called will make it. We read accordingly in Luke 13: 24 – 30, Yahshua saying: ***“Strive to enter by the narrow door; for many, I tell you, will seek to enter and will not be able. (25) Once the head of the house gets up and shuts the door, and you begin to stand outside and knock on the door, saying, ‘Master, open to us!’ then He will answer and say to you, ‘I do not know where you are from.’ (26) Then you will begin to say, ‘We ate and drank in Your presence, and You taught in our streets’; (27) and He will say, ‘I tell you, I do not know where you are from; DEPART FROM ME, ALL YOU EVIL-DOERS.’ (28) There will be weeping and gnashing of teeth there when you see Abraham and Isaac and Jacob and all the prophets in the kingdom of Elohim, but yourselves cast out. (29) And they will come from east and west, and from north and south, and will recline at the table in the kingdom of Elohim. (30) And behold, some are last who will be first and some are first who will be last.”*** As we know, this is also confirmed in Matthew 22: 14, like this: ***“For many are called, but few are chosen.”***

Finally, it is clear that we must put in every effort to overcome the sins which so beset us: It is only by overcoming that we will rule over the nations under Yahshua, as we read in Revelation 2: 26 & 27, as follows:  
***“And he who overcomes, and he who keeps My deeds until the end, TO HIM I WILL GIVE AUTHORITY OVER THE NATIONS; (27) AND HE SHALL RULE THEM WITH A ROD OF IRON, AS THE VESSELS OF THE POTTER ARE BROKEN TO PIECES, as I also have received authority from My Father.”***



## **Chapter 18: The Spirit in man.**

In the beginning when Elohim created man, He created the spirit in man from Himself - from the very essence of Elohim. Next He made man from the dust of the ground. A truism that we all understand is, that a living thing needs to sustain itself, from the very source from which it is made: Both animals and plants are made from the dust of the ground; plants need soil to sustain it and animals eat plants and or other animals (which are nothing but soil) to sustain them. So does the spirit in man need contact with Elohim to sustain it spiritually and the physical man needs meat and vegetables (dust) to sustain him physically. The spirit in man yearns to be in touch with his Maker. The fact that we are made from the very essence of Elohim means that man has the potential of becoming sons of Elohim. However, if we do not stay in touch with our Creator we shall die like mere animals, from dust to dust. If we remained in touch with Elohim and feed from His word, we as mankind were destined to have Eternal life as sons of Elohim. But, because our original parents sinned, we were cut off from Eternal life known as the tree of life.

Since our Father's original plan was to make for Himself sons and daughters, He also had a contingency plan in mind should His original plan fail. He made His contingency plan known to us, through the introduction of His Set-apart Days in Leviticus 23. By keeping Elohim's Set-apart Days, we are able to understand His plan of salvation for all mankind. Because of this contingency plan, we are still able to become sons and daughters of Elohim: If we obey His Commandments, have faith in (the testimony of) Yahshua and we are immersed in His name. We are given a portion of the Set-apart Spirit after immersion and the laying-on of hands. This is as recorded in Acts 2:38 (***"Then Peter said unto them, "Repent, and be immersed every one of you in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the remission of sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Set Apart Spirit."***) and Acts 8:16-17 (***"For He had not yet fallen upon any of them; they had simply been immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah. (17) Then they began laying their hands on them, and they were receiving the Holy Spirit."***) However, immersion has to be in the name of Yahshua, which means the salvation of YHVH. The name J\*e\*s\*u\*s<sup>20</sup> does not mean that.

This is a Key to the Kingdom of YHVH: When we receive the Set Apart Spirit of Elohim, it merges with the spirit in man and we are begotten anew, giving us a fresh chance to, like Yahshua be resurrected to Eternal life. No animal has that potential, as animals do not have spirits. We are given a pledge of our inheritance when we are sealed by the Set-apart Spirit according to Ephesians 1: 13 & 14 ***"In Him you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of salvation – having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to the redemption of Elohim's own possession, to the praise of His glory."*** It is only mankind with the incredible potential to become the very sons and daughters of Elohim. We read in Romans 8:11 ***"But if the Spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Yahshua Messiah from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Spirit who indwells you."***

Some religious groups believe that we are born with immortal souls and that at death our souls go to either heaven or hell. The confusion about death may be directly attributed to a misunderstanding about what constitutes a soul. The question is does the soul exist apart from the body? And does it continue to exist after death? The English word soul is translated from the Hebrew word 'nephesh'. The word nephesh means creature. According to Genesis 1 we see that both animals (verse 21) and human beings (verse 27) were created ('Barah' as opposed to 'Asah' or to make in Hebrew). Man became a living soul or living being when YHVH breathed into his nostrils (Genesis 2: 7). So both animals and human beings have souls or are living souls. The difference between plant life and animal life is that animals have souls. Their souls give them the instinct to survive, i.e. to propagate their species; to find food; to build shelters (nest), etc. The difference between human beings and animals is that man has a spirit within him. We read about this in the second part of Zechariah 12: 1 as follows: ***"Thus declares YHVH who stretches out the heavens, lays the foundation of the earth, and forms the spirit of man within him."*** A second witness to this can be found in Job 32: 8 as follows: ***"But it is a spirit in man, And the breath of the Almighty gives them understanding."*** The final sentence tells us that it is the spirit in man that gives us the ability to understand, i.e. to evaluate various options open to us, and to make a decision as to which option to select. We are free moral agents, with the ability to choose to go the way of YHVH – the way of giving and sharing, or the wrong way - which is in essence a way of get.

The soul is not immortal and if it sins, it shall die as we read in Ezekiel 18: 4, as follows: ***"Behold all souls are Mine; the soul of the father as well as the soul of the son is mine. The soul who sins will die."*** We know that after YHVH created man He told them what to eat and what not to eat. In Genesis 2: 17 YHVH told

---

<sup>20</sup> We insert the asterisks in this name, as we are admonished in Exodus 23 verse 13: ***"Now concerning everything which I have said to you, be on your guard; and do not mention the name of other gods, nor let them be heard from your mouth."***

Adam: ***“but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you shall surely die.”*** In Genesis 3: 4 we read that Satan told Eve that she would not die, after eating from the tree of knowledge of good and evil. Satan contradicted what YHVH said and deceived Eve saying that man will not die. Most people even today still believe the lie that we will not die – that we are ‘immortal’. Satan has not only deceived our original mother Eve, but has as it says in Revelation 12: 9 ***‘deceived the whole world.’***

Prior to their sin Adam and Eve were destined to live forever. They were covered in light as depicted in the last part of verses 26 through 28 of Ezekiel 1: ***“and on that which resembled a throne, high up, was a figure with the appearance of a man. Then I noticed from the appearance of His loins and upward something like glowing metal that looked like fire all around within it, and from the appearance of His loins and downward I saw something like fire; and there was a radiance around Him. As the appearance of the rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day, so was the appearance of the surrounding radiance. Such was the appearance of the likeness of the esteem of YHVH. And when I saw it, I fell on my face and heard a voice speaking.”*** This is talking about what Yahshua the likeness of Elohim looked like, prior to coming in the flesh. This is what He looked like at His transfiguration in Matthew 17: 1 & 2 ***“And He was transfigured before them and His face shone like the sun, and His garments became white as light.”*** This is also what He will look like when He returns.

We also read about this in 1 Thessalonians 5: 23, as follows: ***“Now may the Elohim of peace Himself sanctify you entirely; and may your spirit and soul and body be preserved complete, without blame at the coming of our Messiah Yahshua.”*** At death the bodies and souls of believers are buried and our spirits go back to the Father (who gave it) in heaven. It is during this time that our spirits are perfected according to Hebrews 12: 23: ***“To the general assembly and congregation of the first-born who are enrolled in heaven, and to Elohim, the Judge of all, and to the spirits of righteousness men made perfect.”***

We need to follow the word of YHVH exactly to receive the Set-apart Spirit. It is only when we have the Spirit of Elohim that we understand Spiritual matters. We read accordingly in 1 Corinthians 2: 10 – 12, as follows: ***“For to us Elohim revealed them through the Spirit; for the Spirit searches all things, even the depths of Elohim. (11) For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the spirit of the man, which is in him? Even so the thoughts of Elohim no one knows except the Spirit of Elohim. (12) Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from Elohim, that we might know the things freely given to us by Elohim.”*** Once we have received the Set-apart Spirit and study the Scriptures it will convince us to change our lives for the better, as we read in Hebrews 4: 12 ***“For the word of Elohim is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword, and piercing as far as the division of soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow, and able to judge the thoughts and intentions of the heart.”***

In addition we read in Romans 8:14 – 17, ***“For all who are being led by the Spirit of Elohim, these are sons of Elohim. (15) For you have not received a spirit of slavery leading to fear again, but you have received a spirit of adoption as sons by which we cry out, “Abba! Father!” (16) The spirit Himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of Elohim, (17) and if children, heirs also, heirs of Elohim and fellow heirs with Messiah, if indeed we suffer with Him in order that we may also be glorified with Him.”*** However, YHVH only gives His Set-apart Spirit to those who obey Him as we read in Acts 5:32: ***“And we are witnesses of these things; and so is the Holy Spirit, whom Elohim has given to those who obey Him.”*** If we are not obedient to the word of Elohim, we could lose our salvation by grieving the Set-apart Spirit, as we read in Ephesians 4: 30 ***“And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of Elohim, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption.”*** By so doing we could lose eternal life, as we are told in Hebrews 6: 4 – 6, ***“For in the case of those who have once been enlightened and have tasted of the heavenly gift and have been made partakers of the Holy Spirit, (5) and have tasted the good word of Elohim and the powers of the age to come, (6) and then have fallen away, it is impossible to renew them again to repentance, since they again crucify to themselves the Son of Elohim, and put Him to open shame.”***

To conclude, let us read 2 Thessalonians 2: 13 – 15, Rav Shaul saying: ***‘But we should always give thanks to Elohim for you, brethren beloved by YHVH, because Elohim has chosen you from the beginning for salvation (i.e. as first fruits) through sanctification by the Spirit and faith in the truth. (14) And it was for this He called you through our gospel, that you may gain the glory of our Master Yahshua Messiah. (15) So then, brethren, stand firm and hold to the traditions which you were taught, whether by word of mouth or by letter from us.’***

## Chapter 19: The Mystery of Elohim.

Where does the idea of a trinity come from? Yes, I know it is a Christian doctrine explained by them, as the worship of one G-d in Trinity, and Trinity in Unity; neither confounding the persons, nor dividing the substance. But where did Christianity get this spurious doctrine from?

To answer this complex question, I would like to present the following explanation: Torah study is central to all of the different branches of Judaism, for two major reasons. In the first instance, Torah serves to inform us of Elohim's wishes, how to perform the commandments and live our lives. Torah tells us how to behave towards YHVH our Elohim, as well as how to live with fellow human beings. In this sense Torah is merely a means to an end.

Secondly, on the deeper level Torah is more than only a means to an end. Torah study is the most powerful way for us to getting to know Elohim and form a relationship, with an intangible Creator. Torah to us in the Nazarene Jewish faith includes both the Tanach {an acronym for the initial Covenant, which includes the Torah, the Prophets (Neviim) and the Writings (Kituvim)} and the Renewed Covenant (Kituvim Natzarim). In addition we believe that Yahshua is the word of Elohim made flesh or the Embodiment of Torah.

We of the Nazarene Jewish faith is like the other branches of Judaism not so much a religion, as it is a relationship between us and our Creator. YHVH our Creator has specified in His word what He requires of us. He does not want us to go to the other religions of the world, to find out how they worship their gods. He wants us to serve Him according to the way that He specifies in His word, the Scriptures.

The term Kabbalah became known to many people throughout the world, due to the mischief of an aging pop star that caught the headlines in newspapers world-wide a few years ago. The word Kabbalah is a Hebrew word meaning 'received'. The problem with the word Kabbalah is that during the middle ages, Kabbalah known as Jewish Mysticism came to be abused by people who practiced witchcraft, and as a result many falsely identified Kabbalah with witchcraft and black magic. However, nothing could be further from the truth.

The term Kabbalah was first used during the 13<sup>th</sup> century. Kabbalah is mainly used by Orthodox Judaism. These Jews are definitely not involved in black magic. Claims that Kabbalah as used by Jews is witchcraft are as untrue as the claims during the middle ages that Jews killed Christian babies to use their blood for the Passover. The Magical Kabbalists were more often gentiles or people with a Christian background. Whereas Jewish Kabbalists were never involved in witchcraft and black magic as some gentiles were.

However, Kabbalah could be a dangerous thing if not properly understood, as it may be perverted into Polytheism and paganism. Most Jews agree that Kabbalah must only be utilized by Torah observant believers, who believe in the thirteen principles of the Jewish faith: The most important being the belief, expressed by the Schema, i.e. **'Hear, O Israel, YHVH our Elohim, YHVH is One.'** The goal of Kabbalah is to uncover the hidden life of Elohim and His relationship with His creation. In other words Kabbalah is a method of explaining the Elohim head, or the mystery of Elohim.

I know that many will immediately object to the use of the word mystery. However, the Renewed Covenant uses the word in many instances, when it refers to for example, the mystery:

- of the kingdom of Elohim in Mark 4: 11;
- of the hidden wisdom which Elohim predestined before the age of glory; the wisdom which none of the rulers of this age has understood; for if they had understood it, they would not have crucified the Master of Glory, in 1 Corinthians 2: 7 & 8;
- of the word of Elohim, that is the mystery which has been hidden from the past ages and generations; but has now been manifested to His saints, in Colossians 1: 25 & 26;
- of godliness: He (some later manuscripts read G-d, i.e. Elohim) who was revealed in the flesh, Was vindicated in the Spirit, Beheld by angels, Proclaimed among the nations, Believed on in the world, Taken up in glory, in 1 Timothy 3: 16.

Kabbalah is very similar to modern day science, which is a collection of theories, used to explain how things behave. Sometimes it is used to try and explain the un-explained.

Kabbalah is an integral and inseparable part of Torah and plays a central role in Judaism and Torah study. When taken on its own and out of context, it has the potential to be abused, and will lead those who dabbles in it from the path of fulfillment. When placed in its rightful context, it is the heart and soul of what we stand for. It is much like an analogy used to try and explain YHVH. For example, I might use the following analogy to explain, how I understand YHVH: In my analogy I liken the sun unto the Father; the light given by the sun, is likened unto Yahshua; and the heat generated by the sun is likened unto the Set-apart Spirit. The point is

that we should not believe that YHVH, who made the sun, is the sun. If we do, we miss the point completely. We should not believe the method to explain YHVH, but rather the word of YHVH, in which He clearly states that He is the one and only Elohim.

Because the shenanigans of the pop star brought Kabbalah to the attention of many, more people are using terms and phrases from Kabbalah these days. There is nothing wrong if people who know what they are talking about quote from Kabbalah, now and then. In fact I believe that teachers of Nazarene Israel should be conversant with Kabbalah, but as our Jewish brothers teach, anyone who studies Kabbalah, must be fully conversant with Torah. They must believe in the Schema, so that they do not fall into the trap of believing in multiple gods, like the pagans do. YHVH says in Deuteronomy 4: 35 ***“To you it was shown that you might know that YHVH, He is Elohim; there is no other besides Him.”*** He adds in many instances in Isaiah, one of which is in Isaiah 43: 10 & 11, ***“You are My witnesses,” declares YHVH, “And My servant whom I have chosen, In order that you may know and believe Me, And understand that I am He. Before Me there was no Elohim formed, And there will be none after Me. “I, even I, am YHVH; And there is no savior besides Me.”*** Do you take YHVH at His word and believe that He is indeed One, or are you prepared to say in your Creator’s face, that you know He is two or even three, like some do? We should be careful to introduce foreign terms to those not familiar with, or who have been negatively influenced about Kabbalah, even if our intentions are sincere, as it could lead to confusion.

Let’s get back to the question asked at the beginning. Where does the doctrine of the trinity come from, or rather where did it originate. We all know that Judaism came well before Christianity. Jews definitely do not believe in a trinity. However, when studying Kabbalah, you will soon learn that Jews talk about the Three Pillars of the G-dhead. These three pillars correspond to three ‘Supernal Lights’ also known as three Tzachtzachot. These three lights have no beginning and constitute one essence and one root which are infinitely hidden, forming a kind of kabbalistic trinity that precedes the emanation of the ten sefirot. It is believed that Christianity found an allusion to their doctrine of the trinity in this theory. In fact the Jewish Encyclopedia states: The Cabala on the other hand, especially the Zohar, its fundamental work, was far less hostile to the dogma of the Trinity, since by its speculations regarding the father, the son, and the spirit, it evolved in a new trinity (Vol.12, p.261).

However, never forget that Kabbalah is seen as an analogy trying to explain the Elohimhead. Jews do not believe in a Trinity, but that YHVH is one and only One! Recently a fellow believer informed those of us on the internet that he does not believe in the Oneness of Elohim, like we do and requested that we remove his fellowship from our web information. He mentioned a phrase used in Kabbalah to justify his decision, saying that he believes that the Metatron, Yahshua is a separate entity from the Elohimhead.

Knowing a little about Kabbalah, I am aware that the word Metatron is another term for the word Memra, which is the Hebrew equivalent of the Greek logos, or the Word of YHVH in English. For example, according to the Tanach the speaker in Exodus 20: 1 is YHVH. According to the Jerusalem Targum, The Word of YHVH was the giver of the Mosaic Covenant. This is the YHVH that Rabbi Idith identifies in the Talmud as ‘Metatron.’ Thus Metatron is the Word of YHVH. In addition, according to the Zohar (Amsterdam Ed. Vol 2 Ex. P.51), the primary text of Rabbinic Kabbalah, the term ‘Metatron’, points to the keeper of Israel from Psalm 121: 4 & 5 ***“Behold, He who keeps Israel Will neither slumber nor sleep. (5) YHVH is your keeper; YHVH is your shade on your right hand.”*** In other words, Metatron, the keeper of Israel is YHVH.

In fact this is saying exactly what we read in John 1: 1 – 3, as follows: ***“In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. (2) He was in the beginning with Elohim. (3) All things came into being by Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being.”*** Yes, we do not worship the image of Elohim, but ask everything from the Father in Yahshua’s Name, as He taught us.

According to 1 Thessalonians 5: 23, we (mankind) consist of three parts, namely: spirit, soul and body - yet as individuals we are one. Similarly the One Elohim has three Parts as explained in Romans 1: 19 - 20: ***“Because that which is known of Elohim is manifested among them (mankind), for Elohim has manifested it to them. For since the creation of the world His invisible qualities (YHVH is invisible, and has no form<sup>21</sup>) have been clearly seen, being understood from what has been made, both His***

---

<sup>21</sup> According to 1 Timothy 1: 17 YHVH our Elohim is eternal, immortal and invisible: ***“Now to the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only Elohim, be honor and glory forever and ever. Amein.”*** This is confirmed in 1 Timothy 6: 16, as follows: ***“who alone possesses immortality and dwells in unapproachable light; whom no man has seen or can see. To Him be honor and eternal dominion! Amein.”*** YHVH cannot be understood by mankind, since we cannot see or define Him. He is the invisible Elohim.

**everlasting power** (Yahshua is the Power of Elohim<sup>22</sup>) **and divine nature** (The Set-apart Spirit is the divine nature of Elohim<sup>23</sup>), **for them to be without excuse**". YHVH is not three persons in one, but He consists of three parts.

Yahshua is not another YHVH: He was only a small portion of the One YHVH that was manifested in the flesh, the purpose of which was that He the Creator of Mankind could be their kinsman redeemer – He died for the sins of mankind and to be able to remarry His bride Israel, whom He divorced because of her adultery with the pagan gods of this world. Only the life of YHVH is worth more than the lives of all mankind together – so only He could redeem us from the second death. Those parts of the Infinite Elohim that YHVH desired to "border" in order to relate to our finite minds, He did so in the form of parts of Himself becoming "visible" to man in the personage of Yahshua. He did not put all of Himself within the borders of Yahshua, as that is impossible to place infinity within something finite. We know that all Jews are Israelites, but not all Israelites are Jews. Also all green beans are vegetables, but not all vegetables are green beans. Do you get the meaning? YHVH "became" a man in Yahshua, but Yahshua does not "contain" all of what YHVH is.... Because YHVH cannot be contained within definable borders, as He is infinite.

We should be careful to bandy about terms with which we are not familiar, or the purpose of which we do not understand. For us as Nazarene Israel, the Oneness of Elohim is not debatable, except if we are foolish enough to contradict the word of YHVH, and therefore YHVH Himself.

---

<sup>22</sup> We read in 1 Corinthians 1: 24, ***"but to those who are the called, both Jews and Greeks, Messiah the power of Elohim and the wisdom of Elohim"***. We read in Jeremiah 32: 17 & 21, ***'Ah YHVH Elohim! Behold, Thou hast made the heavens and the earth by Thy great power and by Thine outstretched arm! Nothing is too difficult for Thee. (21) And Thou didst bring Thy people Israel out of the land of Egypt with signs and with wonders, and with a strong hand and with an outstretched arm, and with great terror.'*** YHVH worked with human beings by appearing in the flesh thus becoming their kinsman redeemer. In the last part of Psalm 98: 1 we read: ***"His right hand and His holy arm have gained the victory for Him."*** In Isaiah 52: 10 we read: ***"YHVH has bared His holy arm In the sight of all the nations, That all the ends of the earth may see The salvation of our Elohim."*** The name Yahshua means salvation as can be understood from Matthew 1: 21 ***"And she will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Yahshua, for it is He who will save His people from their sins."*** YHVH has brought Israel out of both the slavery of Egypt and sin, with a powerful hand: He indeed is our Savior.

<sup>23</sup> The spiritual essence of YHVH is His divine nature. We are given a small portion of His divine nature, called a pledge of our inheritance when we are sealed by the Set - apart Spirit at immersion, according to Ephesians 1: 13 & 14 ***"In Him you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of salvation – having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to the redemption of Elohim's own possession, to the praise of His glory."*** It is by the indwelling of the Set-apart Spirit, that we demonstrate the fruit of the Spirit or divine nature of love, peace, patience, kindness, goodness and the like. In 1 Corinthians 2: 11 & 12 we read: ***"For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the spirit of the man, which is in him? Even so the thoughts of Elohim no one knows except the Spirit of Elohim. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from Elohim, that we might know the things freely given to us by Elohim."*** Also see 2 Peter 1: 4

## **Chapter 20: Some thoughts on prophesy and the place of safety.**

Over the past few years we've heard many prophesies about the time of the end and the place of safety. How do we deal with all these prophecies? Yahshua himself gave us a prophecy about the time of the end in Matthew 24. Notice in verses 3 & 4, that He did not share it with the whole world at the time: ***'And as He was sitting down on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to Him privately, saying, "Tell us, when will these things be, and what will be the sign of Your coming, and the end of the age?" And Yahshua answered and said to them, "See to it that no one misleads you."***

Who are the 'you', whom Yahshua was referring to here? His disciples of course or the people who were and are learning from Him - in the context of today, it means us in His assembly. In verse 5 of Matthew 24 Yahshua continued: ***"for many will come in my name saying, 'I am the Messiah,' and will mislead many."*** This means that many of the prophecies that we receive from Churches, Assemblies and other groups are designed to mislead us. In fact many will be misled to follow groups into doing things which are not commanded – such as setting-up places of safety on their own, in order to protect their own lives.

My wife and I belonged to a group who used to preach a great deal about the place of safety. They believed that the place of safety was a place called Petra (I believe it is somewhere in Jordan). However, one of the ministers of the group was excommunicated for saying that the place of safety was on your knees. Looking back, I am actually convinced that, that minister was correct. He meant that, if we stay close to YHVH He will protect us. Reading on in Matthew 24 verses 6 - 9 we see the things that are currently happening in our world. ***"And you will be hearing of wars and rumors of wars; see that you are not frightened, for those things must take place, but that is not the end. For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom, and in various places there will be famines and earth quakes. But all these things are merely the beginning of birth pangs. Then they will deliver you to tribulation, and will kill you, and you will be hated by all nations on account of My Name."*** Yes we will be hated on account of Yahshua's Name. Ask yourself are you prepared to stand up for the correct name of our Savior Yahshua? (Not Jesus).

Continuing on in verse 10 and 11 of Matthew 24 we read: ***"And at that time many will fall away and will deliver up one another and hate one another, and many false prophets will arise, and mislead many."*** So at this point in time we already see many false witnesses and so-called 'Prophets' who will lead many of the present day students of Messiah astray. The point is that there are many people who believe with their whole heart, that they are able to interpret 'The Scriptures' correctly, to be able to work out the details of prophesies for us regarding the future. However we see in these verses above that most of these so-called prophets are false prophets or putting differently, liars!! The question is: Why do these well-meaning people prophesy the way they do?

Turning to Ezekiel 13 verses 1 – 3 we read: ***'Then the word of YHVH came to me saying, "Son of man, prophesy against the prophets of Israel who prophesy, and say to those who prophesy from their own inspiration, 'Listen to the word of YHVH! Thus says YHVH Elohim, "Woe to the foolish prophets who are following their own spirit and have seen nothing."*** Reading on in verse 4 - 6, we see: ***"O Israel, your prophets have been like foxes among ruins. You have not gone up into the breaches, nor did you build the wall around the house of Israel to stand in the battle on the Day of YHVH. They see falsehood and lying divination who are saying, 'YHVH declares,' when YHVH has not sent them; yet they hope for the fulfillment of their words."*** Here we see the answer - these prophets are doing it in hope that their words will be fulfilled. That is pure human nature – we all want to look good in the eyes of our fellow believers.

However, we need to be very careful or we could lose out in being recorded in the register of the House of Israel, or entering the land of Israel. We read about this in verses 8 & 9 of Ezekiel 13 as follows: ***'Therefore, thus says YHVH Elohim, "Because you have spoken falsehood and seen a lie, therefore behold, I am against you," declares YHVH Elohim. "So My hand will be against the prophets who see false visions and utter lying divinations. They will have no place in the council of My people, nor will they be written down in the register of the house of Israel, nor will they enter the land of Israel, that you may know that I am YHVH Elohim."***

We should not spend too much time studying all the false prophesies, that we receive on a regular basis in magazines, books and the internet. According to Matthew 24, there will be certain signs to inform us that the time is near. Let us turn back to Matthew 24 and read in verses 13 & 14: ***"But the one who endures to the end, he shall be saved. And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in the whole world for a witness to all the nations, and then the end shall come."*** This tells me that we should not waste time trying to work out when the end will come, rather, we should endure to the end and be busy proclaiming the good news of the coming kingdom of Elohim, and then the end will come. In verse 15 to 32 of Matthew 24 we

see the signs to warn us of the timing of the end and in verse 36 we read that only YHVH the Father knows, when Yahshua will return.

Continuing on to the end of Matthew 24 we see that all we need to do is to remain loyal and keep doing the work of Elohim, then YHVH will protect us. What then is the work of Elohim? You may ask. The answer is found in John 6:29: ***“Yahshua answered and said to them, “This is the work of Elohim that you believe in Him whom He has sent.”***

So it behooves us to believe in what Yahshua said about the time of the end in Matthew 24 and in Luke 21. However, we see in Revelation 12: 6 that ultimately YHVH will protect His people from Satan in the wilderness for three and a half years. Where is the wilderness? Is it in Petra in Jordan or perhaps somewhere in South Africa? I tell you for certain that only YHVH knows at this stage and that it is not important for us to know. Those who are desperate to know, are the ones who love their lives even unto death, that we are warned about in Revelation 12: 11 as follows: ***“And they overcame him (Satan) because of the blood of the Lamb and because of the word of their testimony, and they did not love their life even to death.”***

What will it help you if you knew where the place of safety is and will not be found worthy to enter it? We should not be wise in our own estimation. We read about this in Romans 11: 25 & 26 paraphrased: ***“Once the fullness of the gentiles (those of Israel who believe and act as if they are gentiles) has come in, all Israel will be saved.”*** We need to make sure that we remain part of the Israel of Elohim and the only way that we will be able to do this is given in Revelation 14: 12: ***“Here is the perseverance of the saints who keep the commandments of Elohim (Torah) and their faith in Yahshua.”*** (Believe in the saving Name Yahshua - the Salvation of Yah and in what Yahshua taught whilst He was on earth).

The creature who was known as Lucifer before his fall, currently exists as Satan and may today be seen in the supernatural, occult and witchcraft. Whilst the Scriptures is the only book which contains prophecies that always come true, there are other books whose prophecies do not—other “prophets” like Nostradamus a French physician and astrologer who lived in Europe during the 15 hundreds; Prophet van Rensburg who lived in South Africa during the 19 hundreds; and various astrologers and fortune tellers who have never been proven to be one hundred percent accurate! In Deuteronomy 18: 22 we read: ***“When a prophet speaks in the name of YHVH, if the thing does not come about or come true, that is the thing which YHVH has not spoken. The prophet has spoken it presumptuously; you shall not be afraid of him.”*** And if he is not from Elohim, the Scriptures state that he is to be killed (see Deuteronomy 18: 20).

This seems to be rather a severe punishment for an ancient false prophet! Even so, these so called prophets have many modern day counterparts who also claim to receive revelations, visions and prophecies from supernatural sources. It is important that we understand that they like the ancient false prophets are not receiving their truths from Elohim. We know this because the Scriptures state that if a prophet is not one hundred percent accurate then he is not a prophet from Elohim. In Deuteronomy 18: 21 we read: ***“How shall we know the word which YHVH hath not spoken?”*** The penalty in ancient Israel for false prophecy was death by stoning (see Deuteronomy 13: 1 - 10). The reason was that it demanded both a punishment and deterrent! Why? Because their sources of prophesy were not from Elohim but from the so-called supernatural or Satan. Even though such “prophets” may claim Elohim as their inspiration, we know that He is not!

The Scriptures give us far greater hope than the now famous (or should it be infamous) Nostradamus or prophet van Rensburg ever could. The promises of the Messiah, who loves each one of us and who promised the soon coming Kingdom of Elohim, far exceeds any prophesy that these so-called prophets could ever offer us. In other words, all the future prophecies of doom and gloom that prophets like Nostradamus and Van Rensburg, are said to have made, will not happen the way they said, but the way the Scriptures say—ending in our triumph with Messiah Yahshua’s victory, over the evils of Armageddon, which Satan and his demons will attempt to perpetrate upon us. We are aware of the fact that both Nostradamus and Prophet van Rensburg and their prophecies have become a religion of sorts. Nostradamus’ prophecies are commonly compared to prophesy in the Scriptures by some. South Africans need to be careful not to make the same mistake with the prophecies of their prophet Van Rensburg.

In Japan, France, England, and America, books published at the end of the last century re-examine Nostradamus’ prognostications as foreshadows of recent history. A book entitled: ‘Centuries’ by Nostradamus has remained continuously in print for more than 400 years. No other prophet has held as constant a place in the hearts and minds of the people as Nostradamus did. The reason is that people worry too much about the future. They want to know what they need to do to save themselves from what is going to happen in the near

future. They want to know of a place of safety where they will be kept safely whilst the rest of humanity will be experiencing the great tribulation spoken of by Yahshua our Messiah in Matthew 24: 21.

The place of safety is on our knees, staying close to YHWH. We cannot tell our Father where we want the place of safety to be, He will protect us wherever we are. We have read in Romans 11 that once the fullness of the gentiles has come in, all Israel will be saved. This does not say that only those in Israel or South Africa will be saved - it says all Israel will be saved. So let us stop worrying about the place of safety and start worshipping our Father in heaven in Spirit and in Truth. When we reach the point where the fullness of the gentiles have come in (see Romans 11: 25), then our work will be finished. In Matthew 24: 15 – 22 we read: ***“Therefore when you see the ABOMINATION OF DESOLATION which was spoken of through Daniel the prophet, standing in the Set-apart place (let the reader understand), then let those who are in Jerusalem flee to the mountains; let him who is on the housetop not go down to get the things out that are in the house; and let him who is in the field not turn back to get his cloak. But woe to those who are with child and to those who nurse babes in those days! But Pray that your flight may not be in winter, or on a Sabbath; for then there will be a great tribulation, such as has not occurred since the beginning of the world until now, nor ever shall. And unless those days had been cut short, no life would have been saved; but for the sake of the elect those days shall be cut short.”***

The tribulation is said to last for a period of seven years, however, it will, as we have seen in Matthew 24, be cut short for the elect's sake. We also read concerning this in Daniel 12: 7, as follows: ***“And I heard the man dressed in linen, who was above the waters of the river, as he raised his right hand and his left toward heaven, and swore by Him who lives forever that it would be for a time, times, and half a time; and as soon as they finished shattering the power of the Set-apart people, all these events will be accomplished.”*** This tells us that the tribulation will be cut short and will only last a time, times, and half a time, meaning three and a half years or one thousand two hundred and sixty days.

In the book of Daniel we read about this in chapter 12: 10 – 13 as follows: ***“Many will be purged, purified and refined; but the wicked will act wickedly, and none of the wicked will understand, but those who have insight will understand. And from the time that the daily sacrifice is abolished, and the abomination of desolation is set up, there will be 1,290 days. How blessed is he who keeps waiting and attains to the 1,335 days! But as for you (talking to Daniel), go your way to the end; then you will enter into rest and rise again for your allotted portion at the end of the age.”***

This agrees with Revelation 12 verse 6 where we read: ***‘And the woman fled into the wilderness where she had a place prepared by Elohim, so that there she might be nourished for one thousand two hundred and sixty days.’*** Now let us get back to the 1290 and the 1335 days quoted above from verse 11 and 12 of Daniel 12. Working back from the 1335 days, when the work will be finished (when the fullness of the gentiles have come in), it is speculated to take 45 days for the elect to get to Jerusalem (1335 days minus 45 days, giving 1290 days). It is further speculated to take a further 30 days to get to the place of safety in the wilderness (1290 days minus 30 days, giving 1260 days). The ones making it to the 1335 days will indeed be blessed as that is when the work will be finished. They will be taken to Jerusalem and on into the place of safety, where they will be protected for 1260 days.

We do not know every detail of how Elohim will save His elect at the end of the days, yet! We read in 1 Corinthians 13: 9, 10 & 12, ***‘For we know in part, and we prophesy in part; but when the perfect (Yahshua) comes, the partial will be done away. For now we see in a mirror dimly, but then face to face; now I know in part, but then I shall know fully just as I also have been known fully.’*** We can only speculate, but know for certain that we will make it if we keep on doing YHWH our Elohim's will, as we read in Matthew 24: 45 & 46: ***Who then is the faithful and sensible slave whom his master put in charge of his household to give them their food at the proper time? Blessed is that slave whom the master finds so doing when he comes.”***

Yahshua's return is sure, but we cannot set dates or give Him ultimatums. We need to remain loyal to our coming king, despite enemy propaganda. We must never surrender: we are to live in what amounts to enemy territory and witness to a better way of life. We need to tell fellow human beings about the coming Kingdom of Elohim, to deliver all humans from the corruption of sin. In 2 Timothy 2: 3 Rav. Shaul told Timothy: ***‘Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Messiah Yahshua.’*** Our Orders are clear, no matter how long it takes – occupy till Yahshua returns. When He returns, He hopes to find us ‘so doing’ as it reads in Matthew 24: 46.



We read in Revelation 14: 13 that even if we die during the coming great tribulation, we will be considered blessed, as follows: ***‘And I heard a voice from heaven, saying, “Write, ‘Blessed are the dead who die in YHVH from now on!’” “Yes,” says the Spirit, “that they may rest from their labors, for their deeds follow with them.”*** In addition we know that those who died in Messiah will be resurrected at His coming, as per 1 Corinthians 15: 22 & 23: ***‘For as in Adam all die, so also in Messiah all shall be made alive. But each in his own order: Messiah the first fruit, after that those who are Messiah’s at His coming.’***

The question is what motivates those who are overly concerned about the place of safety. Is it to secure their own lives, or not? This reminds me of Yahshua’s words in Luke 17 talking about the coming kingdom of Elohim, in verses 30 – 33 as follows: ***“It will be just the same on the day that the Son of Man is revealed. On that day, let not the one who is on the housetop and whose goods are in the house go down to take them away; and likewise let not the one who is in the field turn back. Remember Lot’s wife. Whoever seeks to keep his life shall lose it, and whoever loses his life shall preserve it.”***

## **Chapter 21: The mystery of the doctrine of two house Israel.**

Most of us are aware of how YHVH brought the people of Israel out of Egypt and brought them into the wilderness, where they became the nation of Israel. However because of their rebellion against YHVH and unbelief, He made them wander in the wilderness for forty years, where He allowed all of those over the age of twenty to die, except for Joshua and Caleb. After Moses died Joshua took the nation across the Jordan into the Promised Land.

But, even in the Promised Land the children of Israel rebelled against YHVH and did not walk according to His commandments, statutes and laws. For that reason YHVH later allowed the nation to split in two and to be taken captive for their rebellion. The nation of Israel was taken captive by the Assyrians during 721 – 718 BCE: The Assyrians attacked Israel and destroyed their cities and took the people captive, moving them to far distant lands. Over time the nation of Israel lost their identity, their language and their culture. They became known as the lost tribes of the house of Israel. Later around 586 BCE King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon attacked Jerusalem, breaking down the city walls, and destroying the city. He also destroyed the Temple that Solomon built and took the nation of Judah captive to Babylon. Judah remained captive in Babylon for 70 years. However, the Babylonians did not try to take away the identity of the Jews. They retained their language, culture and Laws. After 70 years, the king of Persia, named Cyrus allowed them to return to their homeland, to rebuild the Temple.

In our studies of the Torah, we have identified the ten lost tribes among the modern nations, where YHVH has scattered them, according to the blessings that father Jacob and Moses gave them, in Genesis 49 and Deuteronomy 33, respectively. However, we read in Ezekiel 20: 34 to 38 that just as the ancient Israelites were lead out of Egypt by YHVH, so is He going to do with us, as, the modern day descendants of Israel, as follows: ***“And I shall bring you out from the peoples and gather you from the lands where you are scattered, with a mighty hand and with an outstretched arm and with wrath poured out; (35) and I shall bring you into the wilderness of the peoples, and there I shall enter into judgment with you face to face. (36) As I entered into judgment with your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so I will enter into judgment with you,” declares YHVH Elohim. (37) And I shall make you pass under the rod, and I shall bring you into the bond of the covenant (we will be keeping the commandments again); (38) and I shall purge from you the rebels and those who transgress against Me; I shall bring them out of the land where you sojourn, but they will not enter the land of Israel. Thus you will know that I am YHVH.”*** The rebels among those of us called at this time will also not make it into the kingdom of Elohim.

We also read about the re-gathering of Israelites from all over the world, back to the land of Israel, in Isaiah 11: 10 to 16, in this way: ***‘Then it will come about in that day that the nations will resort to the root of Jesse, who will stand as a signal for the peoples; and His resting place will be glorious. (11) Then it will happen on that day that YHVH will again recover the second time with His hand the remnant of His people, who will remain, from Assyria, Egypt, Pathros, Cush, Elam, Shinar, Hamath, and the island (or coastlands) of the sea. (12) And He will lift up a standard for the nations, and will assemble the banished ones of Israel, and gather the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth. (13) Then the jealousy of Ephraim will depart, and those who harass Judah will be cut off; Ephraim will not be jealous of Judah, and Judah will not harass Ephraim. (14) And they will swoop down on the slopes of the Philistines on the west; together they will plunder the sons of the east; they will possess Edom and Moab; and the sons of Ammon will be subject to them. (15) And YHVH will utterly destroy the tongue of the Sea of Egypt; and He will wave His hand over the River with His scorching wind; and He will strike it into seven streams, and make men walk over dry-shod. (16) And there will be a highway from Assyria from the remnant of His people who will be left, just as there was for Israel in the day that they came up out of the land of Egypt.’*** In fact there are numerous scriptures telling us of the physical return of Israel. However, because of the false worship and idolatry of the Israelite nations during our punishment over the almost past 2730 years<sup>24</sup>, we will have to undergo a physical and Spiritual cleansing.

Yes, before we can be re-gathered to the land of Israel, we will have to be made the Israel of Elohim again. The remnant of us called out of the different Israelite countries will have to be made citizens of the Israel of Elohim, by relearning to obey the commandments, statutes and laws of YHVH. We will have to start keeping the kosher laws recorded in Leviticus 11, Deuteronomy 14 and elsewhere in Torah again; we will have to start keeping the weekly Sabbath and annual Feast Days of Elohim again; and learn to love His name and

---

<sup>24</sup> Israel was taken captive by the Assyrians during 721 – 718 BCE. Adding the 2730 years of punishment, i.e. the 390 years (of Ezekiel 4: 5) times 7 (of Leviticus 26: 18) brings us to between 2009 and 2012 CE.

hold fast His covenant<sup>25</sup> again. It is like a previous teacher of mine once said; the Scots will have to be de-Scotched; similarly will each and every one of us from the ten tribe nations have to lose the pagan cultures and ways that we learnt in the countries, where our fathers eventually settled, and accept the culture and ways of the united Israel of Elohim again.

Because of our adulteries with foreign gods whom our fathers did not know, YHVH divorced us (the lost ten tribes of Israel), as we read in Jeremiah 3: 8 - 18, where Elohim says: ***“And I saw that for all the adulteries of faithless Israel, I had sent her away and given her a writ of divorce, yet her treacherous sister Judah did not fear; but she went and was a harlot also. (9) And it came about because of the lightness of her harlotry, that she polluted the land and committed adultery with stones and trees (idols made from stone and wood). (10) And yet in spite of all this her treacherous sister Judah did not return to Me with all her heart, but rather in deception,” declares YHVH. (11) And YHVH said to me, “Faithless Israel has proved herself more righteous than treacherous Judah. (12) Go, and proclaim these words toward the north and say, ‘Return, faithless Israel,’ declares YHVH; I will not look upon you in anger, for I am gracious,’ declares YHVH; ‘I will not be angry forever. (13) Only acknowledge your iniquity, that you have transgressed against YHVH your Elohim and have scattered your favors to the strangers under every green tree (a good example being the Xmas tree), and you have not obeyed My voice,’ declares YHVH. (14) Return, O faithless sons,’ declares YHVH; ‘For I am a master to you, and I will take you one from a city and two from a family, and will bring you to Zion.’ (15) Then I will give you shepherds after My own heart, who will feed you on knowledge and understanding. (16) And it shall be in those days when you are multiplied and increased in the land,” declares YHVH, “they shall say no more, ‘The ark of the covenant of YHVH.’ And it shall not come to mind, nor shall they remember it, nor shall they miss it, nor shall it be made again (telling us not to be overly obsessed to find the ark of the covenant any more, like some Messianic believers do). (17) At that time they shall call Jerusalem ‘The Throne of YHVH,’ and all the nations will be gathered to it, to Jerusalem, for the name of YHVH; nor shall they walk anymore after the stubbornness of their evil heart. (18) In those days the house of Judah will walk with the house of Israel, and they will come together from the land of the north to the land that I gave your fathers as an inheritance.”*** Some Messianic believers use verse 18 as support for the Jewish immigration that came into Israel from the Soviet Union. Even though it includes Jews returning to the land of Israel, it is also talking about the Northern kingdom of Israel that was taken into captivity by the Assyrians, which was also north of the land of Israel.

Even though YHVH has divorced us and scattered us amongst the nations of the world, He loves us and wants us to return to Him and His ways. What YHVH has planned for us from before the foundation of the world will never change. We read in Ephesians 1: 3 – 9, in this way: ***‘Blessed be the Elohim and Father of our Master Yahshua Messiah, who has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places in Messiah, (4) just as He chose us from before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and blameless before Him, in love. (5) He predestined us to adoption as sons through Yahshua Messiah to Himself, according to the kind intention of His will, (6) to the praise of the glory of His grace, which He freely bestowed on us in the Beloved. (7) In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace, (8) which He lavished upon us. In all wisdom and insight. (9) He made known to us the mystery of His will, according to His kind intention which He purposed in Him.’*** YHVH is prepared to do whatever it takes to bring to fruition what he has planned for our lives before the foundation of the world. According to Romans 11: 29, His gifts and calling are irrevocable. So even though we were ‘lost’, we read Yahshua’s comforting words in Luke 19: 10, ***“(For) the Son of Man has come to seek and to save that which was lost.”***

We continue to read about Elohim’s great purpose in Ephesians 2: 4 - 22, as follows: ***‘But Elohim, being rich in mercy, because of His great love with which He loved us, (5) even when we were dead in our transgressions, made us alive together with Messiah (by grace you have been saved), (6) and raised us up with Him, and seated us with Him in heavenly places (the heavenly kingdom), in Messiah Yahshua, (7) in order that in the ages to come He might show the surpassing riches of His grace in kindness toward us in Messiah Yahshua. (8) For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, it is the gift of Elohim; (9) not as a result of works, that no one should boast. (10) For we are His workmanship, created in Messiah Yahshua for good works, which Elohim prepared beforehand, that we should walk in them. (11) Therefore remember, that formerly you, the Gentiles in the flesh, who are called “Un-circumcision” by the so-called “Circumcision,” which is performed in the flesh by human hands- (12) remember that you were at that time separate from Messiah, excluded from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers to the covenants of promise, having no hope and without Elohim in the world. (13) But now in Messiah Yahshua you who formerly***

---

<sup>25</sup> We read about the covenant that YHVH made with Israel in Deuteronomy 4: 13, like this: ***“So He declared to you His covenant which He commanded you to perform, that is, the ten commandments; and He wrote them on two tablets of stone.”***

were far off have been brought near by the blood of Messiah. (14) **For He Himself is our peace, who made both groups into one, and broke down the barrier of the dividing wall, (15) by abolishing in His flesh the enmity, which is the law of commandments contained in ordinances** (Noahite laws which are not Scriptural?) **that in Himself He might make the two into one new man, thus establishing peace, (16) and might reconcile them both in one body to Elohim through the cross, by it having put to death the enmity. (17) AND HE CAME AND PREACHED PEACE TO YOU WHO WERE FAR AWAY(us), AND PEACE TO THOSE WHO WERE NEAR** (the Jews); (18) **for through Him we both have our access in one Spirit to the Father.**(19) **So then you are no longer strangers and aliens, but you are fellow citizens with the saints, and are of Elohim's household, (20) having been built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Messiah Yahshua Himself being the corner stone, (21) in whom the whole building, being fitted together is growing into a holy temple in the Master; (22) in whom you also are being built together into a dwelling of Elohim in the Spirit.'**

It was always Elohim's purpose that we become holy and without blame before Him, for His name sake. He promised to give us a new heart and a new spirit – the Set-apart Spirit, His Ruach HaKodesh that lives in those of us who have been immersed. It is His Set-apart Spirit that will eventually lead us into all truth. It is Elohim's purpose to fill us with the wisdom of YHVH that can only be revealed to us through His Spirit. Our lives will make known and proclaim the wisdom of Elohim to the principalities and powers in the heavenly places that they cannot search out for themselves. The wisdom and knowledge of Satan is presently in this world, and it is far lower than the wisdom and knowledge of Almighty YHVH, that is made known freely to those who are in Messiah. We read accordingly in 1 Corinthians 2: 6 – 12, **'Yet we do speak wisdom among those who are mature; a wisdom, however, not of this age, nor of the rulers of this age, who are passing away; (7) but we speak Elohim's wisdom in a mystery, the hidden wisdom, which Elohim predestined before the ages to our glory; (8) the wisdom which none of the rulers of this age has understood; for if they had understood it, they would not have crucified the Master of glory; (9) but just as it is written, "THINGS WHICH EYE HAS NOT SEEN AND EAR HAS NOT HEARD, AND WHICH HAVE NOT ENTERED THE HEART OF MAN, ALL THAT ELOHIM HAS PREPARED FOR THOSE WHO LOVE HIM."** (10) **For to us Elohim revealed them through the Spirit; for the Spirit searches all things, even the depths Of Elohim. (11) For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the spirit of the man, which is in him?** (do you know that even [Christian] Bible commentators try to deny that mankind is composed of body, soul and spirit – which is perhaps why they do not understand the Oneness of Elohim) **Even so the thoughts of Elohim no one knows except the Spirit of Elohim. (12) Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from Elohim, that we might know the things freely given to us by Elohim, (13) which things we also speak, not in words taught by human wisdom, but in those taught by the Spirit, combining spiritual thoughts with spiritual words.'**

Before we were called, we were branches of a wild olive tree. But by the grace of YHVH he found us when we were not looking for Him and grafted us into the cultivated olive tree, which was against our nature. We know that a branch cannot change its nature, but by grafting us into the cultivated olive tree changed our nature to that of the root (or foundation) of the tree, namely Messiah. It is only by the sap (or Spirit) of the cultivated olive tree that we are changed. However, we need to remain humble to stay in the cultivated tree, so that we may be transformed in accordance with the way of Elohim. Our earthly bodies (or flesh) have been conditioned to follow the principles of the world. We will be surrounded by lawlessness, as long as we follow the principles of lawlessness that is in the world. However, YHVH has given us grace to live according to His principles and ways. If Messiah is in us, though the body is dead because of sin, yet the spirit is alive because of righteousness. Talking about the Jews, Rav Shaul asks in Romans 11: 7 – 11, **'What then? That which Israel is seeking for, it has not obtained, but those who were chosen obtained it, and the rest were hardened; (8) just as it is written, "ELOHIM GAVE THEM A SPIRIT OF STUPOR, EYES TO SEE NOT AND EARS TO HEAR NOT, DOWN TO THIS VERY DAY.'** (9) **And David says , "LET THEIR TABLE BECOME A SNARE AND A TRAP, AND A STUMBLING BLOCK AND A RETRIBUTION TO THEM. (10) Let THEIR EYES BE DARKENED TO SEE NOT, AND BEND THEIR BACKS FOREVER."** (11) **I say then, they did not stumble so as to fall, did they? May it never be! But by their transgression salvation has come to the Gentiles, to make them jealous.'**

It is our duty to obey the Torah teachings of Elohim to the best of our ability, at this time. We ought to be thankful that YHVH has blinded our Jewish brothers, allowing those whom He has called from the lost ten tribes, to share a place in the olive tree. We are warned in Romans 11: 20 – 22, not to be conceited about it, but to fear, lest YHVH break us off as well. If we persevere and do what we are called for, all Israel shall be saved, when the full number of those that YHVH wants, from the lost ten tribes have come in, as we read in Romans 11: 25 - 27, as follows: **'For I do not want you, brethren to be uninformed of this mystery, (which we only understand when we have the Set-apart Spirit indwelling us) lest you be wise in your own estimation** (talking about those who believe that they have been given the authority of the Sanhedrin, to determine the Set-apart Days of Elohim, because they believe that our Jewish brothers have 'lost it'), **that a**

**partial hardening has happened to Israel** (Jewish Israel) **until the fullness of the Gentiles** (the lost ten tribes who have forgotten that they are Israel, as well as some actual Gentiles) **has come in:** (26) **and thus all Israel will be saved; just as it is written, “THE DELIVERER WILL COME FROM ZION, HE WILL REMOVE UNGODLINESS FROM JACOB.”** (Talking about Yahshua being Jewish, who paid the indebtedness for breaking the Torah, for both houses of Israel.) (27) **“AND THIS IS MY COVENANT WITH THEM, WHEN I TAKE AWAY THEIR SINS.”** When Yahshua returns one day on the Feast of Trumpets, the Jews (those who remain righteous and attend Synagogue services) will see His hands and accept Him as their Master and Elohim, as may be read in Zechariah 12: 10 – 14, and as Thomas did, when He saw Yahshua's hands, in John 20: 28.

Since we have become part of the cultivated olive tree, we need to bear fruit, as may be read in Matthew 7: 16 – 19, **“You will know them by their fruits. Grapes are not gathered from thorn bushes, nor figs from thistles, are they? (17) Even so, every good tree bears good fruit; but the bad tree bears bad fruit. (18) A good tree cannot produce bad fruit, nor can a bad tree produce good fruit. (19) Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire.”** We need to be serious about our calling – because we are being judged at this time. We need to produce the fruits of the Spirit listed in Galatians 5: 22 & 23, as follows: **‘But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, (23) gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.’** It is my honest opinion that it is mainly due to the fact that some believers do not fully understand the mystery of the doctrine of the two houses of Israel, and our role to make our Jewish brothers jealous, that they are anti-Semitic. Like it, or not, but we will eventually become one with them!

## **Chapter 22: How can you afford to attend the Feast Days of Elohim?**

Even though the Feast Days of Elohim are mentioned the first time in Leviticus 23, we already read in Genesis 1: 14, ***‘Then Elohim said, “Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens to separate the day from the night, and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days and for years.”’*** The word seasons here is transliterated as ‘mo’ed’ in Hebrew, meaning appointed times.

The appointed times or seven annual Feast Days that YHVH ordained, from the very beginning of creation are arranged according to the harvest seasons in the land of Israel. The Feast Days begin according to the Hebrew calendar during spring (transliterated as ‘Aviv’ meaning green ears in Hebrew) in the northern hemisphere, when barley is harvested at the time of Passover. This is followed by the Feast of Weeks, also known as Pentecost, when wheat is harvested at the beginning of summer; then during the fall (or autumn) season olives, grapes and vegetables are harvested, when the Feast of Trumpets, the Day of Atonement, the Feast of Tabernacles and the Last Great Day are kept. These Feast Days of YHVH are shadows of things to come, as we read in Colossians 2: 16 & 17, and picture Elohim’s plan of salvation for all mankind.

We read in Exodus 31: 13 that the Sabbaths, meaning the Annual Sabbaths or Feast days of Elohim, as well as the weekly Sabbath, together make up a sign between YHVH and us (both houses of Israel) His people, as follows: ***“But as for you, speak to the sons of Israel, saying, ‘You shall surely observe My Sabbath; for this is a sign between Me and you throughout your generations, that you may know that I am YHVH who sanctifies you.’”*** A second witness to this is found in Ezekiel 20: 19 & 20, like this: ***‘I am YHVH your Elohim; walk in My statutes, and keep My ordinances, and observe them, (20) And sanctify My Sabbaths; and they shall be a sign between Me and you, that you may know that I am YHVH your Elohim.’*** We see that we are identified as the people of Elohim, by keeping His weekly and annual Sabbaths. In addition, we see that by keeping these Set-apart Days of Elohim, we are sanctified, for His purpose. It is during the weekly and annual Sabbath’s that we get to know YHVH and His plan of salvation for mankind. Most people in the world and especially those in Christianity believe that they have been freed from the obligation of keeping these days. They therefore miss out on the blessing obtained from observing the Sabbaths of Elohim.

The Sabbath days of Elohim, sets us apart from the people in the world. We are enriched by spending time on these Sabbaths to rest, but also to learn to fear YHVH our Elohim. When we come to believe in YHVH and learn to obey His ways, we are signed as being His people when we keep His Sabbaths. However, we are also sealed by His name, when we are immersed in His<sup>26</sup> saving name. The sign identifies us as Elohim’s people and the seal given at immersion, is a pledge (or deposit) of our inheritance of eternal life. Those of us who are already immersed carry the name of YHVH as His future bride, but we need to be careful how we live, if we want to make it into Elohim’s eternal kingdom, as we read in Ephesians 4: 25 – 30, as follows: ***‘Therefore, laying aside falsehood, SPEAK TRUTH, EACH ONE of you, WITH HIS NEIGHBOR, for we are members of one another. (26) BE ANGRY, AND yet DO NOT SIN; do not let the sun go down on your anger, (27) and do not give the devil an opportunity. (28) Let him who steals steal no longer, but rather let him labor, performing with his own hands what is good, in order that he may have something to share with him who has need. (29) Let no unwholesome word proceed from your mouth, but only such a word as is good for edification according to the need of the moment, that it may give grace to those who hear. (30) And do not grieve the Set-apart Spirit of Elohim, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption.’***

Those of us called at this time to become first-fruits, when we are resurrected at Yahshua’s return, are being trained for rulership. YHVH is calling us out of the world at this time to be trained as kings and priests under Yahshua in His coming kingdom. How are we being trained? We are trained in the ways of Elohim, if we study His Torah teachings and by following the only example that He gave us to emulate, namely Yahshua. We need to become faithful followers of Yahshua and what He taught whilst He was on earth, and in that way we will get to know YHVH our Elohim. It is as YHVH said through the prophet Hosea in Hosea 6: 6, ***‘For I delight in loyalty rather than sacrifice, And in the knowledge of Elohim rather than burnt offerings.’*** Getting to know Yahshua our Messiah, is the same as getting to know YHVH. When asked by Philip one of His disciples in John 14: 8, saying: ***“Master, show us the Father, and it is enough for us.”*** Yahshua said to him in verse 9 (of John 14): ***“Have I been so long with you, and yet you have not come to know Me, Philip? He who has seen Me has seen the Father; how do you say, ‘Show us the Father?’”***

---

<sup>26</sup> We are immersed in Yahshua’s name (meaning the salvation of Yah), the only one in whom there is salvation according to Acts 4: 12 and Matthew 1: 21.

If we obey the word of YHVH, we learn of His ways and if we apply what we learn in our lives, we will become worthy to be promoted to positions of rulership, as we read in Revelation 5: 10, as follows: ***“And Thou hast made them to be a kingdom and priests to our Elohim; and they will reign upon the earth.”*** If we become students of Messiah, we become His modern day disciples, and if we are faithful to our calling as first-fruits, we will be made spirit beings at the first resurrection, when He returns, as we read in Revelation 20: 6, in this way: ***‘Blessed and holy (set-apart) is the one who has a part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of Elohim, and of Messiah and will reign with Him for a thousand years.’*** Those who will be resurrected during the first resurrection will become part of the chosen nation Israel. We are called from the remnant of the lost ten tribes, and once the full number that YHVH wants is reached, then all Israel (including Judah) will be saved, as we are told in Romans 11.

In fact Rav Kepha (Peter) says that those of us who are immersed are living stones, being built up as a spiritual house for a holy priesthood, to offer spiritual sacrifices to Elohim and Messiah. We are built upon the corner or foundation stone which the builders rejected, namely Yahshua. We read according to 1 Peter 2: 9, that we are already considered a royal priesthood, as follows: ***‘But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for Elohim’s own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.’*** It is because we are already kings and priest that we have to live up to our high calling, as we are admonished by Rav Kepha in the rest of this chapter. We read further in verses 21 – 25 (of 1 Peter 2), ***‘For you have been called for this purpose, since Messiah also suffered for you, leaving you an example for you to follow in His steps, (22) WHO COMMITTED NO SIN, NOR WAS ANY DECEIT FOUND IN HIS MOUTH; (23) and while being reviled, He did not revile in return; while suffering, He uttered no threats, but kept entrusting Himself to Him who judges righteously; (24) and He Himself bore our sins in His body on the cross, that we might die to sin and live to righteousness; for by His wounds you were healed. (25) For you were continually straying like sheep, but now you have returned to the Shepherd and Guardian of your souls.’*** If Yahshua committed no sins and the Feast Days of Elohim are commanded assemblies, it means that He kept all these Feast Days during His life on earth. The last part of Revelation 1: 5 and verse 6 confirms as a second witness, that we are already priests unto YHVH, as follows: ***‘To Him who loves us, and released us from our sins by His blood, (6) and He has made us to be a kingdom, priests to His Elohim and Father; to Him be the glory and dominion forever and ever. Amen.’***

Fact remains, we are called at this time, to prepare for rulership, under Messiah, in the coming kingdom of Elohim. We will become the spiritual guides to those people living on during the millennium. We will help others to get to know YHVH and His ways. It is for that very reason that we need to prepare, by practicing and living according to the way of Elohim. In other words, we need to start obeying His teachings in Torah, and learn to apply the teachings in our lives, by doing them. The kingdom of Elohim will be ruled by Yahshua and those who qualify for rulership. The laws applicable in the kingdom of Elohim will be the commandments, statutes and judgments given in His word. We see in Isaiah 66: 23, that the Feast Days of Elohim, will also be kept during the millennium rule of Yahshua, as follows: ***“‘And it shall be from new moon to new moon and from Sabbath to Sabbath, all mankind will come to bow down before Me,” says YHVH.*** It is therefore vitally important that we learn as much as we can about the Feast Days of Elohim, His weekly Sabbath and the other commandments in The Scriptures, if we want to qualify for rulership. We need to be fully aware of the timing of the Feast Days so that we know exactly when to keep them. According to Exodus 13: 6 - 10 we keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread, as a sign that we want to obey the law of YHVH, as follows: ***“For seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, and on the seventh day there shall be a feast to YHVH. (7) Unleavened bread shall be eaten throughout the seven days; and nothing leavened shall be seen among you, nor shall any leaven be seen among you in all your borders. (8) And you shall tell your son on that day, saying, ‘It is because of what YHVH did for me when I came out of Egypt.’ (9) And it shall serve as a sign to you on your hand, and as a reminder on your forehead, that the law of YHVH may be in your mouth; for with a powerful hand YHVH brought you out of Egypt. (10) Therefore, you shall keep this ordinance at its appointed time from year to year.”*** The purpose of the Feast Days of Elohim is given in the final part of Deuteronomy 14: 23, like this: ***“in order that you may learn to fear YHVH your Elohim always.”***

How can we expect to learn to fear YHVH if we do not attend His Set-apart Days? How will we apply the lessons that we learn throughout the year, if we do not observe the weekly Sabbath and annual Feast Days of Elohim? How can we expect to become kings or priests in the kingdom of Elohim, if we do not apply His teachings? What will we teach, if we never kept the Sabbaths (weekly and annual) of Elohim? The question we asked at the beginning, namely: How can you afford to attend the Feast Days of Elohim? Should rather be: How can we afford not to attend the Feast Days of Elohim? Even though YHVH wants all men to be

saved, as may be read in first Timothy 2: 3 & 4<sup>27</sup>; He does not want to save all at this time. We read accordingly in Mark 4: 11 & 12, ***'And He (Yahshua) was saying to them, "To you has been given the mystery of the kingdom of Elohim; but those who are outside get everything in parables, (12) in order that while seeing they may see and not perceive; and while hearing, they may hear and not understand lest they return and be forgiven."*** Yahshua explained about a time during which people from all generations will be judged at the same time in Matthew 12: 41 & 42, saying: ***"The men of Nineveh shall stand up with this generation at the judgment, and shall condemn it because they repented at the preaching of Jonah; and behold something greater than Jonah is here. (42) "The Queen of the South shall rise up with this generation at the judgment and shall condemn it, because she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and behold, something greater than Solomon is here."*** These people from ancient times will respond once they have a genuine opportunity to understand the Scriptures. The reason is that these ancient peoples – sinful as they were – had no knowledge of the true Elohim and His Torah. Messiah only appeared a number of years after them and they did not know Him or His Saving Name. Nevertheless we read in Acts 4: 11 & 12: ***"He (Yahshua) is the stone which was rejected by you, the builders, but which became the very cornerstone (upon which the ecclesia of YHVH is build). (12) And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name under heaven that has been given among men, by which we must be saved."***

YHVH is calling some of us at this time to become first-fruits, as we are told in James 1: 18, as follows: ***'In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.'*** He has blinded the rest of mankind to be resurrected at the second resurrection, during the Great White Throne Judgment. We read accordingly in Isaiah 25: 7 - 8 ***'And on this mountain He will swallow up the covering which is over all peoples, even the veil which is stretched over all nations. (8) He will swallow up death for all time, And YHVH Elohim will wipe tears away from all faces, And He will remove the reproach of His people from all the earth; For YHVH has spoken.'*** When will that veil be destroyed? When will death be swallowed up? This will only happen after the Great White Throne Judgment, as may be read in Revelation 20: 14<sup>28</sup>. The Day of Judgment for all the billions who lived over the past centuries will only come after the Millennial rule of Yahshua Messiah. We see that these people who were blinded in the past will have the veil, which is stretched over them, removed. Make no mistake: If these untold billions of formerly blinded people are merely judged by their works, many of them were thieves, prostitutes, dictators and false prophets will all perish in the lake of fire. They did not ever repent and were not immersed in Yahshua's saving name, as we are taught to do in Acts 2: 38<sup>29</sup>. They did not study the Scriptures to grow in grace and knowledge, as we are taught in 2 Peter 3: 18<sup>30</sup>.

We need to realize that our calling is very special. We should therefore make every effort to ensure that we make it into the kingdom of Elohim, This is our one and only chance – if we do not make it, we will be burnt to become ashes under the feet of the righteous, as may be read in Malachi 4: 1 – 3, as follows: ***"For behold, the day is coming, burning like a furnace; and all the arrogant and every evildoer will be chaff; and the day that is coming will set them ablaze," says YHVH of hosts, "so that it will leave them neither root nor branch." (2) "But for you who fear My name the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings; and you will go forth and skip about like calves from the stall. (3) "And you will tread down the wicked, for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet on the day which I am preparing," says YHVH of hosts."*** Our Nazarene Jewish faith is a way of life. It is our calling and duty to strive persistently to overcome those sins which so beset us, to make it into the kingdom of Elohim. Our righteousness should surpass that of the scribes and the Pharisees (the Jews), if we want to make it into the kingdom of Elohim, as Yahshua said in Matthew 5: 20; and if we want to make them jealous, as we read in Romans 11: 11, as follows: ***'I say then, they (talking about the Jews) did not stumble so as to fall, did they? May it never be! But by their transgression salvation has come to the Gentiles (members of the lost ten tribes and some actual gentiles), to make them jealous.*** The Sabbath and Feast Days should become part of our lives. – since we grow and mature in the faith as we discipline ourselves to obey YHVH our Elohim and meet with like-minded believers, in a place where he places His name. As mentioned earlier (in Exodus 31: 13), we are sanctified, by keeping the Sabbaths of Elohim.

Now that we know the importance of attending the Feast Days of Elohim, let me inform you how you can afford to attend the Feast Days. The seven Feast Days of Elohim are scattered throughout the year in

<sup>27</sup> First Timothy 2: 3 & 4: ***'This is good and acceptable in the sight of Elohim our Savior, who desires all men to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.'***

<sup>28</sup> Revelation 20: 14: ***'And death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire.'***

<sup>29</sup> Acts 2: 38: ***'And Peter said to them, "Repent, and let each one of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit,"'***

<sup>30</sup> 2 Peter 3: 18: ***'but grow in the grace and knowledge of our Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah. To Him be the glory, both now and to the day of eternity. Amein.'***



accordance with the Hebrew calendar and are commanded assemblies. We do not have a choice whether we should attend, or not: In obedience to YHVH and His Torah, we should stop making excuses and start planning to attend all the Set-apart Days of Elohim in future. We turn to Deuteronomy 14: 22 – 26 to find the answer to financing the Feast Days of Elohim, as follows: ***“You shall surely tithe all the produce from what you sow, which comes out of the field every year. (23) And you shall eat in the presence of YHVH your Elohim, at the place where He chooses to establish His name, the tithe of your grain, your wine, your oil, and the first-born of your herd and your flock, in order that you may learn to fear YHVH your Elohim always. (24) And if the distance is so great for you that you are not able to bring the tithe, since the place where YHVH your Elohim chooses to set His name is too far away from you when YHVH your Elohim blesses you, (25) then you shall exchange it for money, and bind the money in your hand and go to the place which YHVH your Elohim chooses. (26) And you may spend the money for whatever your heart desires, for oxen, or sheep, or wine, or strong drink, or whatever your heart desires; and there you shall eat in the presence of YHVH your Elohim and rejoice, you and your household.”*** This is talking about a special tithe required to be saved by each individual believer for the purpose of keeping the Feasts. Notice that other than with some overzealous Christians, we are even allowed to have a few alcoholic beverages during the Feast - But should use it moderately.

Elohim's purpose remains; He is not trying to save everyone during this age; If He was, they would not all be saved. He is only calling out the First Fruits to rule with Yahshua during the Millennium and onto eternity. The vast majority of blinded individuals will be brought back to life during the Great White Throne Judgment. Then He will call them to spiritual understanding and will fill those who are willing with His Set-apart Spirit. He will grant them salvation in His kingdom. Those not willing will be burnt to ashes, with the wicked ones who sinned willfully after being called, during this age. We read in Hebrews 10: 26 & 27, confirming that there is no second chance, as follows; ***‘For if we go on sinning willfully after receiving the knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, (27) but a certain terrifying expectation of judgment, and the fury of a fire which will consume the adversaries.’*** Enough said!

## **Chapter 23: How important is the name of YHVH to us?**

This truth about the Name of YHVH our Elohim is as difficult for some people to accept as is the fact that the true Sabbath starts at sunset on Friday evening and lasts until sunset on Saturday evening. The reason why people have great difficulty in accepting these two scripturally proven tenets of our faith, is due to more than 2,500 years of ingrained tradition that has misled them.

The problem with the name of YHVH started during the Babylonian captivity, where the Priests of Judah decided to change the vowel-pointing(s) of the name of the Almighty, with good reason, so that it is now pronounced as 'Adonai'. This step was primarily taken to prevent the gentile nations to blaspheme the name of YHVH the Elohim of Israel. The transliterated meaning of the Hebrew word Adonai, is Master or Lord (normally written in lower case letters) and is accordingly translated as Lord in the English Bible. Prior to the Babylonian captivity, the Sacred Name of our Heavenly Father was freely used in worship, but the religious leaders in Judah have in addition to the above reason, adopted the Babylonian tradition, whereby the names of their deities were said to be in-effable (un-pronounceable). For this reason the name of the Almighty could only be used during Atonement and only by the High Priest. The rest of the believers in Israel did not have permission to use the name at all. This was initially done, to put an end to the pagan nations blaspheming the name of YHVH, but because of the Babylonian influence the religious leaders went too far, and have as a result misinformed the nation of Judah as well as other true believers.

Since we know that the word of Elohim is truth, let us determine the exact meaning of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Commandment by reading Exodus 20: 7, as follows: ***"You shall not take the name of YHVH your Elohim in vain, for YHVH will not leave him unpunished who takes His name in vain."*** The Hebrew word for vain is 'shavah', meaning to use lightly, destroy or to bring to nothing, by hiding (or refusing to use), and purposely misspelling His name. By using the name Adonai and therefore misspelling Elohim's name, the Priests in Israel were doing exactly what they intended not to do, i.e. breaking the 3<sup>rd</sup> Commandment. To make matters worse, we are warned not to cause fellow believers to forget the name of YHVH in Jeremiah 23: 26 – 27, like this: ***"How long? Is there anything in the hearts of the prophets who prophesy falsehood, even these prophets of the deception of their own heart, (27) who intend to make My people forget My name by their dreams which they relate to one another, just as their fathers forgot My name because of Baal?"*** Even though the meaning of the word Adonai is not totally off the mark, it is only a title, similar to G-d (a word which we will discuss later). However, despite of the fact that many are trying to deny the name of the Almighty, the Jewish Encyclopedia admits that the original pronunciation of the Tetragrammaton YHVH must have been Yahweh (and not Jehovah).

YHVH does not want people to use His Set-apart Name if they refuse to worship Him in truth. We read in Jeremiah 44 how YHVH dealt with the people of Judah who moved back to Egypt, and as a result their wives were burning sacrifices to other gods. When Jeremiah warned these people about this, they replied in Jeremiah 44: 16 & 17, ***"As for the message that you have spoken to us in the name of YHVH, we are not going to listen to you! (17) But rather we will certainly carry out every word that has proceeded from our mouths, by burning sacrifices to the queen of heaven and pouring out libations to her, just as we ourselves, our forefathers, our kings and our princes did in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem; for then we had plenty of food, and were well off, and saw no misfortune."*** These people of Judah were plainly rebellious and did not listen to Jeremiah's message. We see what YHVH tells Jeremiah to tell these rebellious people in verse 26 of Jeremiah 44, as follows: ***"Nevertheless hear the word of YHVH, all Judah who are living in the land of Egypt, 'Behold, I have sworn by My great name,' says YHVH, 'never shall My name be invoked again by the mouth of any man of Judah in all the land of Egypt, saying, "As YHVH Elohim lives." By showing us that apostate worshipers are not allowed to use His Name, He is also showing us that only in His Name can we worship Him in truth.***

Now if you think for one moment that Churchianity is totally blameless, in the effort to conceal the name of YHVH, you are mistaken. In the preface of a number of modern translations of the Christian Bible, as is the case with the New American Standard Bible, the Editorial Board THE LOCKMAN FOUNDATION, tells the reader that the word 'G-d' is translated from the Hebrew word Elohim and the word 'LORD' is translated from the word YHVH. As mentioned before, they also state that 'Lord' is translated from the word Adonai. So we see even though the name of YHVH is known, it is put out of sight of those people who rarely read the preface and principles of translation, given in front of most Bibles. The reason why I prefer to use the 'New American Standard Bible', is because it is a fairly accurate translation and no one can say that I preach doctrines from a 'Bible' specifically written for and by Nazarene Israelites. Most of my audience is even now new in the faith and because they felt betrayed by their previous affiliations to religion, some are initially wary about versions of the Scriptures written by Nazarene/Messianic groups. I do have copies of 'The Scriptures' published by the Institute for Scripture Research in South Africa as well as 'The restoration Scriptures True Name Edition' published by Rabbi Moshe Koniuchowsky and use them as well as other versions as reference

material, since most versions of the Scriptures contain mistranslations, as well as the private agendas of their publishers. The difference between these purposely written Scriptures, and the Bible that I prefer, is that I know there are errors in the NASB version, but how many of us are aware of the private agendas of the authors of Scriptures specifically written for assemblies and groups using the true names.

I have found that even amongst those groups who keep the Sabbath, the Set-apart Days of Elohim, and the kosher laws expounded in Leviticus 11, there are some who refuse to use the Set-apart names. A minister of one such group (with which my wife and I were associated until late in the nineties), was asked by a previous member, what the name Elijah means<sup>31</sup>. The minister who refuses to use the Set-apart names at all cost, replied: ***'It means, my G-d, is my G-d.'*** However, we know that the word G-d is a title and not a name. In addition we see that the 11<sup>th</sup> edition of the Encyclopedia Britannica testifies to the pagan origin of the term 'G-d', as follows: ***'GOD — the common Teutonic word for a personal object of religious worship...applied to all those superhuman beings of the heathen (pagan) mythologies. The word "god" on the conversion of the Teutonic races to Christianity was adopted as the name of the Supreme Being.'***

But, to understand the true meaning of the name Elijah we need to look for the answer in the Scriptures. We turn to the first book of Kings 16, where we read from verse 29, that when Ahab became king over Israel, he married Jezebel, the daughter of the Ethbaal king of the Sidonians, Ahab and his wife Jezebel caused Israel to sin more than before. Jezebel had all the prophets of Elohim killed and chose her own priests and prophets to serve Baal. YHVH saw the Idolatry in Israel and sent His prophet Elijah to king Ahab with the message recorded in 1 Kings 17: 1, as follows: ***'Now Elijah the Tishbite, who was of the settlers of Gilead, said to Ahab, "As YHVH, the Elohim of Israel lives, before whom I stand, surely there shall be neither dew nor rain these years, except by my word."*** From that time on there were no more rain: The wells began to dry up and the crops failed; soon food became scarce and the nation of Israel was feeling Elohim's punishment.

Elijah had to trust Elohim for his food. YHVH sent him to stay with a certain widow and her son. Upon arrival, the widow was making a fire to cook the last meal for her and her son. Elijah asked the widow to bring him water to drink and bread to eat. ***'But she said (in 1 Kings 17: 12), "As YHVH your Elohim lives, I have no bread, only a handful of flour in the bowl and a little oil in a jar; and behold, I am gathering a few sticks that I may go in and prepare for me and my son, that we may eat it and die."*** Elijah answered in verse 13 & 14, saying to her: ***"Do not fear; go, do as you have said, but make me a little bread cake from it first, and bring it out to me, and afterward you may make one for yourself and for your son, (14) For thus says YHVH Elohim of Israel, 'The bowl of flour shall not be exhausted, nor shall the jar of oil be empty, until the day that YHVH sends rain on the face of the earth."*** The widow trusted Elohim and did as Elijah asked and her flour and oil lasted three years longer, until the end of the drought. Then Elijah returned to Ahab to tell him that the drought was over and that Elohim was going to send rain, but He first wanted king Ahab to know that YHVH is the true Elohim.

Elijah initially feared that Ahab would kill him when he saw him again, but we read in 1 Kings 18: 18 & 19 when Elijah saw Ahab, ***'(And) he said, "I have not troubled Israel, but you and your father's house have, because you have forsaken the commandments of YHVH, and have followed the Baals. (19) Now then send and gather to me all Israel at Mount Carmel, together with 450 prophets of Baal and 400 prophets of the Asherah, who eat at Jezebel's table."*** Later when the prophets of Elohim and those of Baal stood in the sight of Israel, Elijah stepped forward and challenged Ahab and all the people, in the second part of 1 Kings 18: 21, saying: ***"How long will you hesitate between two opinions? If YHVH is Elohim, follow Him; but if Baal, follow him." But the people did not answer him a word.'*** Elijah asked the people to bring two bullocks to offer for a sacrifice; one he gave to the prophets of Baal, and the other he kept to offer to YHVH the true Elohim. Each side had to prepare an altar and sacrifice the animal, but they were not allowed to set fire to it. The god who answered by fire to consume the sacrifice would be known as the only true Elohim.

The prophets of Baal cried out to their pagan god, from early in the morning until evening, but there was no answer. We see how Elijah mocked the people calling for Baal in 1 Kings 18: 27, saying: ***"Call out with a loud voice, for he is a god; either he is occupied or gone aside, or is on a journey, or perhaps he is asleep and needs to be awakened."*** They therefore cried with a loud voice and cut themselves according to their custom with swords and lances until blood gushed out of them. But all their efforts were in vain. That evening when it was time for the evening sacrifice, Elijah began to prepare his sacrifice to Elohim. He prepared the altar, carefully placing 12 stones, one for each tribe of Israel. Then he put the animal on the wood which he put on the altar. He next dug a trench around the altar and had four barrels of water poured

---

<sup>31</sup> As this is purely an example and since we are not interested in teaching those not concerned with truth, the names of these parties will remain anonymous.

over the animal and the wood. He poured water over the altar three more times, until the whole altar and sacrifice were soaked. Elijah prayed to YHVH and we see in 1 Kings 18: 38 that He responded, as follows: ***'Then the fire of YHVH fell, and consumed the burnt offering and the wood and the stones and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench.'*** When the people saw it, they fell on their faces, saying (in verse 39): ***'YHVH, He is Elohim; YHVH, He is Elohim.'*** There you have it; that is the true meaning of the name of Elijah (transliterated as Eliyahu in Hebrew, meaning Yahweh is Elohim). We know from the rest of the account in the first book of Kings, that Elijah had the prophets of Baal killed and as YHVH promised it soon began to rain, but king Ahab remained evil.

We continue in Romans 10: 12 – 14, reading in verse (12) ***'For there is no distinction between Jew and Greek; for the same Master is Master of all, abounding in riches for all who call upon Him; (13) for "WHOEVER WILL CALL UPON THE NAME OF YHVH, WILL BE SAVED."*** (quoted from Joel 2: 32) (14) ***How then shall they call upon Him in whom they have not believed? And how shall they believe in Him whom they have not heard? And how shall they hear without a preacher?'*** How will those who do not know or believe in the Name of YHVH call upon His name – not realizing that His Name is not G-d? Will He overlook their ignorance? We who honor the name of YHVH our Elohim are presently teaching believers about the true names of YHVH and Yahshua. YHVH is at this time calling out those who as first-fruits at Yahshua's return will be changed from physical beings to become spiritual kings and priests under Yahshua. However, I believe that He is also calling out some at this time, to perform the role of Elijah and teach believers that YHVH is our Elohim, before the return of Yahshua.

We are commissioned to preach about the coming kingdom of Elohim, but also to tell those whom YHVH calls, about the true Set-apart names. YHVH is at this time calling out believers to follow Him and His ways. However, He is not only calling believers from the Israelite nations only. We read accordingly in Isaiah 56: 6 & 7, like this: ***"Also the foreigners who join themselves to YHVH, to minister to Him, and to love the name of YHVH, to be His servants, everyone who keeps from profaning the Sabbath, and holds fast My covenant; (7) Even those I will bring to My holy mountain, and make them joyful in My house of prayer. Their burnt offerings and sacrifices will be acceptable on My altar; for My house will be called a house of prayer for all people."*** Yes, our Father is even calling people from South Africa at the present time, as we read in Zephaniah 3: 9 - 13, as follows: ***"For then I will give to the peoples purified lips, that all of them may call on the name of YHVH, to serve Him shoulder to shoulder. (10) From beyond the rivers of Ethiopia My worshippers, My dispersed ones, will bring My offerings. (11) In that day you will feel no shame because of all your deeds by which you have rebelled against Me; for then I will remove from your midst your proud, exulting ones, and you will never again be haughty on My holy mountain. (12) But I will leave among you a humble and lowly people, and they will take refuge in the name of YHVH. (13) The remnant of Israel will do no wrong and tell no lies, nor will a deceitful tongue be found in their mouths; for they shall feed and lie down with no one to make them tremble."***

It is most important for us to know that we are safe when we call on the name of YHVH, as we read in Proverbs 18: 10: ***'The name of YHVH is a strong tower; the righteous runs into it and is safe.'*** A second witness is found in Isaiah 12: 2 - 4, as follows: ***"Behold, Elohim is my salvation, I will trust and not be afraid; for YHVH Elohim is my strength and my song, and He has become my salvation." (3) 'Therefore you will joyously draw water from the springs of salvation. (4) And in that day you will say, "Give thanks to YHVH, call on His name. Make known His deeds among His peoples; Make them remember that His name is exalted."*** The coming tribulation is to last seven years, but we have Yahshua's word that it will be cut short for the elect's sake (as per Matthew 24: 22). However, we have the assurance that the name of YHVH will be our protection, as we read in Joel 2: 32, in this way: ***"And it will come about that whoever calls on the name of YHVH will be delivered; for on Mount Zion and in Jerusalem there will be those who escape, as YHVH has said, even among the survivors whom YHVH calls."***

It will be beneficial for us to know YHVH and seek Him, if we want to live, as we are assured in Amos 5: 6 – 8, where we read: ***"Seek YHVH that you may live, lest He break forth like a fire, O house of Joseph, and it consume with none to quench it for Bethel, (7) For those who turn justice into wormwood and cast righteousness down to the earth." (8) He who made the Pleiades and Orion and changes deep darkness into morning, Who also darkens day into night, Who calls for the waters of the sea and pours them out on the surface of the earth, YHVH is His name.'*** We conclude by reading a few more Scriptures showing how important the name of YHVH is to us, as follows:

Psalms 8: 9, ***'O YHVH, our Master, How majestic is Thy name in all the earth!'***

Psalms 9: 2 & 10, ***'I will be glad and exult in Thee; I will sing praise to Thy name, O Most High. (10) And those who know Thy name will put their trust in Thee; for Thou, O YHVH, hast not forsaken those who seek Thee.'***

Psalm 22: 22, ***“I will tell of Thy name to my brethren; in the midst of the assembly I will praise Thee.”***

Psalm 45: 17, ***‘I will cause Thy name to be remembered in all generations; therefore the peoples will give Thee thanks forever and ever.’***

Psalm 74: 10 & 18, ***‘How long, O Elohim, will the adversary revile, And the enemy spurn Thy name forever? (18) Remember this, O YHVH, that the enemy has reviled; and a foolish people has spurned Thy name.’***

Psalm 116: 13 & 17, ***‘I shall lift up the cup of salvation, and call upon the name of YHVH. (17) To Thee I shall offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving, and call upon the name of YHVH.’***

Micah 4: 5, ***‘Though all the peoples walk each in the name of his god, as for us, we will walk in the name of YHVH our Elohim forever and ever.’***

Micah 5: 4, ***‘And He will arise and shepherd His flock in the strength of YHVH, in the majesty of the name of YHVH His Elohim. And they will remain, because at that time He will be great to the ends of the earth.’***

Yahshua concluded His prayer in John 17: 26, saying: ***“and I have made Thy name known to them, and will make it known; that the love wherewith Thou didst love Me may be in them, and I in them.”***

Yahshua also said to someone in Jerusalem, as per Luke 13: 35, ***“Behold, your house is left to you desolate; and I say to you, you shall not see Me until the time comes when you say, ‘BLESSED IS HE WHO COMES IN THE NAME OF YHVH!’”***

Does it matter what we call our heavenly Father? Is any name acceptable to Him, because He knows our hearts? I do not think so. In the words of Elijah quoted earlier: ***“How long will you hesitate between two opinions? If YHVH is Elohim, follow Him; but if Baal, follow him.”*** In addition we read in Exodus 23: 13, ***“Now concerning everything which I have said to you, be on your guard; and do not mention the name of other gods, nor let them be heard from your mouth.”*** However make sure that if and when you use the name of YHVH, you truly honor His Name! Baruch HaShem YHVH!

## **Chapter 24: What is the purpose of the Torah?**

Most of us are fully aware of the saving work that YHVH has done for us through Yahshua. We also know that the main reason for Yahshua's death was to reconcile us to the Father, as we read in 2 Corinthians 5: 18 & 19, ***'Now all these things are from Elohim, who reconciled us to Himself through Messiah, and gave us the ministry of reconciliation, (19) namely, that Elohim was in Messiah reconciling the world to Himself, not counting their trespasses against them, and He has committed to us the word of reconciliation. (20) Therefore, we are ambassadors for Messiah, as though Elohim were entreating through us; we beg you on behalf of Messiah, be reconciled to Elohim. (21) He made Him who knew no sin to be sin on our behalf, that we might become the righteousness of Elohim in Him.'*** Yahshua died for the sins of the world, including ours, but is that the only thing that He has done for us? The question is, does being saved mean only one thing?

We see that after having being patient with Israel for many years, YHVH eventually divorced her, as is recorded for us in Jeremiah 3: 8, as follows: ***"And I saw that for all the adulteries of faithless Israel, I had sent her away and given her a writ of divorce, yet treacherous sister Judah did not fear; but she went and was a harlot also."*** We see here that even though YHVH divorced Israel (the northern kingdom) for her adulteries, He did not divorce Judah. However, the fact that YHVH did not divorce Judah for doing exactly as her sister nation Israel did, should not cause us to become jealous of Judah, as so many do. We need to be aware of the wrong spirit in us, which could result in us becoming anti-Semitic. There are groups today, who insist that because of Judah's unbelief, they became spiritual Israel, and may decide how and when to serve YHVH our Elohim. However, this is exactly what we are warned about in Malachi 2. The first two verses of Malachi 2, has been misunderstood by many to be about not using false names and titles like *'the Lord'* and *'G-d'*. However, it has to do with honoring the name of YHVH, rather than using His name. We read in Exodus 20: 7, ***"You shall not take the name of YHVH your Elohim in vain, for YHVH your Elohim will not leave him unpunished who takes His name in vain."*** The Hebrew word for vain is *'shavah'*, meaning to bring to nothing. It does however not mean that we are not allowed to use the name of YHVH at all – in fact it means just the opposite, since misspelling the name does in fact bring it to nothing.

Nevertheless, when we use the name of YHVH we better be sure that we honor it: We honor the name of YHVH, by not twisting The Scriptures to fit the doctrines of men, such as Xmas and Easter, or by claiming that praying over any food in His name, renders such food clean. This is exactly what some claim the first book of Timothy is saying in Chapter 4: 4, to justify their eating of unclean food, in this way: ***'For everything created by Elohim is good, and nothing is to be rejected, if it is received with gratitude;'*** Such people usually stop quoting the Scriptures at verse 4. However, notice the punctuation mark at the end of verse 4 shows that the sentence is incomplete and that we need to read the next verse as well, to fully understand the significance of this passage of The Scriptures. We continue accordingly in verse 5 of first Timothy 4, as follows: ***'for it is sanctified by means of the word of Elohim and prayer.'*** The question is: What is sanctified or set-apart as food, by the word of Elohim? We know that YHVH has set-apart food considered clean for human consumption in both Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14. So unless the food that we are receiving with prayer and gratitude is clean according these Scriptures, we may pray over it as much as we like, it will not become clean and by eating such unclean food even after praying for it to become clean, will be dishonoring the name of YHVH. Similarly will praying in the name of YHVH at a Xmas or Easter service as well as a feast not ordained YHVH, be dishonoring His name.

Everything that our Father YHVH does, He does with a purpose. YHVH is our creator and as we read in the book of Malachi, He decides to whom He shows favor and to whom not. We read in Malachi 1: 2 – 4, ***"I have loved you," says YHVH. But you say "How hast Thou loved us?" "Was not Esau Jacob's brother?" declares YHVH. "Yet I have loved Jacob; (3) but I have hated Esau, and I have made his mountains a desolation, and appointed his inheritance for the jackals of the wilderness." (4) Though Edom says, "We have been beaten down, but we will return and build up the ruins"; thus says YHVH of hosts, "They may build, but I will tear down; and men will call them the wicked territory, and the people toward whom YHVH is indignant forever."*** The same thought is resumed in Malachi 2, where reading from verses 2 to 17 we can deduce that YHVH has chosen the nation of Judah, to be the defender of the covenant that He made with Levi, concerning His Feast Days. We read in verse 10 of Malachi 2: ***"Do we not all have one father? Has not one Elohim created us? Why do we deal treacherously each against his brother so as to profane the covenant of our fathers?"***

The note alongside this verse in the New American Standard Bible refers us to Isaiah 63: 16, which states: ***'For Thou art our Father though Abraham does not know us, And Israel does not recognize us. Thou, O YHVH, art our Father, Our Redeemer from of old is Thy name.'*** This undoubtedly has to do with the way we are dealing with Judah (and the other way round). In verse 11 of Malachi 2, YHVH tells us through

Malachi that Judah, like her sister Israel, has dealt treacherously towards Him. In verse 12 & 13 of Malachi 2, we read: ***“As for the man who does this, may YHVH cut off from the tents of Jacob everyone who awakes and answers, or who presents an offering to YHVH of hosts. (13) And this is another thing you do: you cover the altar of YHVH with tears, with weeping and with groaning, because He no longer regards the offering or accepts it with favor from your hand.”*** We see here, YHVH saying that everyone who awakes and answers (those who wake up to the truth and who answer His call to become the first fruits<sup>32</sup>), or who presents an offering to YHVH of hosts (those keeping His Set-apart Days), deals treacherously against his brother, shall be cut off from the tents of Jacob (the people of YHVH). Malachi likens it to a man who has dealt treacherously with the wife of his youth. In verse 16 YHVH tells us that He hates divorce and him who covers his garment with wrong. We read before that YHVH divorced Israel because of all her adulteries, but did not divorce Judah for doing the same.

Continuing in verse 17 of Malachi 2, we read: ***“You have wearied YHVH with your words. Yet you say, “How have we wearied Him?” In that you say, “Everyone who does evil is good in the sight of YHVH, and He delights in them,” or “Where is the Elohim of justice?”*** What is the real meaning of this? Reading between the lines, we may conclude that it has to do with believers who assume that even though the Scriptures affirm Judah to be the custodians of among others, the Set-apart Days of Elohim, they believe that have now been given this function, because of the unbelief of the Jews. They are those who refuse to accept the Hebrew calendar, because Judah has also profaned the sanctuary of Elohim. As a result they have decided to determine the ‘correct’ timing for their feasts (and in some cases when the Sabbath starts) from so-called guidelines found in the Scriptures rather than to follow the calculated calendar that the Jews observe. Malachi 2 further declares that by so doing, these called out believers are questioning Elohim’s judgment, inferring that He delights in those who do evil in His sight. Malachi argues that since YHVH is our creator, He like a master potter has the right to decide our destiny. YHVH accordingly states in verse 9 of Malachi 2: ***“So I also have made you despised and abased before all the people, just as you are not keeping My ways, but are showing partiality in the instruction.”*** The question that we need to answer is: How long are we going to deal treacherously with brother Judah? When we learn to obey the word of Elohim, we will also stop corrupting Elohim’s covenant with Levi. The Scriptures contain all the information we require for existing peacefully with our neighbor and respond to YHVH in an acceptable way. All we need to do is follow His teachings, and not that of men.

Let’s get back to the fact that YHVH divorced Israel. The problem is: although our past sins have been forgiven, because of the law of divorce and remarriage, we are still divorced from YHVH. We read accordingly the Scriptures what the law says concerning divorce and remarriage<sup>33</sup>, in Deuteronomy 24: 1 – 4: (1) ***“When a man takes a wife, and marries her, and it happens that she find no favor in his eyes because he has found some indecency in her, and he writes her a certificate of divorce and puts it in her hand and sends her out from his house, (2) and she leaves his house and goes and becomes another man’s wife, (3) and if the latter husband turns against her and writes her a certificate of divorce and puts it in her hand and sends her out of his house, or if the latter husband dies who took her to be his wife, (4) then her former husband who sent her away is not allowed to take her again to be his wife, since she has been defiled; for that is an abomination before YHVH, and you shall not bring sin on the land which YHVH your Elohim gives you as an inheritance.”*** Once Israel was divorced from YHVH, He dispersed us throughout the nations; eventually sifting our forefathers throughout the whole of the world. When Yahshua walked the earth, the northern kingdom (Ephraim) had been in dispersion for many years, inter-mixing with the nations and thus becoming a multitude of nations. It is important to understand this, to understand the significance of Yahshua’s work on the execution stake in relation to our betrothal to Him.

Rav Shaul wrote in Romans 6: 23, ***“For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of Elohim is eternal life in Yahshua Messiah our Master.”*** He continued in Romans 7: 1 – 4 as follows: (1) ***“Or do you not know, brethren (for I am speaking to those who know the law), that the law has jurisdiction over a person as long as he lives? (2) For the married woman is bound by law to her husband while he is living; but if her husband dies, she is released from the law concerning the husband. (3) So then if, while her husband is living, she is joined to another man, she shall be called an adulteress; but if her husband dies, she is free from the law, so that she is not an adulteress, though she is joined to another man. (4) Therefore, my brethren, you also were made to die to the law through the body of Messiah, that you might be joined to another, to Him who was raised from the dead, that we might bear fruit for Elohim.”*** Rav Shaul was not saying that we are dead to Torah, but that the penalty which the

<sup>32</sup> In James 1: 18 we read that: ***“In the exercise of His (Elohim’s) will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.”***

<sup>33</sup> This is not talking about people who divorced before they were called into the truth. YHVH forgave your passed mistakes. But realize, that if you remarried after you were called, that it is till death do you part.

law (of divorce and remarriage) requires, has been fulfilled. Messiah died, and since we died in Him, when we were immersed in water in His name, He is free to remarry us again. This is why His final words on the execution stake were as recorded in John 19: 30, in this way: ***"It is finished"*** – 'Kallah' in Hebrew, which also means ***"My Bride"*** – meaning now I am free to remarry My Bride.

Now this could not apply to the Christian Church as such, unless they were descended from the Israel whom YHVH divorced - Those who are presently intermixed among the nations, impossible to be numbered. However, with this YHVH also paved the way for those who are not bloodline Israelites, to be grafted into the olive tree, as explained in Romans 11. So those called from the house of Israel, as well as genuine Gentiles become part of the Commonwealth of Israel and are no longer considered gentiles, but the Israel of Elohim. Or as we read in 1 Peter 2: 9, as follows: ***'But you are A CHOSEN RACE, A royal PRIESTHOOD. A HOLY NATION, A PEOPLE FOR ELOHIM'S OWN POSSESSION, that you may proclaim the excellencies of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.'***

Now, the purpose of the Torah is as explained in Romans 7: 9 – 13 and 8: 1 & 2, like this: ***"And I was once alive apart from the Law; but when the commandment came, sin became alive, and I died; (10) and this commandment, which was to result in life, proved to result in death for me; (11) for sin, taking opportunity through the commandment, deceived me, and through it killed me. (12) So then, the Law is holy, and the commandment is holy and righteous and good. (13) Therefore did that which is good become a cause of death for me? May it never be! Rather it was sin, in order that it might be shown to be sin by effecting my death through that which is good, that through the commandment sin might become utterly sinful. (1) There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Messiah Yahshua. (2) For the law of the Spirit of life in Messiah Yahshua has set you free from the law of sin and of death. "***

The written Torah work in this way: It is by studying, understanding and walking according to Torah, that the sin hidden in the inner man, is brought to the surface and kills us. We must die to once again be remarried to Elohim. However, we are presently still waiting to be resurrected. It was for this reason that Rav Kepha (Peter) said in 1 Peter 4: 12 – 14, ***'Beloved, do not be surprised at the fiery ordeal among you, which comes upon you for your testing, as though some strange thing were happening to you; (13) but to the degree that you share the sufferings of Messiah, keep on rejoicing; so that also at the revelation of His glory, you may rejoice with exultation.(14) If you are reviled for the name of Messiah, you are blessed because the Spirit of glory and of Elohim rests upon you.'*** Rav Kepha was not only speaking of the persecution one would face from the world, but also from Satan and the self. This is why we have to overcome the world, Satan and the self, before we will make it into the kingdom of Elohim.

It is also for this reason that the writings of Rav Shaul are so misunderstood. His writings seem to contradict the rest of The Scriptures and even at times with some of his own letters. It requires understanding Torah as well as the Set-apart Spirit to understand what he is saying. He is not trying to do away with Torah or belittling it, but stressing that it is essential in the process of becoming complete in Messiah, as explained in the underlined words in Romans 8: 3 & 4, as follows: (3) ***For what the Law could not do, weak as it was through the flesh, Elohim did: sending His own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and as an offering for sin, He condemned sin in the flesh,*** (4) ***in order that the requirement of the law might be fulfilled in us, who do not walk according to the flesh, but according to the Spirit."*** This brings deeper understanding of Yahshua's words in Matthew 16: 24 & 25, like this: ***"If anyone wishes to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me. (25) For whoever wishes to save his life shall lose it; but whoever loses his life for My sake shall find it. "***



## Chapter 25: What is the significance of the Sabbatical and Jubilee years?

The number seven in Judaism is a symbolic division of time, and is sacred to Elohim. The creation week consisted of seven days, ending in the weekly Sabbath. The Feast of Weeks or Shavuot is so called because it occurs seven weeks after the First Day of Unleavened Bread, the fiftieth day being Pentecost. These days are parallel to the Sabbatical and Jubilee years, transliterated as '*shemittah*' and '*yobel*' in Hebrew. YHWH is dealing with humanity over a 7000-year period. Since Adam and Eve, induced by the lies and temptation of Satan, sinned, they were expelled from the Garden of Eden, where they were destined to live forever. For that reason all have sinned and fall short of the glory of Elohim; causing death to spread to all humankind through sin<sup>34</sup>. YHWH has allowed all of mankind to be led into sin by Satan, thus allowing us to see for ourselves where sin leads us.

During the first 6000 years after our original parents were banished from the Garden of Eden, YHWH has allowed humanity to experiment with different forms of government, culture, education and religion. In fact He is allowing us to learn that by living life free of His leadership only leads to failure. We are very close to the end of the 6000 years and because there are both good and evil in the world today, some have been living in a fool's paradise thinking that things cannot go better. However, times have changed and even the well to do is beginning to feel the pinch. I believe that Jacob's trouble has already started, and we are soon going to see troubles that we have never seen before, as we read in Matthew 24: 21, in this way: ***"for then there will be a great tribulation, such as has not occurred since the beginning of the world until now, nor ever shall."*** We are a few minutes from mid-night, when the bridegroom Yahshua is about to return for His bride. However, before He returns we are in for a very bumpy ride. The great tribulation will precede His return to come and rule the world from Jerusalem for a thousand years. The seven thousandth year, being the millennium, the Great Sabbath of the YHWH our Elohim.

From the Torah portions that we studied recently, we learnt that after wandering in the wilderness for forty years, Israel was ready to cross over the Jordan River. Moses told the Israelites in Deuteronomy 7, that YHWH will deliver them from the wicked people living in the land, and that the Israelites should utterly destroy these peoples before them, and not make a covenant with them at all. The Israelites were also not to intermarry with these nations, instead they were to smash down the altars and sacred pillars of these people. YHWH wanted the Israelites to utterly destroy these nations before them. However, we know that Israel did not do as YHWH commanded them and because of their disobedience their punishment were to eventually become slaves to these nations. The fact is that Israel did not believe that YHWH would allow them to be taken captive by foreign powers.

We see that the northern ten tribes were taken captive first during the years 718 – 721 BCE and remained captive until the present day. The southern two tribes, consisting of Judah and Benjamin, as well as the priests and Levites among them, were taken captive in the year 586 BCE. Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon attacked Jerusalem, breaking down its walls, destroying the city and the Temple that Solomon built. The Babylonians then took the nation of Judah captive to Babylon, where they remained for 70 years. However, the Babylonians did not try to take away the identity of the Jews. They retained their language, culture and Laws. After 70 years, the king of Persia, named Cyrus, allowed them to return to their homeland, to rebuild the Temple. The Israelites were removed from the Promised Land because of their refusal to obey YHWH and His Torah, and specifically the land Sabbath. We read accordingly in 2 Chronicles 36: 20 & 21, as follows: ***'And those who had escaped from the sword he carried away to Babylon; and they were servants to him and to his sons until the rule of the kingdom of Persia, (21) to fulfill the word of YHWH by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land had enjoyed its Sabbaths. All the days of its desolation it kept Sabbath until seventy years were complete.'*** Whilst Judah was captive in Babylon the Promised Land lay idle in order to make up for the 70 cycles of sabbatical years that they neglected to keep. Jeremiah prophesied that YHWH will let the nation return from Babylon after 70 years, in Jeremiah 29: 10, saying: ***'When seventy years have been completed for Babylon, I will visit you and fulfill My good word to you, to bring you back to this place.'***

Our Father YHWH never changes His mind, as we read in Malachi 3: 6, like this: ***"For I, YHWH, do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob, are not consumed."*** The first time the concept of the Sabbatical year is mentioned is in Exodus 21, where mention is made of the release of a Hebrew slave in the seventh year, after serving his master for six years. We read in Exodus 23: 10 – 12 about the Land Sabbath for the first time. It is therefore clear that the Land Sabbath was part and parcel of the covenant that YHWH established with Moses in Exodus 24. Both the Land Sabbath and the Jubilee, start on the Day of Atonement: The Day of Atonement falls on the tenth day of the seventh month. The land had to lay fallow on every

---

<sup>34</sup> As we read in the first part of Romans 6: 23, ***'For the wages of sin is death.'***

seventh year, as well as on the fiftieth year. Therefore both the 49<sup>th</sup> and 50<sup>th</sup> years were years during which the land had to lay fallow. We have seen in the final few chapters of Numbers that YHVH told Moses that women may inherit their father's land; they had to marry one of the tribe of her father, so that the sons of Israel each may possess the inheritance of his fathers. This prevented the transfer of the inheritance of one tribe to another. So the land would always remain the property of the proper tribe when it is released to its original family during the Jubilee. The year of the Jubilee, also known as the year of liberty, will also be kept during the millennium rule of Yahshua our Messiah, as we read in Ezekiel 46: 17, like this: ***"But if he gives a gift from his inheritance to one of his servants, it shall be his until the year of liberty; then it shall return to the prince. His inheritance shall be only his sons'; it shall belong to them."***

We read about the command regarding the Land Sabbath and the Jubilee in Leviticus 25: 1 – 13 as follows: ***'YHVH then spoke to Moses at Mount Sinai, saying, (2) "Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, "When you come into the land which I shall give you, then the land shall have a Sabbath to YHVH. (3) Six years you shall sow your field, and six years you shall prune your vineyard and gather in its crop, (4) but during the seventh year the land shall have a Sabbath rest a Sabbath to YHVH; you shall not sow your field nor prune your vineyard. (5) Your harvest's aftergrowth you shall not reap, and your grapes of untrimmed vines you shall not gather; the land shall have a sabbatical year. (6) And all of you shall have the Sabbath products of the land for food; yourself, and your male and female slaves, and your hired man and your foreign resident, those who live as aliens with you. (7) Even your cattle and the animals that are in your land shall have all its crops to eat. (8) You are also to count of seven Sabbaths of years for yourself, seven times seven years, so that you have the time of the seven Sabbaths of years, namely forty-nine years. (9) You shall then sound a ram's horn abroad on the tenth day of the seventh month; on the Day of Atonement you shall sound a horn all through your land. (10) You shall thus consecrate the fiftieth year and proclaim a release through the land to all its inhabitants. It shall be a jubilee for you, and each of you shall return to his own property, and each of you shall return to his family. (11) You shall have the fiftieth year as a Jubilee; you shall not sow, nor reap its aftergrowth, nor gather in from its untrimmed vines. (12) For it is a jubilee; it shall be holy to you. You shall eat its crops out of the field. (13) On this year of the jubilee each of you shall return to his own property.'*** Whereas during the Land Sabbath, the land, the animals and the vineyards rest and all debts are cancelled, during the Jubilee year, the land rests and reverts to its original owner and all slaves are freed. The Israelites therefore looked forward to the year of the Jubilee in eager anticipation. The slaves were freed during the Sabbatical and Jubilee years, thus leveling the Israelite society. This ensured that all were equal before YHVH.

There is a very good reason why YHVH made Atonement, the year of the Jubilee and the seventh year Land Sabbath to interconnect. They are all about the subject of oppression, lack of forgiveness and greed. Once we understand why the Sabbatical year and the year of the Jubilee were necessary for the people of Israel, then we will understand what true fasting is. Both the Sabbatical year and the Jubilee year have to do with release and restoration: Release of debt, release of slaves, and the restoration of property to its rightful owners. The land Sabbath was necessary because people were enslaving other people less fortunate than themselves. They were doing this because of debt owed and taken out in forced labor. Why was this allowed? For the same reason that Moses allowed divorce: Because of the hardness of the people's hearts. This brings us to poverty!! There have always been poor people in the world, including in Israel. Has our Father failed to provide for the poor? No!!

YHVH is providing for the poor through their fellow human beings. YHVH gives to some in excess and He expects that those who have in excess to share their excess with the poor. The following tells us how YHVH has provided for the poor. Let us start in Deuteronomy 24: 19 ***"When you reap your harvest in your field and have forgotten a sheaf in the field, you shall not go back to get it; it shall be for the alien, for the orphan, and for the widow, in order that YHVH your Elohim may bless you in all the work of your hands."*** We continue on in Leviticus 19: 9 – 10: ***"Now when you reap the harvest of your land, you shall not reap to the very corners of your field, neither shall you gather the gleanings of your harvest. (10) Nor shall you glean your vineyard, nor shall you gather the fallen fruit of your vineyard; you shall leave them for the needy and for the stranger. I am YHVH your Elohim."*** We read further in James 2: 15 – 16: ***"If a brother or sister is without clothing and in need of daily food, and one of you says to them, 'Go in peace, be warmed and be filled,' and yet you do not give them what is necessary for their body, what use is that?"*** And finally in 1 John 3: 17 we read: ***"But whoever has the world's goods, and beholds his brother in need and closes his heart against him, how does the love of Elohim abide in him?"*** YHVH wants us to live like this; and because of the hardness of the hearts of mankind, the year of release and the leveling of society are required. Without this leveling the rich will get richer and the poor will get poorer. People are unwilling to share with those less fortunate than themselves. In (YHVH)'s perfect society all people will take care of one another, but we are a long way from such a perfect society.

The Jubilee and Land Sabbaths were Holy or Set-apart times in Israel and as a result of these commandments, the Promised Land became known as the Holy Land. However, we know that the Israelites did not continue to keep the Land Sabbaths and Jubilee years and were eventually enslaved as a result. We have major problems with especially the poor in the world today, because industrialization and modernization of civilization made obedience to the Laws of Elohim increasingly more difficult and less popular. The canceling of a borrower's debt is something totally unheard of, yet this is what Yahshua taught in the sample prayer that He taught His disciples and by extension us His modern day disciples to follow. In fact He taught in Matthew 6: 14 & 15, ***"(For) if you forgive men for their transgressions, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. (15) But if you do not forgive men, then your Father will not forgive your transgressions."*** Think about it - the ultra-rich will not become more so, if they had to return legally procured property after every fifty years. Nobody is obeying these commandments any longer today and this is perhaps the reason why, we have recessions and even depressions, to assist in the much needed leveling of society. Not even farmers are obeying these commandments of YHVH any longer and because of difficult economic conditions and pressures laid upon them by the banks, they cannot even think of letting the land lay fallow for a whole year.

Everything that YHVH does, He does with a purpose. He gave the Israelites the Passover to remind them how He discredited and destroyed the pagan g-ds of the Egyptians. The Days of Unleavened Bread reminded the Israelites that they left leaven behind in Egypt, and as a result became a new creation as they traveled towards Mount Sinai to enter into a marriage covenant with YHVH. The Feast of Tabernacles similarly reminded the Israelites as well as us, that they lived in temporary dwellings in the wilderness, for forty years, before they finally entered the Promised Land. We dwell in temporary dwellings during the Feast of Tabernacles, to remind us that life is temporary and it is only at the return of Messiah, when we are resurrected as spirit beings, that we will live forever (or permanently), if we overcome, the self, Satan and the world, during this temporary existence.

After Yahshua's return, Satan will be bound for a thousand years and the people who will live on into the millennium, will not have to worry about his influence any longer. The Day of Atonement was anciently the only day upon which the High Priest could enter the Holy of holies, to approach the throne of YHVH with blood offerings, for the forgiveness of the sins of the nation of Israel. The Day of Atonement is known as Yom Kippur, indicating that it was the day upon which the sins of the nation was covered. Obviously, this was supposed to point them to Messiah, the Lamb of YHVH who came to take away (not only cover) the sins of the whole world. When the shofar was sounded on the Day of Atonement in the Sabbatical year, it ushered in a yearlong Sabbath. It also marked the cancellation of all debt. After seven Sabbatical years came the year of the Jubilee, on the fiftieth year, another year during which the land lay fallow. However, the distinction being, that on the Jubilee the land was restored to the original owners. All the land given to the Israelite families when they first settled the land was again returned to the original families. Tribal and family registers were required to be kept in order to protect the original owners of the land. It was because of these records that were kept, that it was possible to confirm that Yahshua came from the tribe of Judah.

Can you imagine how the sound of the shofar on the Day of Atonement anciently must have inspired the children of Israel? It must have been a sure cure for ailments like depression and anxiety because of debts or losing one's property. Can you imagine how much more joyful we are going to be on the Day of Atonement, after Yahshua's returned one day on the Feast of Trumpets. Those who are brokenhearted will be comforted; the poor and hungry will be filled. All tears will be dried and the world will be liberated from the influences of Satan. The Shofar will be blown specifically on the Feast of Trumpets, on the New Moon and the dead in Messiah will be raised, as we read in verses 51 – 53 of 1 Corinthians 15, as follows: ***'Behold, I tell you a mystery; we shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, (52) in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet; for the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised imperishable, and we shall be changed. (53) For this perishable must put on the imperishable, and this mortal must put on immortality.'***

The Sabbatical year remains important to YHVH, as the very first teaching that Yahshua gave after He was immersed and overcame Satan's temptation was from Isaiah 61: 1 & 2. We read accordingly in Luke 4: 16 – 21, ***'And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath, and stood up to read. (17) And the book of the prophet Isaiah was handed to Him. And He opened the book, and found the place where it was written, (18) "THE SPIRIT OF YHVH IS UPON ME, BECAUSE HE ANNOINTED ME TO PREACH THE GOSPEL TO THE POOR. HE HAS SENT ME TO PROCLAIM RELEASE TO THE CAPTIVES, AND RECOVERY OF SIGHT TO THE BLIND, TO SET FREE THOSE WHO ARE DOWNTRODDEN, (19) TO PROCLAIM THE FAVORABLE YEAR OF YHVH." (20) And He closed the book, and gave it back to the attendant, and sat down; and the eyes of all in the synagogue were fixed upon Him. (21) And He began to say to them, "Today this Scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing."*** In reading this Scripture Yahshua only read to the first half of verse 2,

showing undoubtedly that He was beginning to call people out of the world to become His disciples. He came to preach to those who were teachable and continued building His ecclesia of called out ones to become His body of believers.

He told Kepha (Peter) in Matthew 16: 18 that His body of believers would never die out, but would exist until He returns to earth one day. Yahshua was cut off in the middle of the week, as Daniel prophesied in Daniel 9: 27, and similarly He stopped reading the remainder of verse 2 of Isaiah 61. Yahshua started His Ministry during a Sabbatical year, or *'the favorable year of YHVH'* (27-28 CE) and will return one day on ***"(And) the day of vengeance of our Elohim; to comfort all who mourn"***, as per the second part of Isaiah 61: 2, which corresponds with the message in Revelation 19: 11 – 16, as follows: ***'And I saw heaven opened; and behold, a white horse, and He who sat upon it is called Faithful and True; and in righteousness He judges and wages war. (12) And His eyes are a flame of fire, and upon His head are many diadems; and He has a name written upon Him which no one knows except Himself. (13) And He is clothed with a robe dripped in blood; and His name is called The Word of Elohim. (14) And the armies which are in heaven, clothed in fine linen, white and clean, were following Him on white horses. (15) And from His mouth comes a sharp sword, so that with it He may smite the nations; and He will rule them with a rod of iron; and He treads the wine press of the fierce wrath of Elohim, the almighty. (16) And on His robe and on His thigh He has a name written, "KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS."*** This is when the kingdoms of the world, will become the kingdom of Elohim, which will be an everlasting kingdom.

The Sabbatical and Jubilee years set the captives free, cancelled debt, restored the land to its rightful owners and reunited families. It is therefore also a picture of when Yahshua will return at the end of the 6000 year misrule of man, to come and restore everything to what it used to be like in the Garden of Eden. However, we need to be obedient to the commandments of Elohim and hold to the testimony of Yahshua, if we are going to be the ones to jubilate at His return. We therefore conclude with the words of warning from Yahshua in Luke 21: 34 - 36, as follows: ***"Be on guard, that your hearts may not be weighted down with dissipation and drunkenness and the worries of life, and that day come on you suddenly like a trap; (35) for it will come upon all those who dwell on the face of all the earth. (36) But keep on the alert at all times, praying in order that you may have strength to escape all these things that are about to take place, and to stand before the Son of Man."***

## **Chapter 26: Why are so many so 'obsessed' with watching the moon?**

The moon is very important to YHVH as we read in Psalms 89: 34 – 37, ***“My covenant I will not violate, nor will I alter the utterance of My lips. (35) Once I have sworn by My holiness (Sanctuary)<sup>35</sup>; I will not lie to David. (36) His descendants shall endure forever, And his throne as the sun before Me. (37) It shall be established forever like the moon, and the witness in the sky is faithful.”*** This is saying that the moon is Elohim’s witness, that David’s descendant Yahshua will rule the nation of Israel from Jerusalem during the coming kingdom of Elohim and into eternity. The Feast of Trumpets begins at the new moon on the seventh month and is a Set-apart convocation. It is the day that our Jewish brothers call the Head of the Year or Rosh Hashanah. The civil New Year is counted from Yom Teruah and the ten days of awe concluding at Yom Kippur, also starts from it. We read about Yom Teruah in Psalm 81: 3, transliterated in Hebrew, as follows: ***‘Tiqu va’chodesh shofar ba’kesh le’yom chagenu’***, meaning ***‘Blow the shofar at the moon’s renewal; at the time of concealment of our festive day.’*** Yom Teruah is the only Feast Day of Elohim that falls on a new or concealed moon, since we do not know exactly when Yahshua will return.

However, we are certain that He will return on the Feast of Trumpets or Yom Teruah one day. We read about this in 1 Thessalonians 4: 13 – 17, like this: ***“But we do not want you to be uninformed, brethren, about those who are asleep, that you may not grieve, as do the rest who have no hope. (14) For if we believe that Yahshua died and rose again, even so Elohim will bring with Him those who have fallen asleep in Yahshua. (15) For this we say to you by the word of the Master, that we who are alive, and remain until the coming of the Master, shall not precede those who have fallen asleep. (16) For the Master Himself will descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trumpet of Elohim; and the dead in Messiah shall rise first. (17) Then we who are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds (not heaven) to meet the Master in the air, and thus we shall be with the Master. (18) Therefore comfort one another with these words.”*** This will be the first resurrection spoken about in verse 6 of Revelation 20, as follows: ***‘Blessed and holy is the one who has a part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of Elohim, and of Messiah and will reign with Him for a thousand years.’*** It is by keeping the annual Feast Days of Elohim that we get to know His plan of salvation for mankind.

The moon is renewed immediately after the shadow of the earth, between the sun and the moon, covers the moon and it commences its move towards renewal. The renewed moon cannot be seen by the ‘naked’ eye and only becomes visible as a crescent moon 1½ to 2 days after concealment. Yes the new moon is in concealment for ±2 days (See 1 Samuel 20: 5, 27 & 34), and is only ‘watched’ to determine the date for Trumpets. If Atonement will be on a Friday or a Sunday, Trumpets is moved one day on, ensuring that Atonement is never on the day before or after a weekly Sabbath. Concealment takes up to 2 days, which ensures that even in the event of such a postponement, Trumpets will still occur during concealment of the moon. The people watching for the crescent moon, by which they declare a ‘new month’ is usually a day and a half to two days later than the Hebrew calendar. We read in 1 Samuel 20: 5, ***‘So David said to Jonathan, “Behold, tomorrow is the new moon, and I ought to sit down to eat with the king. But let me go, that I may hide myself in the field until the third evening.”’***

The question is: Why did David want to hide himself in the field until the 3<sup>rd</sup> evening. The reason is that King Saul kept the New Moon for two days, by having a special meal on both the evenings during which the moon was not visible. This is confirmed in verses 27 & 28 of 1 Samuel 20, as follows: ***‘And it came about the next day, the second day of the new moon, that David’s place was empty; so Saul said to Jonathan his son, “Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal, either yesterday or today.”’*** Both the First Day of Unleavened Bread and the first day of the Feast of Tabernacles should occur on the fifteenth day of either the first or the seventh months of the year. The moon is usually full on both of these two days. But, if we determine the new month by watching for the first sliver of the crescent moon to become visible, it will always be at least a day or two after the full moon. Yes the next ‘month’ will be about 30 days later, to the next crescent moon, but these two Feast Days will always be a day or two too late. The Feast Days of YHVH our Elohim are given in Leviticus 23. We notice that these are His Set-apart Days and not that of the Jews (only). The Sabbath occurs every seventh day of the week. However, notice in verse 4 the phrase ***‘which you shall proclaim’***. This is to say that Moses (or the people sitting in his seat) was responsible for proclaiming the calendar. YHVH does not expect each individual to determine the annual Set-apart calendar for themselves. Many self-appointed calendar experts claim that their calendar is the right one. Did YHVH intend the calendar to be proclaimed by an authoritative body – or is it every man for himself? Increasingly we see people simply doing what is right in their own eyes. Is YHVH the Author of such Spiritual anarchy? To whom did YHVH give

---

<sup>35</sup> The word holiness here is also mentioned in Psalm 60: 6, which leads onto verse 7, as follows: ***‘Elohim has spoken in His holiness: “I will exult, I will portion out Shechem and measure out the valley of Succoth. Gilead is Mine, and Manasseh is Mine; Ephraim also is the helmet of My head; Judah is My scepter (or lawgiver).”’*** In verse 6 the footnote against the word holiness reads, or sanctuary.

responsibility for the calendar? YHWH told Moses in verse 2 of Leviticus 23, saying: ***“Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, ‘(YHWH)’s appointed times which you shall proclaim as set-apart convocations – My appointed times are these.”*** But who was to do the proclaiming?

The Hebrew term for convocation is *‘miqra’*, which refers to an officially called assembly. In Numbers 10: 2 Moses was told that two silver trumpets were to be made and one of their major uses was ***“for summoning the congregation”***. Who was to use these trumpets? We read the answer in verse 8 of Numbers 10, like this: ***“The priestly sons of Aaron, moreover, shall blow the trumpets; and this shall be for you a perpetual statute throughout your generations.”*** Continuing in verse 10 we read: ***“Also in the day of your gladness and in your appointed feasts, and on the first days of your months, you shall blow the trumpets over your burnt offerings, and over the sacrifices of your peace offerings; and they shall be as a reminder of you before your Elohim. I am YHWH your Elohim.”***

The noun *‘miqra’* is derived from the verb *‘qara’*, rendered as ***“proclaim”*** in Leviticus 23:2 and 4. What exactly does it mean? It is the same word used in Genesis 1: 5 where we read: ***‘And Elohim called the light day, and the darkness He called night. And there was evening and there was morning, one day.*** A further example where the Hebrew word *‘qara’* is translated as called may be read in Genesis 1: 8 & 10, where Elohim ***“called”*** the expanse heaven (v 8) and the dry land He ***“called”*** earth, and the gathering of the waters He ***“called”*** seas (v 10). Later we learn that YHWH Elohim brought before Adam the animals He had created to see what he would call them. We read in the second part of Genesis 2: 19, ***“and whatever the man called (qara) a living creature (‘nephesh’ or soul), that was its name.”*** So we see that *qara* also means to “call”, or to name or to designate, and YHWH assigned the responsibility to name or designate all the different animals, to Adam.

How does this relate to the set-apart days? In Leviticus 23, we learned that a certain group was responsible for naming or proclaiming the days on which the congregation was to assemble before YHWH. Numbers 10 explains that this refers to the Priesthood and shows that it means YHWH gave them the responsibility to announce the arrival of new moons and annual Feast Days. It was not an individual matter for each Israelite to arrive at by himself; rather it was a collective matter to be proclaimed by an authoritative body. Nevertheless, there is more - most read right over the implications of who was to name, or proclaim, the days that would be considered Elohim’s appointed festivals. The Priesthood was given the right to name, or proclaim, those days – in the same way that YHWH gave Adam the authority to name, or designate the animals He had created. YHWH gave the Priesthood guidelines and principles by which they were to proclaim those days, but He did not spell out every single detail. He gave them the principles with which they had to make judgments. We read in the first part of Psalm 103: 7, ***‘He made known His ways to Moses.’*** We read further in Psalms 147: 19, ***‘He declares His words to Jacob, His statutes and His ordinances to Israel.’*** This is talking about Israel, before the nation Israel split in two and were taken into captivity, because of idolatry.

It is important to notice the difference between the weekly Sabbath and the annual festivals that Elohim gave mankind to keep. YHWH did not tell the Priesthood that they were responsible to name or proclaim the weekly Sabbath. Elohim Himself had proclaimed the weekly Sabbath at the end of the creation week. Mankind was simply told to “remember” and keep set-apart the time that Elohim Himself had previously designated. The annual festivals were different, as we saw in Leviticus 23 verses 2 & 4. While each individual could simply remember to observe the seventh day of the week, this was not possible with the annual festivals. Their exact timing would vary somewhat from year to year, regulated by the principles that YHWH gave Moses in Leviticus 23 and elsewhere. So we see that while the weekly Sabbath is to be remembered by each of us as individuals, the annual festivals are to be proclaimed by an authoritative body, each year, with the only proviso being that it should be in the seasons appointed for them. They were never intended to be an individual matter.

The Hebrew calendar uses 29 days, 12 hours and 793 parts out of 1080 parts (which an hour contains), as the mean time which elapses between one conjunction and the next, or the duration of the lunar month. This works out to 29.53059 days. According to the 15th edition of Encyclopedia Britannica, modern astronomers using satellites and computers have come up with the figure 29.530589 – one-one millionth of a day difference. How did the Hebrew calendar come to use such an accurate figure for the average length of the month? Some argue that the Jews adopted this information from Babylonian Astronomers. However, there is a problem with their theory, since the figure used by the Greeks, Babylonians and Egyptians was not as accurate as that used by the Jews. If we grant that Israel of old borrowed the number from one of their ancient neighbors, then why did they modify it? How did they know to modify it just the right amount, making it more exact than the one used by anyone else? Remember the figure used anciently to calculate the Hebrew calendar, 29.53059 days per month, was the same one used by NASA up to 1968 when satellite and computer technology allowed them to take the number out one more decimal place. How could an ancient

Israelite mathematician have arrived at a more exact figure than his contemporaries could? The answer may be found in Exodus 31: 1 -11 where we are told that Elohim's Set-apart Spirit empowered two men, Bezalel and Aholiab, to have a special understanding and knowledge to craft the items needed for the tabernacle. Did His Set-apart Spirit also lead someone to have special ability for making astronomical calculations to fix the calendar? Clearly, someone did make a calculation that remained unsurpassed until the decade when the United States put a man on the moon.

Nevertheless, those who are adamant to determine their own Feast Day calendars assert that when Hillel II issued a decree in the year 358 – 359 CE to institute a fixed calendar, known today as the Hebrew calendar, he corrupted the '*Scriptural calendar*'. For this reason these people reject the Hebrew calendar. However, at that time Hillel II was a member of the Sanhedrin and it was according to Scriptures<sup>36</sup> his right to determine the timing of the Feast Days of Elohim. Whether we like it or not, the Hebrew calendar is for that reason the only legitimate Scriptural calendar, today. The ruling of Hillel II will remain in force until such time as a new Sanhedrin is reestablished in Jerusalem. Many of the 'calendar experts' insist that the Jewish method whereby the conjunctions or eclipses are used to calculate the length from one new moon to another is not Scriptural. However, we read in Genesis 1: 14 that both the sun and the moon are for signs and seasons.

The Hebrew word for sign is 'ot', a word often used to refer to remarkable and dramatic signs. It is used in Exodus 4: 8 – 9, to explain the wonders that YHVH performed in ancient Egypt. Even today, there are not many signs that are more dramatic than solar and lunar eclipses - I recall a few years ago how many people at the University where I worked, bought special glasses to view a solar eclipse. These signs provide the basis of a calculated Hebrew calendar in use today. According to Genesis 1: 14 in the New American Standard Bible, the sun and the moon were for '**seasons, and for days and years**'. In the Jewish Publication Society (JPS) version of the Tanach, the word 'seasons' is referred to as '**appointed times**' – which comes from the Hebrew word 'mo'ed'. This same word is used in Psalm 104: 19, where we see that YHVH appointed the moon for seasons ('mo'ed'). The phase of the moon determines the progression of the month. The Feast Days of YHVH are either linked to the new moon at the beginning of the month or at the full moon in the middle of the month. The correct way of intercalating the year according to the Hebrew method in the Scriptures, is by placing Passover on or after the Spring Equinox<sup>37</sup>. This is established by the literal meaning of Exodus 34: 22 which demands that the intercalation of the Set-apart Days, rather than the whole year be regulated by the equinoxes ('tekufah' in Hebrew). In regard to barley, it is important to understand that the command to offer first-fruits on the day after the first annual Sabbath or day of rest, the First Day of Unleavened Bread (or the high day Sabbath, which occurred on the day after Yahshua's impalement and burial in John 19: 31). Many believers have been misled to believe that this offering was of 'ripe grain' rather than of 'green ears'. It is for this reason that some who determine their own calendar, sometimes keep the Feast of Tabernacles a month late, with the Last Great Day falling as late as the 4<sup>th</sup> of November. This faulty intercalation system is nothing other than the practice that Jeroboam instituted to cause Israel to keep the Feast of Tabernacles in the eighth month and be taken into captivity because of this apostasy.

Is it important for us, at this time, to know how the Jews intercalate the Hebrew calendar? Is it important that we study the Talmud? I do not believe so. Scriptures tell us in Romans 3: 1 – 4, that the Jews have the oracles, and for me that is enough. They are Elohim's lawgiver, meaning they have the truth or words of Elohim, regarding the Sabbaths, Kosher Laws and the Hebrew language, even if some of them did not believe. I only need to follow the Scriptures and do not have to be overly concerned with the interpretation of external sources, as to how Elohim should be worshipped. We read in Jeremiah 10 which is specifically addressing us as the lost ten tribes of Israel, saying in verses 1 & 2: '**Hear the word which YHVH speaks to you, O house of Israel. (2) Thus says YHVH, "Do not learn the way of the nations, And do not be terrified by the signs of the heavens Although the nations are terrified by them."**' We need only follow the word of Elohim and forget the things that scare the gentiles. The sun and moon were given to us for signs and seasons; we use the moon as well as the green ears of barley in Israel to confirm the calendar as calculated by our Jewish brothers, and not to determine our own calendar. They are according to the Scriptures responsible to determine the calendar and if it is not totally correct at this time, it is sure to be corrected by Yahshua at His return.

We as Nazarene Israelites who follow the perfect example set for us by Yahshua our Messiah, need to determine which calendar He followed, when He was on earth. The year of Yahshua's impalement and therefore also the Passover, can be confirmed by correlating the prophecy of Daniel 9 with the occurrence

---

<sup>36</sup> As per Deuteronomy 17: 8 – 12; Numbers 10: 8 & 10; Leviticus 23: 2 – 4: YHVH said to Moses: '**(YHVH)'s appointed times which you shall proclaim**'; Malachi 2: 4 – 7; and Mathew 23: 2 & 3 (Moses or whoever sits in his seat).

<sup>37</sup> The Feast Days of YHVH are always considered with the land of Israel in mind and are observed as seen by people living in the northern hemisphere.



described in Ezra 7. Daniel explained that there would be a time period of 70 'weeks' that is to say 490 prophetic days. We are also told that 69 of these 'weeks', i.e. 483 years would run from the time of the decree to rebuilt Jerusalem until the Messiah's appearance. This decree of King Artaxerxes that commences the count of the prophetic 'weeks' is recorded in Ezra 7. Ezra arrived in Jerusalem with the decree in the summer of 457 BCE. Adding 483 years to 457 BCE, brings us to 27 CE. This is the year during which Yahshua was immersed. Yahshua's ministry began at the time when John the Immerser came to an end. Yahshua was about 30 years of age when He was immersed. Most researchers agree that His ministry lasted for 3 ½ years. He started His ministry in the fall of 27 CE and was impaled in the spring of 31 CE. We know that Yahshua was impaled on the 4<sup>th</sup> day of the week and resurrected three days and three nights later, at the end of the weekly Sabbath. This means that the Passover of 31 CE, the scripturally established time of His impalement, had to occur on the fourth day of the week.

Both the British and U.S. Naval Observatories corroborate that that particular Passover occurred on the fourth day of the week (or Wednesday) that year. This agrees with prophecy in Daniel 9: 27; Yahshua was to be cut off in the middle of the week. He was in the grave for three full days and three full nights according to His claim in Matthew 12: 40 and the record of His resurrection in Matthew 28: 1 – 6. Titus a Roman general besieged Jerusalem on September 7<sup>th</sup> 70 CE. Against his orders, his soldiers burned the Temple, resulting in a major problem. All the gold in the Temple melted down into the temple stones. It took seven months to remove all the gold from the destroyed Temple building, bringing us to the spring of 71 CE. There is an arch-monument commemorating the overthrow of Jerusalem in the south of Rome. Titus returned to Rome in the spring of 71 CE. Yahshua predicted the destruction of the Temple in Matthew 24: 1 & 2. He added in Matthew 24: 34, saying: ***"Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place."*** In Scriptural times a generation was said to be 40 years (see Psalm 95: 10 and Hebrews 3: 9 – 10). True to Yahshua's word, we see that from the spring of 31 CE to spring of 71 CE is exactly 40 years. Yahshua kept the Feast Days on the same days that the Jews of His day kept it, except for the Passover, which He kept in the night part of the fourteenth of Aviv. The Jews of His day, like today, keep the Passover, on the evening of the Fifteenth of Aviv, when the First Day of Unleavened Bread commences. In following our Master Yahshua, we observe the Hebrew Calendar, but keep the Passover in the evening of the 14<sup>th</sup> Aviv. By reading the four gospels, you will notice that Yahshua kept all the other Feast Days including Chanukah (see John 10: 22), according to the Hebrew calendar. Yahshua only made one change to the Hebrew calendar, and since He is our example of how to follow the way of Elohim, we do as He did.

I have been asked by a few, how one would watch for the real New Moon, which any meteorologist will tell you is a complete dark moon, as may be seen on calendars, showing the four phases of the moon. Nowhere in the Scriptures are we told that people watched for the new moon, however, my reply to such a question is usually another question, i.e. How do you watch for the crescent moon? Followed by: *'I watch for a new moon exactly the same way that you watch for the crescent moon - I watch for the (opposite) crescent of the outgoing moon, knowing that the night when it disappeared, it is the new (or dark) moon.'* According to the Hebrew calendar the very next day will be the New Month, unless a postponement is necessary. It is this very same calendar that the current state of Israel, consisting of millions of citizens, use to 'run' the nation by: No, they are not only organizing an assembly or congregation of a few hundred or even thousand members by every crescent moon, where the equinoxes are not taken into account, as some do.

Yes, the moon is very important to YHVH, as we read in Psalm 19: 1 - 6, ***'The heavens are telling of the glory of Elohim; and there expanse is declaring the work of His hands. (2) Day to day pours forth speech, and night to night reveals knowledge. (3) There is no speech, nor are there words; their voice is not heard. (4) Their line has gone out through all the earth, and their utterances to the end of the world. In them He has placed a tent for the sun, (5) Which is as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber*** (talking about Yahshua, the bridegroom coming back for His bride, His ecclesia of called out believers one day on Yom Teruah, in the near future); ***it rejoices as a strong man to run his course. (6) Its rising is from one end of the heavens, and its circuit to the other end of them; and there is nothing hidden from its heat.'*** But, the sun is equally important.

Many of the modern day Sabbath keepers insist that they are descendants of the Waldenses.<sup>38</sup> Apparently the Waldenses were converts of the apostles and kept their faith until the nineteenth century. The Waldenses were also known as Puritans, Kettlers, Circumcised, and Abigenses. They did not observe the holidays propagated by the Catholic Church, but kept the Passover and the Feast of Tabernacles. One of their Passover songs reflect their beliefs about the Catholic holidays, as follows:

---

<sup>38</sup>The information in this paragraph as well as the song is quoted from a book by Richard and Melody Drake, entitled ***'Armageddon and the International Sunday Law'*** ISBN 0-927022-71-0. To order copies of this book, visit their webpage at: [www.GodsHolidays.com](http://www.GodsHolidays.com)



**'All pageantry from the Bible Word  
Most certainly arrives from Italy.  
Of this truth we bear witness, hearts bestirred,  
As far as Rome itself, the Pope's city.**

**Just ask the Pope! He shall himself confess  
His celebrations do not come from G-d,  
The Jewish statutes G-d alone will bless,  
Where Popes unholy refuse to trod.'**

If you are truly descendants of the Waldenses, why do you have to work out your own calendar by watching for the crescent moon like the Moslems do?. Why do you not follow the Jewish calendar like they apparently did? Do you know that the righteous Jews will be in their synagogues when Yahshua returns on the Feast of Trumpets or Yom Teruah, as we read in Zechariah 12: 10 – 14? Did you know that Judah will be saved first, as we read in Zechariah 12: 7? Have you ever read the prophecy in Zechariah 8: 23, where we read: ***“Thus says YHVH of hosts, ‘In those days ten men from all nations (meaning the lost ten tribes) will grasp the garment of a Jew saying, “Let us go with you, for we have heard that Elohim is with you.””***

In conclusion, we read Rav Shaul's admonishing words in Hebrews 5: 12, about those who are overly concerned about amongst other, such things as which calendar to follow (whilst Yahshua Himself acknowledged<sup>39</sup> the one used by the Jews), as follows: ***'For though by this time you ought to be teachers, you have need again for someone to teach you the elementary principles of the oracles of Elohim, and you have come to need milk and not solid food.'*** Think about it!

---

<sup>39</sup>In Matthew 23: 2 & 3.

## **Chapter 27: Is it important that we meet together on Sabbaths?**

Many of the Nazarene Israelites, whom YHVH has called out of various religious groups of the world, do not easily fellowship with like-minded believers, because of the false teachings that they were exposed to in their previous religious affiliations. Knowing about the deception that is preached by the religions of the world, we cannot blame them.

YHVH is presently calling comparatively few people out of the world, to become His ecclesia of called out believers. We read accordingly in Jeremiah 3: 14 & 15, as follows: ***'Return, O faithless sons,' declares YHVH; 'For I am a master to you, and I will take you one from a city and two from a family, and will bring you to Zion. (15) Then I will give you shepherds after My own heart, who will feed you on knowledge and understanding.'*** We are therefore at this time few and far between, and cannot meet with fellow believers on a regular basis, due to considerable distances between believers. In addition we read in Amos 3: 3, ***'Do two men walk together unless they have made an appointment?'*** This is essentially saying that we cannot walk together with people who keep the appointed times or Feast Days of Elohim, at different times to us.

However, there are specific instructions for the sons of Israel about our worship of YHVH our Elohim, given in Leviticus 23. It is in Leviticus 23 that we read about the seven annual Set-apart Days of Elohim, as well as about the weekly Sabbath. We read in verses 1 & 2 of Leviticus 23, ***'YHVH spoke again to Moses saying, "Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, '(YHVH)'s appointed times which you shall proclaim as holy (or Set-apart) convocations- My appointed times are these."*** This tells us that these are definitely not the Feast Days of Jewish people only, but that it is Feast Days of Elohim. But, the question is: What is meant by *'a Set-apart convocation?'* The 'Concise Oxford Dictionary' states that a convocation (*noun*) is the calling together; or assembly; or summon to assemble. In other words YHVH is telling the children of Israel in Leviticus 23, when to assemble together for His appointed times. It was very easy in ancient times, when Israel had a Temple in Jerusalem, to know both when and where the children of Israel assembled for the Set-apart convocations of YHVH.

There is a group who calls themselves the congregation of YHVH in Jerusalem, who believes that we should keep all of the Feast Days of Elohim in Jerusalem. The irony is that this group does not keep the Feast Days according to the Hebrew calendar, kept by the Jews in Israel. Whilst there was a Temple, the assertion that Jerusalem was the city where YHVH placed his name was undoubtedly true. For instance we read in 2 Chronicles 7: 11 & 12, ***'Thus Solomon finished the house of YHVH and the king's palace, and successfully completed all that he had planned on doing in the house of YHVH and in his palace. (12) Then YHVH appeared to Solomon at night and said to him, "I have heard your prayer, and have chosen this place for Myself as a house of sacrifice.'*** During the existence of the Temple in Jerusalem, all of Israel got together on Elohim's weekly and annual Sabbaths to keep these Set-apart convocations in the house of Elohim in Jerusalem – where He placed His name. We read further regarding the temple that Solomon built in 2 Chronicles 6: 1 - 6, as follows: ***'Then Solomon said, "YHVH has said that He would dwell in the thick cloud. (2) I have built Thee a lofty house, and a place for Thy dwelling forever." (3) Then the king faced about and blessed all the assembly of Israel, while all the assembly of Israel was standing. (4) And he said, "Blessed be YHVH, the Elohim of Israel, who spoke with His mouth to my father David and has fulfilled it with His hands, saying, (5) 'Since the day that I brought My people from the land of Egypt, I did not choose a city out of all the tribes of Israel in which to build a house that My name might be there, nor did I choose any man for a leader over My people Israel; (6) but I have chosen Jerusalem that My name might be there, and I have chosen David to be over My people Israel.'***

We also know that during the Millennium rule of Yahshua, that YHVH will again choose Jerusalem, as we are told in Zechariah 2: 11 & 12, ***"And many nations will join themselves to YHVH in that day and will become My people. Then I will dwell in your midst, and you will know that YHVH of hosts has sent Me to you. (12) And YHVH will possess Judah as His portion in the holy land, and will again choose Jerusalem."*** We also read in Zechariah 6: 11 – 13, that Yahshua shall build the Temple during the millennium and will perform the office of king and priest, as follows: ***"And take silver and gold, make an ornate crown, and set it on the head of Joshua the son of Jehozadak, the high priest. (12) Then say to him, 'Thus says YHVH of hosts, "Behold, a man whose name is Branch (The transliterated Hebrew word for branch is Notsrim which is Nazarene in English), for He will branch out from where He is; and He will build the temple of YHVH. (13) Yes, it is He who will build the temple of YHVH, and He who will bear the honor and sits and rule on His throne. Thus, He will be a priest on His throne, and the counsel of peace will be between the two offices."***

However, in John 4: 19 & 20 we read about the well-known discussion between Yahshua and the Samaritan woman at the well, in this way: ***‘The woman said to Him, “Sir, I perceive that You are a prophet. (20) Our fathers worshiped in this mountain, and you people say that in Jerusalem is the place where men ought to worship.” We read Yahshua’s answer in verses 21 – 24 of John 4, as follows: “Woman, believe Me, an hour is coming when neither in this mountain, nor in Jerusalem, shall you worship the Father. (22) You worship that which you do not know; we worship that which we know, for salvation is from the Jews. (23) But an hour is coming, and now is, when the true worshipers shall worship the Father in spirit and truth; for such people the Father seeks to be His worshipers. (24) Elohim is spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth.”*** Yahshua was in fact alluding to the year 70 CE, when the Temple will be destroyed by Rome, and when it will no longer be possible to worship Elohim, in Jerusalem. Yahshua was in effect saying that after the destruction of the Temple, we should not stop to worship Him, but the only proviso being that we should worship YHVH in spirit and in truth.

When Yahshua chased the moneychangers out of the Temple and overturned their tables. We see in John 2: 17, that ***‘His disciples remembered that it was written, “ZEAL FOR THY HOUSE WILL CONSUME ME.”*** In verse 18 of John 2, the Jews answered and said to Him, ***“What sign do You show to us, seeing that You do these things?”*** In verse 19 of John 2, Yahshua referred to His body as being a Temple when ***‘Yahshua answered and said to them, “Destroy this temple and in three days I will raise it up.”*** In the next verse we see that even though the Jews mistakenly thought that He was talking about the temple in Jerusalem, He was actually speaking of His body. We read in 1 Corinthians 6: 19 & 20 that our bodies are likewise the temple of the Set-apart Spirit: ***‘Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Set-apart Spirit who is in you, whom you have from Elohim, and that you are not your own? For you have been bought with a price; therefore glorify Elohim in your body.’*** We need to worship YHVH in spirit and in truth in our bodies.

What does it mean to worship YHVH in spirit and in truth? To begin with, it means that we do not worship our Father for show, that is, to be seen by people. In Matthew 6, Yahshua gave His disciples a pattern for their prayers, saying in verses 5 & 6: ***‘And when you pray, you are not to be as hypocrites; for they love to stand and pray in the synagogues and on street corners, in order to be seen by men. Truly I say to you, they have their reward in full. (6) But you, when you pray, go into your inner room, and when you have shut your door, pray to your Father who is in secret, and your Father who sees in secret will repay you.’*** Yahshua said that we should not pray only to be heard by others, so that they are impressed by our ‘righteousness.’ Rather, we should pray because we really want to talk to YHVH, and that is actually done in private.

Let’s consider what truth is: We read Yahshua’s explanation of truth in John 17: 17, as follows: ***“Sanctify them in the truth; Thy word is truth.”*** Yahshua is the Word of Elohim made flesh (as per John 1: 1 – 3, & 14) or put differently, He is the embodiment of Torah. The word of Elohim is truth. Is this true for us as well? Or are there sections in the Word of Elohim, such as the writings of Rav Shaul, which we consider to be false? When Yahshua was tempted in the wilderness by Satan, He sharply rebuked the devil in Matthew 4: 10, saying: ***“Begone, Satan! For it is written, ‘YOU SHALL WORSHIP YHVH YOUR ELOHIM, AND SERVE HIM ONLY.’”*** Rav Shaul equated his worship of Elohim in Acts 24: 14, in this way: ***“But this I admit to you, that according to the Way which they call a sect (‘the sect of the Nazarenes’- see Acts 24: 5) I do serve the Elohim of our fathers, believing everything that is in accordance with the Law, and that is written in the Prophets.”*** We know that at that time he was referring to the Tanach, but also know that the word of Elohim is the entire Scriptures from Genesis to Revelation.

YHVH wants us to worship Him in truth and we do so by honoring Him, serving Him and obeying His instructions given in The Scriptures. We continue to read about Yahshua’s temptation by Satan In Matthew 4: 4, where He said to him: ***“It is written, ‘MAN SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUNTH OF ELOHIM.’”*** The way we worship YHVH our Elohim, should be reflected in the way we live our daily lives. Our relationship with YHVH is a way of life. We read an example of how to live in Acts 18: 25 & 26, as follows: ***‘This man had been instructed in the way of YHVH; and being fervent in spirit, he was speaking and teaching accurately the things concerning Yahshua, being acquainted only with the immersion of John; (26) and he began to speak out boldly in the synagogue. But when Priscilla and Aquila heard him, they took him aside and explained to him the way of Elohim more accurately.’*** Worshipping YHVH is a way of thinking, acting and living. It affects every aspect of our lives.

Even though the Temple in Jerusalem has been destroyed 40 years after Yahshua’s death and resurrection, YHVH still require us to get together to worship Him. Yahshua had to die for the Set-apart Spirit to come and guide us into all truth. We read accordingly in John 16: 7 – 13, ***‘But I tell you the truth, it is to your advantage that I go away; for if I do not go away, the Helper shall not come to you; but if I go, I will***

**send Him to you. (8) And He, when He comes, will convict the world concerning sin, and righteousness, and judgment; (9) concerning sin, because they do not believe in Me; (10) and concerning righteousness, because I go to the Father, and you no longer behold Me; (11) and concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged. (12) I have many more things to say to you, but you cannot bear them now. (13) But when He, the Spirit of truth, comes, He will guide you into all the truth; for He will not speak on His own initiative, but speak on His own initiative, but whatever He hears, He will speak; and He will disclose to you what is to come. (14) He shall glorify Me; for He shall take of Mine, and shall disclose it to you.**

Yahshua's disciples stayed around in Jerusalem, after the resurrection and ascension of Yahshua, and were gathered together on the day of Pentecost, in one accord. They were observing the Feast of weeks, when the outpouring of the Set-apart Spirit occurred. If they did not observe the Feast of Weeks in Jerusalem, according to the correct calendar, they would not have received the Set-apart Spirit. We read according to Ephesians 1: 7 -14 , that YHVH gives His Set-apart Spirit to those whom He calls to become first-fruits and are immersed at this time, as follows: **'In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace, (8) which He lavished upon us. In all wisdom and insight. (9) He made known to us the mystery of His will, according to His kind intention which He purposed in Him (10) with a view to an administration suitable to the fullness of the times, that is, the summing up of all things in Messiah, things in the heavens and things upon the earth. In Him (11) also we have obtained an inheritance, having been predestined according to His purpose who works all things after the counsel of His will, (12) to the end that we who were the first to hope in Messiah should be to the praise of His glory. (13) In Him, you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of your salvation- having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, (14) who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to the redemption of Elohim's own possession, to the praise of His glory.'**

Yahshua continued with a discipleship program similar to the Rabbis before Him. After His immersion at around age 30, He became a Torah teacher and taught His Jewish disciples and other people from the Tanach, known as the Old Covenant to Christians. His disciples called Him teacher or Rabbi in Hebrew. First century Rabbis were not ordained like the ministers or clergymen of today: They were not on the payroll of a synagogue, but instead practiced a trade to support their own teaching ministries. For example, Rav. Shaul chose to be a tent maker rather than to accept donations from his students. Other teachers like Yahshua, gave themselves full time to the work of studying and teaching their disciples about the coming Kingdom of Elohim. They relied on donations of the community and his students, as we read in Luke 8: 3, as follows: **'and Joanna the wife of Chuza, Herod's steward, and Susanna, and many others who were contributing to their support out of their private means.'**

Being Jewish, Yahshua taught in local synagogues, as we read in Luke 4: 16, as follows: **'And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath and stood up and read.'** We see in the first four books of the Renewed Covenant known as the Good News that Yahshua taught in the Temple courts during the Festivals. The Rabbi-disciple method of teaching Torah and the knowledge of Elohim to the next generation was originally instituted by Moses, when he taught Joshua. Teachers of each generation were delegated to raise-up disciples and future teachers for the next generation. A Rabbi like Yahshua, dedicated to conveying the knowledge of Elohim, explained the Torah teachings of Elohim in practical terms. Even though Yahshua's interpretation of Torah was at times at odds with other Rabbis of His day, He never abolished the Torah teachings of Elohim.

Yahshua compared himself to a shepherd and Israel to His sheep. We are aware that, from what He said in John 10 from verse 11 onward, He was claiming and understood to be saying, to be one with the Father as we read in verse 30. We know from Psalm 23 that king David wrote in verse 1 that: **'YHVH is my shepherd'**. In John 10, Yahshua was claiming to be the **'good shepherd'**, but also saying in verses 17 & 18, that no one is responsible for His death, in this way: **"For this reason the Father loves Me, because I lay down My life that I may take it again. (18) No one has taken it away from Me, but I lay it down on My own initiative. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again. This commandment I received from my Father."** As He specified in verse 11: **"the good shepherd lays down His life for the sheep."** As a first century Rabbi Yahshua raised-up disciples; teaching them the way of Elohim. Different to other Rabbis of His day, Yahshua taught in His own authority. His message was primarily focused on the coming kingdom of Elohim and His teachings were usually accompanied by miracles which validated his claim to be one with the Father. YHVH calls us to become Yahshua's disciples or students, as Yahshua did His first century disciples. He wants us to get to know Him as our Teacher or Rabbi. Yes, He is our Savior, but by studying what He taught His first century disciples, we could also make Him our Master: We need to commit our lives as disciples under Him and study what He said and did whilst He was on earth, and then follow Him.

After we have spent a number of years in the truth Yahshua expects us, to like His original disciples become teachers. We read their commission, and by implication ours in Matthew 28: 18 – 20, as follows: ***‘And Yahshua came up and spoke to them, saying, “All authority (power) has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. (19) Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, immersion them in the name (one name) of the Father and the Son and the Set-apart Spirit, (20) teaching them to observe all that I command you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.’*** Once we are familiar with the teachings of Yahshua, and have practiced the same for a few years, He expects us to become teachers, in order to ensure that His ecclesia will continue, until He returns one day. The role and purpose of teachers, are given in Ephesians 4: 11 -13, as follows: ***‘And He gave some as apostles, and some as prophets, and some as evangelists, and some pastors and teachers, (12) for the equipping of the saints for the work of service, to the building up of the body of Messiah; (13) until we all attain to the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of Elohim, to a mature man, to the measure of the stature which belongs to the fullness of Messiah.’*** In accordance with the commission Yahshua gave us in Matthew 28, the teachers who immersed us are responsible to teach us what they have learnt from their teachers.

After immersion and the laying-on of hands, the new believer receives a portion of the Set-apart Spirit, as we read in Acts 2: 38 and 8: 12 – 17. However, immersion is only the beginning of our walk of life in Yahshua. We are then required to grow in grace and knowledge as we are told in 2 Peter 3: 18, as follows: ***‘but grow in grace and knowledge of our Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah. To Him be the glory, both now and the day to eternity. Amen.’*** New believers grow in knowledge by getting regular teachings from the teacher who immersed them. After having practiced Torah for more than thirty years, I believe that I am qualified to teach the many truths taught me by my teachers. I am not a prophet or apostle, and definitely not better than the new believers that I teach, the only difference being that I have been studying and practicing Torah for longer than they did. Even so, we read in Acts 2: 42, about those who were recently immersed, as follows: ***‘And they (the new believers) were continually devoting themselves to the apostles’ teaching and to fellowship, to the breaking of bread and prayer.’*** So we see that those who are immersed should devote themselves to the one who immersed them. We also read according to Acts 15: 21, that new believers should attend synagogues (or places where Torah is taught) every Sabbath (and on Set-apart Days). However, since YHVH is only calling a remnant from Israel out at this time, we are as I said earlier, few and far in between, and it is not possible to meet together on weekly Sabbaths. This is also why I send out Torah portions and sermons to those whom I have immersed.

We read in Deuteronomy 12: 17 that we are not allowed to eat our Festival tithe within our gates, as follows: ***“You are not allowed to eat within your gates the tithe of your grain, or new wine, or oil, or the first-born of your herd or flock, or any of your votive offerings which you vow, or your freewill offerings, or the contribution of your hand.”*** According to Deuteronomy 14: 23 we are supposed to save a festival tithe, which will allow us to have the necessary finance to attend the annual Feast Days of Elohim, as follows: ***“And you shall eat in the presence of YHVH your Elohim, at the place where He chooses to establish His name, the tithe of your grain, your new wine, your oil, and the first-born of your herd and your flock, in order that you may learn to fear YHVH your Elohim always.”*** Since the destruction of the temple in Jerusalem, we need to save the festival tithe during the year and then go to a place, where those teaching, finds a suitable place to keep the annual festivals of Elohim, as per the instruction in Deuteronomy 16: 16, ***‘Three times in a year all your males shall appear before YHVH in the place which He chooses, at the Feast of Unleavened Bread and at the Feast of Weeks and at the Feast of Booths, and they shall not appear before YHVH empty handed.’*** The body of Messiah is made up of those who have been immersed into His saving name. We are required during the three festival periods given here, to take time away from our worldly activities, to help us to focus on our main goal, i.e. to seek first the kingdom of Elohim.

There is a tendency amongst Nazarene/Messianic Israelite believers to keep the Feast Days on their own, rather than with other like-minded believers. Yes, it is impossible for us to meet with those who have a different holy day calendar, but we need to meet with like-minded believers and discuss beliefs where we differ only slightly, since as we read in Proverbs 27: 17, ***‘Iron sharpens iron, So one man sharpens another.’*** Many are often concerned with the location of the place of safety, where YHVH will one day protect us during the Great Tribulation that is soon coming upon the earth. We have two Scriptural witnesses implying that we will possibly be protected at the Feast of Tabernacles, during this time of trouble, as we read in Psalm 27: 5, as follows: ***‘For in the day of trouble He will conceal me in His tabernacle; in the secret place of His tent He will hide me; He will lift me up on a rock.’*** The second witness is found in Isaiah 26: 19 – 21, in this way: ***‘Your dead will live; Their corpses will rise. You will lie in the dust, awake and shout for joy, for your dew is as the dew of the dawn. And the earth will give birth to the departed spirits. (20) Come, my people, enter into your rooms, and close your doors behind you; hide for a little while, until indignation runs its course. (21) For behold, YHVH is about to come from His place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity; and the earth will reveal her bloodshed, and will***

***no longer cover her slain.***’ We know that our Master will one day return on Yom Teruah, otherwise known as the Feast of Trumpets, when the dead in Messiah will be resurrected, after which Satan will be bound for a thousand years (on Yom Kippur). Then we will enter the millennium rule of Yahshua our Messiah, depicted by the Feast of Tabernacles.

To conclude we read Rav Shaul’s admonition in Hebrew 10: 23 – 25, in this way: ***‘Let us hold fast the confession of our hope without wavering, for He who promised is faithful; (24) and let us consider how to stimulate one another to love and good deeds, (25) not forsaking our own assembling together, as is the habit of some, but encouraging one another; and all the more, as you see the day drawing near.***’ If nothing else, let’s plan to have the next Feast of Tabernacles, together – in preparation for the time when we will do it with Yahshua in Jerusalem.

## **Chapter 28: What is ahead for the called-out ones?**

We as believers need to be aware of what is prophesied to happen in the next few years before the return of our Master Yahshua the Messiah. This will help us prepare ourselves spiritually for what is ahead for the world and also for us. If we are currently overly concerned with the economy and with making a living, we will not find time to prepare for the events that the Scriptures warn to occur in the near future? Yes, the events about to occur are foretold in the pages of the Scriptures. All that is required of us, is that we spend some time reading the Scriptures, to find out about these prophesies.

The economic crisis that the whole world is currently experiencing is part of what is prophesied to occur to the world and its inhabitants. Because most are overly concerned with the present crises, they do not realize that this is the start of the events that will lead to the end of the age. Many believe that it is not possible to understand the prophecies described in the Scriptures and more specifically in the book of Revelation and some insist that most of the events described in the Scriptures, should not be interpreted literally. They are not even aware of the fact that this is just another of Satan's devices to keep people from knowing Scriptural truths. In fact just the opposite is true, especially regarding the book of Revelation, since, as the name indicates, it is what YHVH gave Yahshua to reveal to the Apostle John, as is recorded in Revelation 1: 1 & 2, like this: ***'The Revelation of Yahshua Messiah, which Elohim gave Him to show to His bond-servants, the things which must shortly take place; and He sent and communicated it by His angel to His bond-servant John, (2) who bore witness to the word of Elohim and to the testimony of Yahshua Messiah, even to all that he saw.'*** To align our study with where we are at present in prophecy, we commence in Revelation 6: 1 & 2 with the seven seals, as follows: ***'And I saw when the Lamb broke one of the seven seals, and I heard one of the four living creatures saying as with a voice of thunder, "Come." (2) And I looked, and behold, a white horse, and he who sat on it had a bow; and a crown was given to him; and he went out conquering, and to conquer.'*** The breaking of the first seal is the start of the things that will usher in the end time events, and need to be watched for. In fact I believe that it has already started.

The white horse has to do with religion. We know that when Yahshua returns one day, He will also come on a white horse. However, we see in Revelation 19: 15, that He will come with a sword, with which to smite the nations. The one riding the white horse in Revelation 6 will have a bow in his hand. This is one who goes out conquering and to conquer. The question is: Conquering what? I do not believe that this is talking about the religious groups who go out preaching hell and damnation to scare people into believing their false doctrines, as this has been happening since the start of Christianity. In fact, talking about the end of the age Yahshua identified this as the beginning of the events that will lead up to His return. We read his warning in Matthew 24: 4 & 5, as follows: ***"See to it that no one misleads you* (talking to His disciples and by implication also us, His modern day disciples). *(5) For many will come in My name, saying, 'I am the Messiah,' and will mislead many."*** This has very little to do with the Greek title 'C\*h\*r\*i\*s\*t' as used in the New American Standard Bible.

Those of us who are familiar with and use the correct title of Yahshua our Messiah, will not easily be taken in by those who preach using the incorrect titles. Even though this is also talking about those who preach a false Yahshua (or J\*e\*s\*u\*s\* as they call him) who came to do away with His Fathers Torah, as we are warned about in 2 Corinthians 11: 4, like this: ***'For if one comes and preaches another Yahshua whom we have not preached, or you receive a different spirit which you have not received, or a different gospel (a gospel about the person of J\*e\*s\*u\*s\*, rather than that of the coming kingdom of Elohim) which you have not accepted, you bear this beautifully.'*** We read a second witness about this false gospel being preached in Rav Shaul's time in Galatians 1: 6 & 7, as follows: ***'I am amazed that you are so quickly deserting Him who called you by the grace of Messiah, for a different gospel; (7) which is really not another; only there are some who are disturbing you, and want to distort the gospel of Messiah* (which He preached as per Mark 1: 14 & 15).'** Belief in the coming kingdom of Elohim on earth as explained in Revelation 5: 10, essentially disagrees with the teaching that 'good' people go to heaven, and 'bad' people go to hell, upon death, to be tormented forever and ever.

The deception spoken about here has in the main, to do with those who preach a different doctrine, as we are warned about in 1 Timothy 6: 3 – 5, as follows: ***'If anyone advocates a different doctrine, and does not agree with sound words, those of our Master Yahshua Messiah, and with the doctrine conforming to godliness* (religion), *(4) he is conceited and understands nothing; but he has a morbid interest in controversial questions and disputes about words* (such as: {a} when does the Sabbath start?, as was brought to the fore recently, i.e. does Sabbath Day mean day time only, or not?; and {b} when do you start counting the Omer from, not understanding that the word שַׁבָּת {Shabbat} in Hebrew simply means 'rest'), ***out of which arise envy, strife, abusive language, evil suspicions, (5) and constant friction between men of depraved mind and deprived of the truth, who suppose that godliness is a means of gain.'*** This is**

also talking about people who are selling their false doctrines by claiming payment for their teachings. We are told in the second part of Matthew 10: 8 ***“freely you received, freely give.”*** Even though the hard copies of the books that I produce and send out, cost money to print, and I do from time to time need support to be able to publish the gospel into the world, it is clear that we are not allowed to sell the teachings that we send out.

The deception also includes deceiving people to keep the Feast Days at different times, which will ultimately result in them not keeping the Feast of Trumpets (Yom Teruah or Rosh Hashanah) at Yahshua's return. As well as those who contradict the teachings of YHVH and Yahshua, by saying that YHVH is two/three, despite the fact that He categorically states in amongst other Deuteronomy 4: 39, that He is only One!; or by insisting that the cornerstone (or foundation) of the ecclesia is Peter (and the other Apostles), instead of Yahshua – thus also rejecting the *‘Stone which was rejected’* by our Jewish brothers, because they were blinded by YHVH, to allow Yahshua to be crucified for the sins of the world (as we see in 1 Corinthians 2: 8). But, also those who purposely hide the Set-apart names of YHVH and Yahshua; which leaves us with the questions raised by Rav Shaul in Romans 10: 13 & 14, namely: ***“for “WHOEVER WILL CALL UPON THE NAME OF YHVH WILL BE SAVED.” (14) How then shall they call upon Him in whom they have not believed? And how shall they believe in Him whom they have not heard? And how shall they hear without a preacher?***

The point is that many of those who deceive people as the agents of Satan are in fact teaching that Yahshua is the Messiah, as he warned in Matthew 24: 5. We read about the way in which this deception will take place in 2 Corinthians 11: 3, as follows: ***‘But I am afraid lest as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, your minds should be led astray from the simplicity and purity of devotion to Messiah.’*** These agents of Satan are called out believers, who were somehow in their walk, misled by Satan using one or all three the ways which he employs to deceive mankind, i.e. by means of the lust of the eyes; human reasoning; or vanity, as put in Genesis 3: 6, like this: ***‘When the woman saw that the tree was good for food (lust of the flesh), and that it was a delight to the eyes (human reasoning), and that the tree was desirable to make one wise (vanity), she took from its fruit and ate; and she gave also to her husband with her, and he ate.’***

The deception will be widespread as we see in Matthew 24: 11 where we read: ***“And many false prophets will arise and will mislead many.”*** Who will be these false prophets? We read in 2 Corinthians 11: 13 - 15, as follows: ***‘For such men are false apostles, deceitful workers, disguising themselves as apostles of Messiah. (14) And no wonder, for even Satan disguises himself as an angel of light. (15) Therefore it is not surprising if his servants also disguise themselves as servants of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their deeds.’*** This deception to win converts to help teaching falsehood will continue right up to the time when Yahshua will return, as we read in Matthew 24: 24, like this: ***“For false Messiahs and false prophets will arise and will show great signs and wonders, so as to mislead, if possible, even the elect.”*** Even so, we are told by Yahshua that despite all this deception, we need to continue to proclaim the gospel of the Kingdom of Elohim in verse 14 of Matthew 24, as follows: ***“And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in the whole world for a witness to all nations, and then the end shall come.”***

We see that besides the religious deception, the next seal that Yahshua breaks is spoken about in verses 3 & 4 of Revelation 6, in this way: ***‘And when He broke the second seal, I heard the second living creature saying, “Come.” (4) And another, a red horse, went out; and to him who sat on it, it was granted to take peace from the earth and that men should slay one another; and a great sword was given to him.’*** It is clear to see that the red horse represents war, and this is talking about ongoing wars that will ultimately escalate into world war three. Yahshua put it like this in Matthew 24: 6 & 7, ***‘And you will be hearing of wars and rumors of wars; see that you are not frightened, for those things must take place, but that is not the end. (7) For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom, and in various places there will be famines and earthquakes.’*** World War 1 started in 1914, and ended in 1918, killing millions of people. This was followed by World War II in 1939, during which even more people died. After world war two there were many other conflicts all over the world in which many lives were lost. We see according to the above prophesy that famines and earthquakes follow these wars, during which many lives are lost. In fact we have heard about many earthquakes since the last world war. We heard on the news recently of major flooding and earthquakes in Thailand and China and the countries surrounding it. Hundreds of people died. The world that we live in is a very dangerous and unstable place and the Scriptures tells us that it will get increasingly worse. Nevertheless, we read in verse 8 of Matthew 24, ***“But all these things are merely the beginning of birth pangs.”***

Yahshua warned about what is already beginning to happen in verse 9 of Matthew 24, as follows: ***“Then they will deliver you to tribulation, and will kill you, and you will be hated by all nations on account of***



**My name.”** a Christian group in Texas is currently trying to stop a sister organization of ours headed by Dr. James Trimm, from publishing the Hebrew Roots version of the Scriptures, by taking them to court in the state of Texas. Yes, people do not like the name of Yahshua our Messiah and will hate us for using it. We continue in verses 10 of Matthew 24, Yahshua saying: **“and at that time many will fall away and will deliver up one another and hate one another.”** Many people joined us over the past few years, but left because they got involved with other groups, who either preached what they wanted to hear or keep to a different calendar than what we do. We read a prophecy about those who accuse us of preaching hatred, in Isaiah 30: 9 & 10, as follows: **‘For this is a rebellious people, false sons, Sons who refuse to listen to the instruction of YHVH; (10) Who say to the seers, “You must not see visions”; and to the prophets, “You must not prophesy to us what is right, speak to us pleasant words, prophecy illusions.”’** Yahshua never said or did anything which YHVH did not want Him to say or do, as He told us in John 8: 29, **“And He who sent Me is with Me; He has not left Me alone, for I always do the things that are pleasing to Him.”** We as followers of Yahshua only preach what we read in the Scriptures. It is by studying the Scriptures that we get to clean up our lives. Some obviously do not like the truth as contained in the Scriptures, since we are told in Hebrews 4: 12, **‘For the word of Elohim is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword, and piercing as far as the division of soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow, and able to judge the thoughts and intentions of the heart.’** We follow Yahshua our Messiah and refuse to compromise by fellowshiping with those who believe in two Mighty Ones; or those who do not observe the Feast Days of Elohim according to the Hebrew calendar.

We read a further prophecy about the war that will result from the ever worsening conditions in the world in verse 14 of Ezekiel 21, as follows: **“You therefore, son of man, prophesy, and clap your hands together; and let the sword be doubled the third time, the sword for the slain. It is the sword for the great one slain, which surrounds them.”** This is talking about World War 3, and it is saying that the armaments to be used during this coming war, will be double as much as that used during world war II. People from Judah as well as many of us from the Israelite nations will again be put in concentration camps, where living conditions will be much worse than that during the last world war. The lack of productivity to produce food and services during war conditions will cause social unrest and major food shortages. In addition the victims of war will have very little in the way of medicines and antibiotics, and diseases and epidemics will run riot, causing millions more to die.

This takes us to the breaking of the third seal in Revelation 6: 5 & 6, as follows: **‘And when He broke the third seal, I heard the third living creature saying, “Come.” And I looked, and behold, a black horse (famine); and he who sat on it had a pair of scales in his hand. (6) And I heard as it were a voice in the center of the four living creatures saying, “A quart of wheat for a denarius, and three quarts of barley for a denarius; and do not harm the oil and the wine.”’** Famine is soon followed by pestilence as we read in verses 7 & 8 of Revelation 6, **‘And when He broke the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth living creature saying, “Come.” (8) And I looked, and behold, an ashen horse; and he who sat on it had the name Death; and Hades was following with him. And authority was given to them over a fourth of the earth, to kill with sword and with famine and with pestilence and by the wild beasts of the earth.’** This is talking about major disasters that will soon be facing us as human beings, as Yahshua foretold in Matthew 24: 21 & 22, like this: **“for then there will be a great tribulation, such as has not occurred since the beginning of the world until now, nor ever shall. (22) And unless those days had been cut short, no life would have been saved; but for the sake of the elect those days shall be cut short.”** Even though mankind will be on the brink of distinction, Elohim will intervene to save us from ourselves. We read accordingly in Daniel 12: 1, **“Now at that time Michael, the great prince who stands guard over the sons of your people, will arise. And there will be a time of distress such as never occurred since there was a nation until that time; and at that time your people, everyone who is found written in the book, will be rescued.”** Just in time the Master Yahshua shall deliver His followers from the wrath to come. We read in 1 Thessalonians 5: 9 the very comforting portion of Scriptures, as follows: **‘For Elohim has not destined us for wrath, but for obtaining salvation through our Master Yahshua Messiah.’** We read a second witness to this in Romans 5: 9 & 10, in this way: **‘Much more then, having now been justified by His blood, we shall be saved from the wrath of Elohim through Him. (10) For if while we were enemies, we were reconciled to Elohim through the death of His Son, much more, having been reconciled, we shall be saved by His life.’**

Many people will be caught by total surprise by the events that are about to happen, as we read in Matthew 24: 37 – 39, like this: **“For the coming of the Son of Man will be just like the days of Noah. (38) For as in those days which were before the flood they were eating and drinking, they were marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered the ark, (39) and they did not understand until the flood came and took them all away; so shall the coming of the Son of Man be.”** However, we who are called by YHVH and are following His ways should not be caught by surprise. Even though the Scriptures is clear that no one will know the exact time of Messiah’s return, both Rav Shaul and Yahshua our Messiah said that

His followers should be able to recognize the signs leading up to it. We read Rav Shaul's admonition in this regard in 1 Thessalonians 5: 1 – 6, as follows: ***'Now as to the times and the epochs, brethren, you have no need of anything to be written to you. (2) For you yourselves know full well that the day of YHVH will come like a thief in the night. (3) While they are saying, "Peace and safety!" then destruction will come upon them suddenly like birth pangs upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape. (4) But you, brethren are not in darkness, that the day should overtake you like a thief; (5) for you are sons of light and sons of day. We are not of night nor of darkness; (6) so then let us not sleep as others do, but let us be alert and sober.'*** In addition Yahshua warned in Luke 21: 34 – 36, saying: ***"Be on guard, that your hearts may not be weighted down with dissipation and drunkenness and the worries of life, and that day come on you suddenly like a trap; (35) for it will come upon all those who dwell on the face of the earth. (36) But keep on the alert at all times, praying in order that you may have the strength to escape these things that are about to take place, and to stand before the Son of Man."***

We need to keep studying the word of Elohim and praying, to remain spiritually prepared for the events soon to take place. Let's not sleep, but watch and pray to be ready for what is coming upon the earth and to meet our Master Yahshua Messiah, at His return!

## Chapter 29: Messiah?

Who or what is Messiah? Messiah is the English translation of the transliterated Hebrew title *'Mashiach'*, which means Anointed One. The word *'anointed'* in the ancient Hebrew civilization meant the chosen legal heir to become a king or priest, or both. Such a king or priest was consecrated during a formal procedure during which oil was poured upon his head from a ram's horn by a chosen servant of Elohim. A number of kings and priests of ancient Israel were anointed in this way, one of which was King David who was also called the anointed one. The Cruden's concordance under Messiah has: It means the expected king and deliverer of the Hebrews, who will free them from the yoke of aliens, and make them a great nation ruling over the entire world.

We see that before his fall, even Satan was known as the anointed one, as we read the words of YHVH through the prophet Ezekiel from Ezekiel 28: 14 – 16, as follows: ***"You were the anointed cherub (a high level angelic being) who covers, and I placed you there. You were on the set-apart mountain of Elohim; you walked in the midst of stones of fire.*** (This means that Satan was an administrator of Elohim's Kingdom in heaven, where there are stones of fire – this is not hell, as some would like us to believe<sup>40</sup>) (15) ***You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, until unrighteousness was found in you.*** (Satan being a spirit being sinned with full knowledge, and could not turn back) (16) ***By the abundance of your trade you were internally filled with violence, and you sinned; therefore I have cast you as profane from the mountain of Elohim and I have destroyed you O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire."*** YHVH did not destroy Lucifer but destroyed his position as the anointed cherub. He is now known as Satan and his angels are known as demons.

From a recent Haftarah portion we learnt that YHVH promised David that one of his heirs would sit on his throne forever (meaning into the everlasting kingdom). We read about this from a prophecy in Micah 5: 1 & 2, in this way: ***"Now muster yourselves in troops, daughter of troops; they have laid siege against us; with a rod they will smite the judge of Israel on the cheek. (2) "But as for you, Bethlehem Ephrathah, too little to be among the clans of Judah, from you One will go forth for Me to be a ruler in Israel. His goings forth are from long ago, from the days of eternity."*** This tells us that this son of David would be more than a mere man. In fact we see from Zechariah 14, that it would be Elohim Himself promised to come and rule us forever, as we read from verses 4, 5 & 9, ***'And in that day His feet will stand on the Mount of Olives, which is in front of Jerusalem on the east; and the Mount of Olives will be split in its middle from east to west by a very large valley, so that half of the mountain will move toward the north and the other half toward the south. (5) And you will flee by the valley of My mountains, for the valley of the mountains will reach to Azel; yes, you will flee just as you fled before the earthquake in the days of Uzziah king of Judah. Then YHVH, my Elohim, will come, and all the set-apart ones with Him! (9) And YHVH will be king over all the earth; in that day YHVH will be the only one and His name the only one.'*** The prophet prophesied that the Messiah would be an unusual being that would be both a son of David and Elohim himself. There are obviously many pagan fables like this, which Satan devised to deceive people, but they are all in error.

Even to this very day, Judah believes in the resurrection of the dead and the coming of a Messiah to rule the world from King David's throne. In fact they basically believe the good news of the coming kingdom of Elohim. Contrary to that, the majority of Christianity believe in the person of Messiah, but do not understand and believe the true gospel proclaimed by Him in Mark 1: 14 & 15, as follows: ***'And after John (the Immerser) had been taken into custody, Yahshua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of Elohim, (15) and saying, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of Elohim is at hand; repent and believe the gospel."*** So whilst Judah believes the true gospel, as well as in a Messiah who is coming to rule the world from Jerusalem, they are blinded to the identity of Yahshua the true Messiah. We know from reading Romans 11 and especially verse 32, that YHVH has blinded their minds to the identity of the true Messiah, until the fullness of the Gentiles (a remnant of those Israelites who lost their identity and now believe that they are Gentiles) have come in, at which time all Israel will be saved. After Yahshua's resurrection and ascension to heaven, most of Christianity became deceived due to false teachings as well as the false names that the Bible translators used, to hide the true name of YHVH our Elohim. They believed in a Savior who came to do away with His Father's Torah and as a result they are allowed to eat unclean meat, such as pork meat, crayfish, crabs and octopus (or calamari as they call it).

This is another reason why all Jews reject Jesus as the Messiah, because the Torah teaches against someone who is able to do signs and wonders, but who teaches against obedience to Elohim's Torah

---

<sup>40</sup> YHVH our Elohim is a consuming fire, as is recorded for us in Deuteronomy 4: 24, as follows: ***"For YHVH your Elohim is a consuming fire, a jealous Elohim."***

teachings, as we read from Deuteronomy 13: 1 - 3, in this way: ***“if a prophet or a dreamer of dreams arises among you and gives you a sign or a wonder, (2) and the sign or the wonder comes true, concerning which he spoke to you saying, ‘Let us go after other gods (whom you have not known) and let us serve them, (3) you shall not listen to the words of that prophet or that dreamer of dreams; for YHVH your Elohim is testing you to find out if you love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul.’”*** Understanding this commandment, makes it abundantly clear why we should not follow a savior who came to do away with the Torah teachings of Elohim. The mere fact that the words of a prophet or dreamer comes true, is not evidence enough that such a prophet or dreamer is legitimate at all. YHVH wants to see what we will do if we have alternative options. We should therefore be very suspicious of a ‘Messiah’ who teaches that the Torah is abolished. We read in verse 4 of Deuteronomy 13 that we should follow YHVH our Elohim, keep His commandments, listen to His voice (word), serve Him and cling to Him. We also read that the prophet or dreamer of dreams shall be put to death, because he has counseled rebellion against YHVH.

An added problem is clearly the name which Christianity assigned to the Savior. There is not one dependable source which agrees that the original name of our Savior was Jesus. Most authorities admit that the original name of our Savior was Yehoshua or the short form Yeshua, as used in the recent big screen movie entitled ‘*The Passion of the Cross*’ by Mel Gibson. We prefer to use the name Yahshua, because our Master Himself said that He came in His Father’s name in John 5: 43. We know from Psalm 68: 4 (KJV) the Jah or more correctly Yah (as there is no letter J in Hebrew) is the short form of our Father’s Name. This is also confirmed in the transliterated Hebrew word HalleluYah, which is translated in English as Praise Yah (or sometimes Hallelujah). It is strange that the transliterated name for the adversary namely Satan, is known as such in any language in the world today, but the name of our Savior is changed to Jesus, as some say to avoid confusion. It is common knowledge that names of people are not changed by translation, from one language or nation to another – Bill might be short for William, but the surname Clinton remains the same in any language, and even though it might be pronounced differently, Bill Clinton is known in the USA, Africa, Russia and throughout the world by that very name. The name of Benjamin Netanyahu, the Israeli Prime Minister is known by that name throughout the world. So should the original name given to our Savior by His parents, namely Yahshua be the same, even after the almost 2000 years since His ascension to heaven.

The Messiah had two great functions to perform. The first one was to reconcile His people to the Father, by redeeming us from the death penalty that we incurred by our sins. Secondly He will take up His throne to rule the earth from Jerusalem, for a thousand years. During the Messiah’s first advent He lived a perfect sinless life, as our kinsman redeemer in the form of a Jewish ‘man’, to die as a spotless lamb in substitution for the sins of the world. Yahshua was in the form of human flesh, yet He was the only ‘person’ ever born who lived His entire life without ever sinning. Rav Shaul wrote of the risen Messiah in Hebrews 4: 15, saying: ***‘For we do not have a high priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has been tempted in all things as we are, yet without sin.’*** As the Word, before his birth as a ‘human’, He inspired the prophet Isaiah to foretell the brutality that He as Messiah would suffer in Isaiah 53. When He returns one day He will put all enemies of righteousness under subjection to Him, and commence ruling as our King and High Priest. After Yahshua’s resurrection, He promised to return the nation of Israel to defend us against the nations, who will be out to destroy us. YHVH will come and save us, because He is Israel’s salvation or Savior, as we read from Exodus 15: 2 & 6, ***“YHVH is my strength and song, and He has become my salvation; this is my Elohim, and I will praise Him; My father’s Elohim and I will extol Him. (6) Thy right hand O YHVH, is majestic in power, Thy right hand, O YHVH shatters the enemy.”***

Our salvation is possible only through Yahshua our Messiah, as Peter wrote in Acts 4: 12 ***“And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name under heaven that has been given among men, by which we must be saved.”*** Yahshua of Nazareth, Elohim in the flesh, came and dwelt among us (see John 1: 14) He took upon himself our humanity and shared our grief’s and sorrows. In Hebrews 4: 15 we read: ***“For we do not have a high priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has been tempted in all things as we are, yet without sin.”*** As per Colossians 2: 13 & 14 Yahshua nailed our spiritual indebtedness or our note of guilt to His execution stake. He died clearing our names before YHVH, so that we might live. This is summed up in John 3: 16 ***“For Elohim so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.”*** We also read from Isaiah 7: 10 – 14, ***‘Then YHVH spoke again to Ahaz, saying, (11) “Ask a sign for yourself from YHVH your Elohim; make it deep as Sheol (the grave) or high as heaven.” (12) But Ahaz said, “I will not ask, nor will I test YHVH!” (13) Then he said, “Listen now, O house of David! Is it too slight a thing for you to try the patience of men, that you will try the patience of my Elohim as well? (14) ‘Therefore YHVH Himself will give you a sign; Behold, a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel.’”*** Here we have a further sign to the house of David and the tribe of Judah. The promised seed of David shall be Immanuel. We also see in Isaiah 8: 8 that Judah’s land is Immanuel’s land. It is as Rabbi Nydle wrote in a recent paper entitled: ‘LOOK A MAIDEN CONCEIVES...’, *‘The Messiah shall be*

*introduced on a glorious errand, wrapped up in His glorious name: They shall call His name Immanuel – El with us, Elohim at shalom with us, in covenant with us. This was fulfilled in their calling Him Yahshua – Yahweh’s Salvation (Mt. 1: 21 – 25), for if He had not been Immanuel- El with us. He could not have been Yahshua.’*

In Elohim’s plan of salvation we must be justified and be reconciled with Him. Justification is more than receiving (YHVH)’s pardon for our sins, although it includes that. YHVH rescues us from our sin and enables us to love and obey Him through the power of His Set-apart Spirit. The sacrifice of Yahshua expresses Elohim’s mercy, by which He removes our sin and lifts the death penalty. Without Yahshua’s sacrifice and Elohim’s mercy, we are in bondage to sin. Sin separates us from Elohim and creates a wall that must be breached by His favor. Elohim’s plan of salvation requires that sin be condemned. We read in Romans 8: 3 that YHVH by **“sending His own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and as an offering for sin, He condemned sin in the flesh.”** Rav. Shaul wrote to the Ephesians (in Ephesians. 2: 5), that even when they **“were dead in trespasses”** or sins, Elohim made them **“alive together with Messiah.”** At one time, due to sin, we were as if dead – though still alive in the flesh. The people whom YHVH has justified, whilst being subject to death, are as good as being alive eternally. Justification is what reconciles us to YHVH our Elohim. Justification brings us into an intimate relationship with YHVH. Rav. Shaul said in Romans 5: 1 that those in such a relationship, **“Having been justified by faith, we have peace with Elohim through our Master Yahshua Messiah.”**

We are according to Romans 3: 28 **“justified by faith apart from the deeds of the law.”** But, if we belong to YHVH, we will seek to please Him. We did not earn His favor; it is a gift to us. Rav. Shaul wrote in Titus 3: 4 & 5 that justification comes through **“the kindness of Elohim our Savior and His love for mankind appeared, He saved us, not on the basis of deeds which we have done in righteousness, but according to His favor, by the washing of regeneration and the renewing by the Set-apart Spirit.”** Once YHVH calls us and we respond with trust and obedience, He makes us His sons and daughters, as we read from 1 John 3: 1 – 2, **“See how great a love the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called children of Elohim; and such we are. For this reason the world does not know us, because it did not know HIM. Beloved, now we are children of Elohim, and it has not appeared as yet what we shall be. We know that, when He appears, we shall be like Him, because we shall see Him just as He is.”**

Once YHVH has granted us His favor, He remains faithful, even if we occasionally stumble. The account of the Prodigal Son shows that if we are Elohim’s children, even if we fall short, we are still His children. He does not want to condemn us, but expects the wayward ones to come to themselves, and return to Him. If we are humble when we return as in the example of the Prodigal Son, He will receive us back with great joy. Once YHVH saves us, we become His children forever and He will work with us until we are fully united with Him at our resurrection. This is confirmed in Philippians 1: 6 as follows: **“For I am confident of this very thing, that He who began a good work in you will perfect it until the day of Messiah Yahshua.”**

The imminent reality of Elohim’s plan of salvation occurs at Yahshua Messiah’s return and the resurrection of the dead. That is the time when the transformation from mortal to immortality will happen. Messiah’s own resurrection is the assurance of Elohim’s promise to us. Messiah promised that everyone who believes in Him will have everlasting life and as per John 6: 40 Yahshua says: **“I will raise him up at the last day.”** Rav Shaul explains in 1 Thessalonians 4: 14 **“For if we believe that Yahshua died and rose again, even so Elohim will bring with Him those who sleep in Messiah.”** The resurrection will only occur when Yahshua returns. We wait and hope for that day, as did Rav Shaul when he wrote in 2 Timothy 4: 7 & 8 **“I have fought the good fight, I have finished the course, I have kept the faith; in the future there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which Yahshua, the righteous Judge, will award to me on that day; and not only to me, but also to all who have loved His appearing.”** If we are Elohim’s children, we will focus our lives around Yahshua Messiah. As Rav Shaul stressed in Philippians 3: 12 -14 **“Not that I have already obtained it, or have already become perfect, but I press on in order that I may lay hold of that for which also I was laid hold of by Messiah Yahshua. Brethren, I do not regard myself as having laid hold of it yet; but one thing I do: forgetting what lies behind and reaching forward to what lies ahead, I press on toward the goal for the prize of the upward call in Yahshua Messiah.”** The prize as we know is eternal life. In Revelation 21 in the last part of verse 6 and 7 YHVH tells us our destiny: **“I will give to the one who thirsts from the spring of water of life without cost. He who overcomes shall inherit these things and I will be his Elohim and he will be MY son.”**

Even though we are now children of Elohim, we are not glorified yet. Our existing physical bodies must be changed if we are to live eternally. Our physical bodies must be replaced with spiritual bodies to become immortal so that we may live eternally. This is confirmed in 1 Corinthians 15: 53 **“For the perishable must put on the imperishable and the mortal must put on immortality.”** Our final change will only occur when

Yahshua returns. Rav. Shaul explains in Philippians 3: 20 & 21 ***“For our citizenship is in heaven, from which also we eagerly wait for the Savior Yahshua Messiah; who will transform the body of our humble state into conformity with the body of His esteem, by the exertion of the power that He has even to subject all things to Himself.”*** We who trust and obey YHWH already have our citizenship in heaven; however we eagerly wait for the return of Yahshua our Savior. Every individual called by Elohim is waiting for the return of Messiah. This will be the time of the resurrection of the righteous dead to eternal life. It is Yahshua our Messiah who will open the graves at His return. Speaking of individuals who has been faithful to the calling of the Father, Yahshua said in John 5: 26 – 29 ***“For just as the Father has life in Himself, even so He gave to the Son also to have life in Himself, (27) and He gave Him authority to execute judgment, because He is the Son of Man. (28) Do not marvel at this: for an hour is coming, in which all who are in the tombs shall hear His voice. (29) and shall come forth; those who did the good deeds to a resurrection of life, those who committed evil deeds to a resurrection of judgment.”***

The disciples were standing with the resurrected Messiah on the Mount of Olives. As they watched Him disappear in the clouds, two men in white clothing appeared besides them, saying, in Acts 1: 11: ***“Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into the sky? This Yahshua, who has been taken up from you into heaven, will come in just the same way as you have watched Him go into heaven.”*** Yahshua will return at a time when the world will be experiencing the great tribulation. He will come to save us from ourselves. It will be a time of great crises and world war, as we read in Revelation 11: 18 ***“And the nations were enraged, and Thy wrath came, and the time came for the dead to be judged, and the time to give their reward to Thy bond-servants the prophets and to the saints and to those who fear Thy name, the small and the great, and to destroy those who destroy the earth.”*** The nations will not welcome the return of Yahshua; they will fight against Him as we read from Revelation 17: 14, as follows: ***“These will wage war against the Lamb, and the Lamb will overcome them, because He is Master of Masters and King of Kings, and those who are with Him are the called and chosen and faithful.”*** The saints made immortal – will rule with Messiah on the earth as is recorded in Revelation 5: 10, ***“And Thou hast made them to be a kingdom and priests to our Elohim; and they will reign upon the earth.”***

Even so, why doesn't everyone on earth understand these truths? Are they to be lost? The answer is a resounding no! Prior to the death and resurrection of Yahshua, only a few individuals were chosen to perform special responsibilities. Their accounts have been recorded in the Tanach: They were such people as Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Sarah, Moses, Deborah, Samuel, David, Isaiah, Ester and a few others. The uncounted numbers from Adam to Messiah were not yet given an opportunity for salvation. During the time from Messiah's resurrection, ascension and second coming, Elohim has been calling only a selected few to be part of His elect, or first fruits. These are known as the remnant according to Elohim's gracious choice as per Romans 11: 5 – 7. The rest were hardened – meaning simply that they lack the Set-apart Spirit as a gift of Elohim. Elohim has purposed that only a comparatively few individuals should be part of His called out ones.

However, that will all change when the Word returns as the Messiah and King. With Satan out of the way, Messiah will remove spiritual blindness and all people will have an opportunity to be saved. Then again after the second resurrection YHWH will open the minds of those who never had a chance to get to know Messiah, as Yahshua opened the understanding of His disciples, after His resurrection, as we read from Luke 24: 45, ***‘Then He opened their minds to understand the Scriptures.’*** That will allow all those who died without coming to the knowledge of Elohim, to have the opportunity to make an informed decision, as to whether they want to follow the way of Elohim or not. Those who continue to rebel will simply be burned to become ashes under the feet of the righteous (as we read from Malachi 4: 1 – 3), after which everything that can still burn, will be destroyed by fire. Finally the New Jerusalem will come down from heaven, and Elohim will come and tabernacle among us, and He will be our Elohim and we will be His people forever. HalleluYah!

## Chapter 30: Rebellion.

The Scriptures are full of examples for us to either follow, or to avoid. Yahshua our Messiah, the very image of Elohim, came to leave those of us called by Elohim a perfect example of how to live, as we read from 1 Peter 2: 21, ***'For you have been called for this purpose, since Messiah also suffered for you, leaving you an example for you to follow in His steps.'*** Similarly our forefathers, the ancient Israelites, called to come out of Egypt, left us various examples, what not to do, as we read from 1 Corinthians 10: 1 - 6, ***'For I do not want you to be unaware, brethren, that our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea; (2) and all were immersed into Moses in the cloud and in the sea;*** (all of them were like us also immersed) ***(3) and all ate the same spiritual food;*** (they were taught the same lessons that we are taught today) ***(4) and all drank the same spiritual drink, for they were drinking from a spiritual rock which followed them; and that rock was Messiah.*** (so like us they also were in touch with Messiah) ***(5) Nevertheless, with most of them Elohim was not well-pleased; for they were laid low in the wilderness.*** ***(6) Now these things happened as examples for us, that we should not crave evil things, as they also craved.'***

As we study the annual Torah portions from one year to another, YHVH wants us to slowly but surely learn, not to follow the examples left us by our ancient Israelite forefathers, during their forty years of wandering in the wilderness. The question is: do we learn from these examples, or do we like our Christian brothers, think and say; *'all we have to do is, believe'*, without fully understanding what it means to believe. We read from Hebrews 3: 12 – 19, ***'Take care brethren, lest there should be in any one of you an evil, unbelieving heart, in falling away from the living Elohim. (13) But encourage one another day after day; as long as it is still called "Today," lest anyone of you be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin. (14) For we have become partakers of Messiah, if we hold fast the beginning of our assurance firm until the end; (15) while it is said, "TODAY IF YOU HEAR HIS VOICE, DO NOT HARDEN YOUR HEARTS, AS WHEN THEY PROVOKED ME." (16) For who provoked Him when they had heard? Indeed, did not all those who come out of Egypt led by Moses? (17) And with who was He angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose bodies fell in the wilderness? (18) And to whom did He swear that they should not enter His rest, but to those who were disobedient? (19) And so we see that they were not able to enter because of unbelief.'***

But before we start examining the reasons for our forefathers not making it into the Promised Land, we need to consider a related matter. From reading the Scriptures, most of us understand that YHVH calls those whom He wants to teach His people. Most of the teachers and prophets who taught ancient Israel did not want to become teachers or prophets, but because YHVH required someone to warn His people about their sins, or a coming calamity, He persuaded men like Jeremiah and others to do His work. Similarly it was never my intention to step forward and start teaching Elohim's people. When the group with which we were affiliated for twenty five years, started changing their doctrines from keeping the weekly and annual Sabbaths, as well as to stop being concerned about eating only kosher food, my wife and I decided that we will continue following the way of Elohim, as we knew that, that was our only option. We started keeping the Sabbath and Feast Days ordained by Elohim on our own. In doing so we have become even more Torah observant over the past 10 years; In fact today we believe that we should keep all of the Torah teachings of Elohim, in line with what Yahshua said in Matthew 5: 17 – 20, and especially in verse 19, as follows: ***"Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments (such as the wearing of Tzitzit, or not to cook and serve meat and milk products together), and so teaches others, shall be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven."*** At first we received teaching materials from various Two House Israelite Groups. We also obtained additional study and teaching material from such Webpages as: [www.nephos.com](http://www.nephos.com); [www.revelations.org.za](http://www.revelations.org.za); [www.2house.org](http://www.2house.org); [www.fan.net.au](http://www.fan.net.au); [www.tnnonline.net](http://www.tnnonline.net); [www.teshuvah.com](http://www.teshuvah.com); [www.aish.com](http://www.aish.com); [www.chabad.org](http://www.chabad.org); [www.mesora.org](http://www.mesora.org); [www.zyworld.com](http://www.zyworld.com); [www.hebroots.org](http://www.hebroots.org); [www.wildbranch.org](http://www.wildbranch.org); and others. However over the past five years or so, I had to start preparing our own sermon material, because we could not afford getting teaching tapes and CD's from mainly the USA any longer, since I had to go on early retirement and money became scarcer.

About a year before my retirement I started writing our weekly sermon material, as well as some material for the annual Feast Days of Elohim. I must honestly say, that I never thought in my wildest dreams that I would be preparing these weekly teachings for our congregations. But then we have enough evidence in the Scriptures, telling us that we cannot sit and listen to sermons given by others for the rest of our lives, without eventually becoming teachers ourselves. It is as our Master Yahshua the Messiah said in Luke 6: 40, ***"A pupil is not above his teacher; but everyone, after he has been fully trained, will be like his teacher."*** This was confirmed by Rav Shaul, where he admonish the ecclesia to stop arguing about the elementary principles of the Oracles of Elohim, such as when does the Sabbath start; the timing of the Feast Days of Elohim; kosher food and the like in Hebrews 5: 12, as follows: ***'For though by this time (after you have been***

in the ecclesia of called-out believers for a number of years) ***you ought to be teachers, you have need again for someone to teach you the elementary principles of the oracles of Elohim, and you have come to need milk and not solid food.***’ Even though this is talking about those who are forever quarrelling about basic doctrines, Rav Shaul is telling us that after having been in the ecclesia for a while, we need to mature and get to know and practice the more meaty tenets of our faith, in order to eventually become teachers to teach new believers about the things we learnt from those who came before us.

The reality of the matter is that we are only able and ready to teach when YHVH thinks so. I did not want to be a teacher of Torah, but had to stand up and be counted, for our ecclesia to continue. In addition we did not always agree with the teachings that we received from some teachers; especially those who taught against those commandments mentioned earlier, which they do not regard as binding upon them any longer. We see that most of those of us who eventually started teaching in the ecclesia of Elohim, did so because of necessity, and not because we wanted to or appointed ourselves above anyone else. We read consequently from Ephesians 4: 10 – 16, ***‘He who descended is Himself also He who ascended far above all the heavens, that He might fill all things. (11) And He gave some apostles, and some as prophets, and some as evangelists, and some as pastors and teachers’<sup>41</sup>, (12) for the equipping of the saints for the work of service, to the building up of the body of Messiah; (13) until we all attain to the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of Elohim, to a mature man, to the measure of the stature which belongs to the fullness of Messiah. (14) As a result, we are no longer to be children, tossed here and there by waves, and carried about by every wind of doctrine, by the trickery of men, by craftiness in deceitful scheming; (15) but speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in all aspects into Him, who is the head, even Messiah, (16) from whom the whole body being fitted and held together by that which every joint supplies, according to the proper working of each individual part, causes the growth of the body for the building up of itself in love.’***

Now if what I taught over the past five years is a load of rubbish, then I will agree that it all came from myself. I wrote four books containing 112 doctrinal sermons; commentaries to the 54 Torah; haftarah; and Renewed Covenant portions as well as the latest book, entitled: ‘Nazarene Judaism.’ When reading some of the material that I wrote, I realize that very little of what I wrote came from me personally. Often times, when I sat down typing, I was so inspired that I could not type fast enough to get what was in my mind onto the paper. Elohim inspired a great deal of what I wrote down – this is not me bragging about being more ‘spiritual’ than anyone else. To the contrary, I can assure you that I cannot write such material on my own! The same goes for people like Eddie Chumney, Rob Miller, Ovadyah Avrahami, Yair Davidy and others whom Elohim inspired to teach us. My main aim and I am sure that of those mentioned here, is to unite the remnant of the lost ten tribes and Judah, and to foster unity amongst the people of Elohim. I certainly do not want any tithes and offerings from the people that I teach, as I stated in most of the books that I wrote. However, I would like all of those who read these books, to help me get the material out into the hands of as many people as is possible, in order to fulfill the commission given us by Yahshua our Messiah in Matthew 24 : 14 and Matthew 28: 18 – 20. We are all responsible to proclaim the gospel of the kingdom of Elohim into the entire world, as a witness, before the end will come.

Having said that, let’s now turn to one of the Torah portions that we read during this past year, to see what we should not do – if we want to qualify to enter the kingdom of Elohim. One of the instances that we studied during the past year was about Korah’s rebellion. If you recall, Korah questioned the leadership of Moses and Aaron, the two people whom YHVH chose to lead Israel. We know the end result was that the earth opened and swallowed Korah and the 250 men with him. Fire also came forth and consumed them. We might not in this day and age be destroyed by YHVH in the same way that He did Korah and the 250 with him, but we see that the wicked are warned of a similar fate in Malachi 4: 1, as follows: ***“For behold, the day is coming, burning like a furnace; and all the arrogant and every evildoer will be chaff; and the day that is coming will set them ablaze,” says YHVH of hosts, “so that it will leave them neither root nor branch.”*** We read further in verses 2 & 3 of Malachi 4, what will happen to those who fear the name of YHVH enough to do what is required of them, as follows: ***“But for you who fear (revere) My name the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings; and you will go forth and skip about like calves from the stall. (3) And you will tread down the wicked, for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet on the day which I am preparing,” says YHVH of hosts.’***

Korah and his followers were all chosen in the assembly; men of renown who challenged the authority of Moses and Aaron, saying to them in verse 3 of Numbers 16, ***“You have gone far enough, for all the***

---

<sup>41</sup> One of the requirements of a leader in the ecclesia is that such a person should be apt to teach – apart from having been the Executive Information Officer at P E Technikon and the Senior Business Analyst at Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University; I also lectured Management Information Systems and Computer Science.



**congregation are holy** (set-apart), **every one of them, and YHVH is in their midst; so why do you exalt yourselves above the assembly of YHVH?** Obviously Moses was shocked to hear Korah's accusation and therefore challenged Korah and his followers to a test to prove their authority, by letting Elohim choose the appropriate leader for the congregation. In verse 12 - 15 of Numbers 16, we read, **'Then Moses sent a summons to Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab; but they said, "We will not come up. (13) Is it not enough that you have brought us up out of the land flowing with milk and honey to have us die in the wilderness, but you would lord it over us? (14) Indeed, you have not brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey, nor have you given us an inheritance of fields and vineyards. Would you put out the eyes of these men? We will not come up!'** At this point Moses really became angry, and said to YHVH in verse 15, **"Do not regard their offering! I have not taken a single donkey from them, nor have I done harm to any of them."** Moses also instructs Korah and his men to take firepans and put incense on it, and tell them to each bring a censor before YHVH. He also told Aaron to do likewise.

The next morning Korah assembled the entire congregation at the doorway of the tent of meeting. Then YHVH spoke to Moses and Aaron saying (in verse 21): **"Separate yourselves from among this congregation, that I may consume them instantly."** So Moses and Aaron fell on their faces, saying to YHVH (in verse 22): **"O Elohim, Thou Elohim of the spirits of all flesh, when one man sins, wilt Thou be angry with the entire congregation?"** Next YHVH tells Moses to move the congregation away from Korah and his men. Moses obeys YHVH and said to the congregation in verse 28 - 30 of Numbers 16, **"By this you shall know that YHVH has sent me to do all these deeds; for this is not my doing. (29) If these men die the death of all men, or if they suffer the fate of all men, then YHVH has not sent me. (30) But if YHVH brings about an entirely new thing and the ground opens its mouth and swallow them up with all that is theirs, and they descend alive into Sheol, then you will understand that these men have spurned YHVH."** When Moses finished speaking, the earth opened up and swallowed Korah and his men, with all their households and their possessions. The nation fled at the outcry of Korah and his cohorts and then fire also came forth from YHVH and consumed the two hundred and fifty men who were offering the incense. After this YHVH told Moses to tell Eleazar the son of Aaron, that he should take up the censers out of the midst of the fire as they are set-apart. In addition Moses told him to take the censers and let them be made into hammered sheets for a plating of the altar, since they are set-apart and shall be a sign to the sons of Israel. Eleazar obeyed and made an altar as a reminder to the sons of Israel that no layman who is not of the descendants of Aaron, should come near to burn incense before YHVH, that he might not become like Korah and his company – just as YHVH had spoken to him through Moses. Like I said in Torah portion Shemini, we should not ever burn incense before YHVH.

However, this initial outburst triggered another challenge from the sons of Israel, when they grumbled against Moses and Aaron, saying in verse 41 of Numbers 16, **"You are the ones who have caused the death of (YHVH)'s people."** Next the congregation assembled against Moses and Aaron, and they turned to the tent of meeting. Afterward the cloud covered the tent of meeting and the glory of Elohim appeared. When Moses and Aaron came to the tent of meeting YHVH spoke to Moses saying that they should get away from the congregation, so that He may consume the entire congregation. But, Moses instructed Aaron to quickly take his censor and put fire from the altar in it and burn incense on it, thus making atonement for the congregation, for the wrath of Elohim has gone forth from YHVH and a plague started. Aaron did as Moses told him and took his stand between the dead and the living, and so the plague was checked. However, we see that 14700, besides Korah and his men, died by the plague, because of their rebellion.

Continuing in Numbers 17, we see that YHVH has now gained the attention of the entire nation, He tells Moses to take the rods of all the leaders according to their father's households and write their names on their rods. YHVH also tells Moses to write Aaron's name on the rod of Levi. Then YHVH tells Moses to deposit the rods in the tent of meeting, saying that it will come about that the rod of the man whom YHVH chooses will sprout. Moses did as YHVH told him and the next day, he saw that Aaron's staff not only sprouted buds, but also bear flowers and almonds. Moses brought the rods out in the presence of YHVH showing it to all the sons of Israel. Each man took his rod, but YHVH instructed Moses to put Aaron's rod before the Ark to bear testimony, to be kept against the rebels that they may put an end to their grumbings against YHVH, so that they should not die. This is in support of Malachi 2: 2 – 8, where YHVH through Malachi tells us, that the Levites, who are among Judah today, are still in control of the timing of His Feast Days.

This should also serve as a warning to those of us whom YHVH has called out of the world, to follow Him, not to entertain thoughts of rebellion against Him and His will for us. As much as Yahshua chose His own disciples, we know that one of them were chosen to betray Him. Similarly are some who follow Him, appointed for condemnation, as may be deduced from the parable of the dragnet recorded in Matthew 13: 47 – 51, as follows: **"Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a dragnet cast into the sea, and gathering fish of every kind; (48) and when it was filled, they drew it up on the beach; and they sat down, and gathered the good fish into containers, but the bad they threw away. (49) So it will be at the end of**

**the age; the angels shall come forth and take out the wicked from among the righteous, (50) and will cast them into the furnace of fire; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.**" An explanation of this may be read in Jude verses 3 & 4, as follows: **"Beloved, while I was making every effort to write you about our common salvation, I felt the necessity to write to you appealing that you contend earnestly for the faith which was once for all delivered to the saints** (called out believers). (4) **For certain persons have crept in unnoticed, those who were long beforehand marked out for this condemnation, ungodly persons who turn the grace of our Elohim into licentiousness and deny** (contradict) **our only Master Yahshua Messiah.** Rav Shaul puts it like this in 1 Corinthians 11: 19, **'For there must also be factions among you, in order that those who are approved may have become evident among you.'** A point to remember is that the Israelites were at that time observing the Sabbaths (weekly and annual), the kosher food laws and the other commandments of Elohim. Rav Shaul wrote about them in Romans 9: 31 - 33, as follows: **'but Israel pursuing a law of righteousness, did not arrive at that law. (32) Why? Because they did not pursue it by faith, but as though it were by works. They stumbled over the stumbling stone, (33) just as it is written, "BEHOLD, I LAY IN ZION A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENSE, AND HE WHO BELIEVES IN HIM WILL NOT BE DISAPPOINTED.'** Rav Kepha (Peter) talking about Yahshua says in 1 Peter 2: 8, **'and, "A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENSE"; for they stumble because they are disobedient to the word, and to this doom they were also appointed.'** It is sad to say that many of those called by Elohim at this time, are even now stumbling over Yahshua our Messiah, the very corner stone upon which the ecclesia is built.

Jude warns us about the great falling away that started even during the time of the apostles and will continue right up to the time when Yahshua our Messiah returns to rule us from Jerusalem. We see from verse 4, quoted before that ungodly (profane) people who turn the grace of Elohim, into licentiousness, denying or more correctly contradicting both YHVH and Yahshua, have crept into the body of believers, who were like Judas Iscariot, marked out for condemnation. But how do they contradict YHVH and Yahshua, might you ask? Yahshua Himself answered this question in John 5: 43 – 47, saying: **"I have come in My Father's name, and you do not receive Me; if another shall come in his own name, you will receive him"**<sup>42</sup>. (44) **How can you believe, when you receive glory** (or honor) **from one another, and you do not seek the glory that is from the one and only Elohim?** (45) **Do not think that I will accuse you before the Father; the one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have set your hope.** (Yes, Yahshua was talking to the Jews of His day here, but is also talking to us, His modern day ecclesia of called-out believers.) (46) **For if you believe Moses, you would believe Me; for he wrote of Me.** (47) **But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe My words?"** Yahshua confirmed that if we do not believe the Torah that Moses wrote down and in him personally (as YHVH said to him in Exodus 19: 9); we will not believe what Yahshua taught.

We continue reading from verses 5 - 8 of Jude, like this: **'Now I desire to remind you, though you know all things once for all, that YHVH, after saving a people out of the land of Egypt, subsequently destroyed those who did not believe. (6) And angels who did not keep their own domain, but abandoned their proper abode** (see Isaiah 14: 12), **He has kept in eternal bonds under darkness for the judgment of the great day** (see Revelation 20: 10). (7) **Just as Sodom and Gomorah and the cities around them, since they in the same way as these indulged in gross immorality and went after strange flesh, are exhibited as an example, in undergoing the punishment of eternal fire.** (the results of the fire is permanent – but because flesh and blood is physical it will only burn until it is reduced to ash) (8) **Yet in the same manner these men, also by dreaming, defile the flesh, and reject authority, and revile majesties.'** Even though these people who sow discontent among us, do not actually commit divination, or idolatry, YHVH said to King Saul, through Samuel, in First Samuel 15: 23, **"For rebellion is as the sin of divination, and insubordination is as iniquity and idolatry."** They are therefore guilty of such sins.

Still talking about those who crept in unnoticed to turn us away from the truth, Jude writes in verse 10, **'But these men revile the things which they do not understand; and the things which they know by instinct, like unreasoning animals, by these things they are destroyed.'** This is talking about such things as the mystery of our faith, which we read about in First Timothy 3: 9 & 16: that is, that Elohim was revealed in the flesh as Yahshua. Continuing from verse 11 of Jude, we read: **'Woe to them! For they have gone the way of Cain** (full of hatred), **and for pay they have rushed headlong into the error of Balaam** (determined to curse Elohim's people because of greed, they continue to teach falsehood for payment), **and perished in**

<sup>42</sup> An example of such a contradiction is where Yahshua said that He will be in the grave for three days and three nights, like Jonah was in the belly of the fish for three full days and three full nights, yet very few believe Him today, evidenced by their belief that He was buried on a Friday afternoon at sunset and raised from the grave on Sunday morning – only one and a half days later. A second example is where we read from Deuteronomy 4: 3, **"To you it was shown that you might know that YHVH, He is Elohim; there is no other besides Him."** If after reading this Scriptural witness, those who insist that there are two (YHVH)'s contradicting YHVH Himself.

***the rebellion of Korah.***’ The rebellion spoken about here has to do with our Feast Days, as we read from verse 12, in this way: ***‘These men are those who are hidden reefs in your love feasts*** (the Feast days of Elohim, which we keep because we obey Him from the heart) ***when they feast with you without fear, caring for themselves; clouds without water, carried along by winds; autumn trees without fruit, doubly dead, uprooted.***’ The people spoken about here are double-minded and will keep the Feast days of Elohim with you one year, but will follow different Feast days the next year – blown around by every wind of doctrine.

We all understand that the way of Elohim is a way of giving and sharing, as opposed to that of Satan and the world - which is in essence a way of get. We notice from the very first verse about Korah in Numbers 16: 1, that Korah *‘took’*. He was one of those people in the world who are simply out to get, usually something that they don’t have. I am certain that most of us know people in both categories mentioned – people who are jealous of the property or the ability that Elohim gave to others. Korah was much like Satan, who rebelled against YHVH, when He wanted to make himself like the most High, as is recorded in Isaiah 14: 12 – 14. Let us determine not to contradict the word of Elohim, or like Satan who influenced a third of the angels to follow him in his rebellion against Elohim and His servants.

## **Chapter 31: Time is getting short.**

Most of us who believe in the two house doctrine, are aware that the prophecy in Deuteronomy 30: 1 - 8 is specifically aimed at us, the modern day descendants of the lost ten tribes of Israel, as follows: ***“So it shall be when all these things have come upon you, the blessings and the curse which I have set before you, and you call them to mind in all nations where YHVH your Elohim has banished you, (2) and you return to YHVH your Elohim and obey Him with all your heart and soul according to all that I command you today, you and your sons, (3) then YHVH your Elohim will restore you from captivity, and have compassion on you, and will gather you again from all the peoples where YHVH your Elohim has scattered you. (4) If your outcasts are at the ends of the earth, from there YHVH your Elohim will gather you, and from there He will bring you back. (5) And YHVH your Elohim will bring you into the land which your fathers possessed, and you shall possess it; and He will prosper you and multiply you more than your fathers. (6) Moreover YHVH your Elohim will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, in order that you may live. (7) And YHVH your Elohim will inflict all these curses on your enemies and on those who hate you, who persecuted you. (8) And you shall again obey YHVH, and observe all His commandments which I command you today.”***

The punishment meted out to the lost ten tribes of Israel is about to escalate to a crescendo, at which time Yahshua will intervene to cut it short, for the elects sake, as is recorded in Matthew 24: 22. We come to understand that the punishment meted out to the house of Israel was to last for 390 years times 7, or 2730 years, when we compare the prophecy in Ezekiel 4 with Leviticus 26: 27 – 28. The nation of Israel was taken into captivity by the Assyrians during the years 721 – 718 BCE, and by adding the 2730 years of punishment to the years between 721 – 718 BCE, we arrive at the time during which we live today, namely between 2009 and 2012 CE. The great tribulation already started with the financial downturn during 2009 and things are going to escalate to the extent that Yahshua warned us about in Matthew 24: 21, as follows: ***‘For then there will be a great tribulation, such as has not occurred since the beginning of the world until now, nor ever shall.’*** We are so close brethren; yet no one but our heavenly Father knows when the end will come.

We read Jeremiah’s warning about our time, in Jeremiah 16: 9 – 16, in this way: ***‘For thus says YHVH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel: “Behold, I am going to eliminate from this place, before your eyes and in your time, the voice of rejoicing and the voice of gladness, the voice of the groom and the voice of the bride. (10) Now it will come about when you tell this people all these words that they will say to you, ‘For what reason has YHVH declared all this great calamity against us? And what is our iniquity, or what is our sin which we have committed against YHVH our Elohim?’ (11) Then you are to say to them, ‘It is because your forefathers have forsaken Me,’ declares YHVH, ‘and have followed other gods and served them and bowed down to them; but Me they have forsaken and have not kept My law. (Our forefathers taught us about a god who came to abolish Torah; to keep pagan festivals such as Xmas and Easter and to attend worship services on Sundays.) (12) ‘You too have done evil, even more than your forefathers; for behold, you are each one walking according to the stubbornness of his own evil heart, without listening to Me. (Even some of those of us called out during this time continue to contradict YHVH and our Master Yahshua, in that they believe in two (YHVH)’s and persist to working out their own Feast Day calendar.) (13) So I will hurl you out of this land into the land which you have not known, neither you nor your fathers; and there you will serve other gods day and night, for I shall grant you no favor.’ (This happened when Israel was taken captive by the Assyrians during 721 – 718BCE) (14) Therefore behold, days are coming,” declares YHVH, “when it will no longer be said, ‘As YHVH lives, who brought up the sons of Israel out of the land of Egypt,’ (15) but, ‘As YHVH lives, who brought up the sons of Israel from the land of the north and from all the countries where He had banished them,’ For I will restore them to their own land which I gave to their fathers.’ (16) “Behold, I am going to send many fishermen,” declares YHVH, “and they will fish for them; and afterwards I shall send for many hunters, and they will hunt them from every mountain and every hill, and from the clefts of the rocks.”***

During the early part of the last century there were religious groups, who started identifying some of the lost ten tribes of Israel. As time went on, the identity of the various nations making up the lost ten tribes became clearer. Today since the late 1990’s, there are groups and even Jewish Rabbis in Israel who agree with and have in fact provided an even clearer opinion on the identity of the lost ten tribes. One source from Israel tells us that the descendants of the lost ten tribes are to be found throughout the world, but mainly amongst the so-called ‘gentile’ peoples of Northwest Europe, North America, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa. The Jews in Israel and those in the Diaspora are mainly descended from the tribe of Judah. The early Israelites are proven to have migrated to the west and over many years formed the nations of France, Holland, Belgium, Denmark, Switzerland, Norway, Sweden, Finland, the USA, Great Britain, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa. The most prominent tribes were Ephraim and Manasseh, the

descendants of Joseph's two sons, and are mainly to be found in the present day English-speaking nations; the tribe of Reuben became the forefather of the French; Benjamin the forefather of Belgium; Zebulon the forefather of the Dutch; Asher gave rise to the Scots; Issachar the Swiss; Dan contributed to the Welsh and Irish and fathered the Danes and so on. Issachar was dominating in Switzerland and Zebulon in Holland, but groups of both tribes were found in each country. The Scots and the Jews are amongst the most intelligent people in the world and many scientific breakthroughs may be attributed to both these groups.

By preaching and identifying the members of the different tribes, YHVH essentially provided fishermen to prepare the different members of the 10 lost tribes, who were interested to return to their Hebrew roots. This happened very slowly over the past fifty years or so, but started speeding up since 1995. The whole purpose of slowly but surely making people aware of their Hebrew roots was to get them to return to full Torah observance once again. Even so, because Satan is not happy that these truths be made known, he has again deceived some, to turn against our Jewish brothers, in that they believe our Jewish brothers are also not keeping the correct Feast Days of Elohim. To make matters worse the lying pens of the scribes added to this problem; Anti-Semitism has at times been taking on such proportions that even the translators of modern Bibles have been influenced by it. A case in point is to be found in some of the modern English translations listed here below:

1. A test verse namely Hosea 11: 12 incorrectly translated in the New American Standard Bible as follows: **'Ephraim (a name used for the 10 lost tribes of Israel in many places throughout the Scriptures) surrounds Me with lies, And the house of Israel with deceit; Judah is also unruly against G-d (Elohim), even against the Holy One who is faithful.'**
2. The New International Version also incorrectly translates this verse, in this way: **'Ephraim has surrounded me with lies, the house of Israel with deceit. And Judah is unruly against G-d, even against the faithful Holy One.'**
3. However, the King James Version correctly translated it, as follows: **'Ephraim compasseth me about with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit: but Judah yet ruleth with G-d (Elohim) and is faithful with the saints (believers).'**
4. This verse is also correctly translated in the Revised Standard and reads: **'Ephraim has encompassed me with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit; but Judah is still known by G-d (Elohim), and is faithful to the Holy (Set-apart) One.'**
5. 'The Scriptures' published by The Institute for Scripture Research (Pty) Ltd South Africa, also translated verse 12 correctly, in this way: **"Ephrayim has surrounded Me with lying, and the house of Yisrael (Israel) with deceit. But Yehudah (Judah) is still wandering with El, and is true to the Set-apart One."**

But what may you ask, has this to do with the return of the ten lost tribes of Israel? In fact this verse has everything to do with our ultimate return to join our brother Judah and it is partly because of this mistranslation, that many believe that the Jews are also wrong. Let's have a look at the context of this verse, by also reading the preceding verses of Hosea 11: 9 – 12 from the King James Version, as follows: **'I will not execute the fierceness of mine anger, I will not return to destroy Ephraim: for I am Elohim, and not a man; the Holy One in the midst of thee; and I will not enter into the city. (10) They shall walk after YHVH: he shall roar like a lion; when he shall roar then the children shall tremble from the west. (As mentioned in a previous sermon the lost ten tribes were scattered throughout the nations of the world, but mainly in the west.) (11) They shall tremble as a bird out of Egypt, and as a dove out of the land of Assyria; and I will place them in their houses, saith YHVH. (12) Ephraim compasseth me about with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit: but Judah yet ruleth with Elohim and is faithful with the saints.'** This is talking about a time when YHVH will call us back from the countries where He has scattered us, to come and join brother Judah in the Promised Land. Verse 12 in the King James Version is the more correct translation, as it agrees with what YHVH inspired King David to write in the last part of Psalm 60: 7, in this way: **'Judah is my lawgiver.'**

However, even though 'The Scriptures' (published by The Institute for Scripture Research (Pty) Ltd South Africa) also translates Hosea 11 verse 12 correctly, many of those who prefer to use only 'The Scriptures', do not accept that the Hebrew calendar is the Scripturally ordained calendar. It reminds me about the leader of our previous association who passed away in January 1986. He used to say, **'If we claim to be Israel, then we ought to start doing what a citizen of Israel is supposed to do.'** I am in full agreement with his statement; if we claim to be the Israel of Elohim, we ought to start keeping the Torah teachings of Elohim fully. Most of all, we need to start keeping the same Set-apart Days as our Jewish brothers do; and like they, eat only kosher food, including not eating meat and milk products together; wear tzitzit and put mezuzahs on the doorpost of our homes. If Judah is still true to YHVH, should we not imitate them, in worshipping our heavenly Father?

There are many other scriptures that mention our physical return to the land of Israel, one of which is from Ezekiel 34: 11 – 13, 30 & 31, as follows: **'For thus says YHVH Elohim, "Behold, I Myself will search for My sheep and seek them out. (12) As a shepherd cares for his herd in the day when he is among his**

**scattered sheep, so I will care for My sheep and will deliver them from all the places to which they were scattered on a cloudy and gloomy day. (13) And I will bring them out from the peoples and gather them from the countries and bring them to their own land; and I will feed them on the mountains of Israel, by the streams, and in all the inhabited places of the land.”(30) “Then they will know that I YHVH their Elohim, am with them, and that they, the house of Israel, are My people,” declares YHVH Elohim.’ (31) “As for you, My sheep the sheep of My pasture, you are men and I am your Elohim,” declares YHVH Elohim.’** Notice here that YHVH refers to the lost sheep (the lost ten tribes of Israel) as men.

We also read from Mark 8: 22 – 25: **‘And they came to Bethsaida<sup>43</sup>. And they brought a blind man to Him, and entreated Him to touch him. (23) And taking the blind man by the hand, He brought him out of the village; and after spitting on his eyes, and laying His hands upon him, He asked him, “Do you see anything?” (24) And he looked up and said, “I see men, for I am seeing them like trees, walking about.” (25) Then again He laid His hand upon his eyes; and he looked intently and was restored, and began to see everything clearly.’** Judah believes in the resurrection of the dead and the coming of a Messiah to rule the world from King David’s throne. In fact they basically believe the good news of the coming kingdom of Elohim. Did you know that the majority of Christianity blinded by their belief in the person of Messiah, does not understand what the true gospel is? The true gospel is what Messiah preached in Mark 1: 14 & 15, as follows: **‘And after John (the Immerser) had been taken into custody, Yahshua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of Elohim, (15) and saying, “The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of Elohim is at hand; repent and believe the gospel.”** So whilst Judah believes the true gospel, as well as in a Messiah who is coming to rule the world from Jerusalem, they are blinded to the identity of Yahshua the true Messiah. We also know from reading Romans 11 and especially verse 32, that YHVH has blinded their minds to the identity of the true Messiah, at this time.

We saw in Ezekiel 34: 31 YHVH telling us that we are men. In Mark 8: 24, after being partly healed by Yahshua, the blind man says that he sees men walking like trees. In Mark 8: 25, we see that after Yahshua laid hands on the blind man (Israel) for the second time he began to see everything clearly. Prophetically this will only happen at Yahshua’s second coming, when Judah as well as Ephraim (the lost ten tribes), will see things clearly. The section about the trees in Mark 8: 24 is endorsed by Jeremiah 11: 16 & 17, where YHVH refers to Israel as an olive tree, as follows: **‘YHVH called your name, “A green olive tree, beautiful in fruit and form”; With the noise of a great tumult He has kindled fire on it, And its branches are worthless. (17) And YHVH of hosts, who planted you, has pronounced evil against you because of the evil of the house of Israel and of the house of Judah, which they have done to provoke Me by offering up sacrifices to Baal.’** We know that the olive tree spoken about here is the same olive tree discussed in Romans 11.

Again we read about a remnant which is called out according to Elohim’s gracious choice, at the present time, from Roman 11: 5. We are the remnant of the house of Israel, who is called Gentiles in this chapter, since we have lost our identity. It talks about us as wild olive branches, which are grafted back into the Olive tree. We also read in verse 25 and the first part of verse 26 of Romans 11, **‘For I do not want you, brethren (the called-out ones), to be uninformed of this mystery, lest you be wise in your own estimation, that a partial hardening has happened to Israel (in this case meaning Judah) until the fullness of the Gentiles (us the lost ten tribes who believe that we are Gentiles) has come in; (26) and thus all Israel will be saved.’**

YHVH is calling a remnant from Israel at this time to become first fruits (or first-born) by opening our eyes to His word. We read about this in James 1: 18, as follows: **‘In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’** A second witness is found in Romans 8: 28 & 29, in this way: **‘And we know that Elohim caused all things to work together for good to those who love Elohim, to those who are called according to His purpose. (29) For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the first-born among many brethren.’** But, how did YHVH pick us to become his first fruits and for what reason? We read from 1 Corinthians 1: 26 – 29: **“For consider your calling, brethren, that there were not many wise according to the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble; (27) but Elohim has chosen the foolish things of the world to shame the wise, and Elohim has chosen the weak things of the world to shame the things which are strong, (28) and the base things of the world and the despised, Elohim has chosen, the things that are not, that He might nullify the things that are, (29) that no man should boast before Elohim.”**

<sup>43</sup> Please also see the prophecy in Matthew 11: 22 about the people of Bethsaida who could not ‘see’ Yahshua the Messiah.

YHWH warns us through many prophecies that the day of reckoning is near. In this fearful awesome age, World War III will soon commence with nuclear devastation unleashed on the present day nation of Israel. Cities like Jerusalem will be attacked, but so will nuclear devastation be unleashed upon London, Liverpool, New York, Washington, Chicago, Sydney, Perth, Wellington, Christchurch, Johannesburg, Cape Town, and wherever there are a concentration of Israelites present in the world. We the chosen people of Elohim should wake up before it is too late. We should shout for joy knowing that we are Israel, and in repentance turn back to YHWH our Elohim. The punishment now soon to be unleashed upon the world is simply known as the great tribulation.

The coming severe punishment is to correct our peoples to return to the ways of Elohim. The Israelite nations have been warned in the Scriptures, but because they do not recognize themselves as Israel, most of them will not listen. However, if you and I overcome our sins, repent and return to YHWH the Elohim of Israel and His Torah, we will be protected from the great tribulation, as we read in Revelation 3: 10 & 11, as follows: ***“Because you have kept the word of My perseverance, I also will keep you from the hour of testing, that hour which is about to come upon the whole world, to test those who dwell upon the earth. (11) I am coming quickly; hold fast what you have, in order that no one take your crown.”*** This is in line with what we read in Isaiah 26: 20 & 21, as follows: ***‘Come, My people, enter into your rooms, And close your doors behind you; Hide for a little while, Until indignation runs its course. (21) For behold, YHWH is about to come out from His place To punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity; And the earth will reveal her bloodshed, and will no longer cover her slain.’*** Are you going to be one who takes this serious warning lightly? Are you going to carry on as if the few problems in your life are much more important? This is why YHWH is going to take away from those who do not heed this warning, the things which they currently consider to be of greater importance. Those who know already that they are Israel, but who do not regard it seriously enough to start keeping the Scripturally ordained Sabbath and Set-apart days of Elohim, will soon, because of the great tribulation come to their senses and turn to Him and His way. That is when the prophecy in Zechariah 8: 23, saying: ***“Thus says YHWH of hosts, ‘In those days ten men from all nations will grasp the garments of a Jew saying, “Let us go with you, for we have heard that Elohim is with you.”’”***, will come true.

All it will take is for us to repent and return to full Torah observance. Then our brother Judah will recognize us for who we are and we will begin uniting as the Israel of Elohim. We ought to be thankful that YHWH has blinded them to the identity of Yahshua at this time, allowing those whom He has called from the lost ten tribes, to share a place in the olive tree. We conclude by reading about this from the last part of verse 26 and verse 27 of Romans 11, ***‘just as it is written, “THE DELIVERER WILL COME FROM ZION, HE WILL REMOVE UNGODLINESS FROM JACOB. (27) AND THIS IS MY COVENANT WITH THEM, WHEN I TAKE AWAY THEIR SINS.”’*** When Yahshua returns one day on the Feast of Trumpets, the Jews (those who remain righteous and attend Synagogue services) will see His hands and accept Him as their Master and Elohim, as we read from Zechariah 12: 10, in this way: ***“And I will pour out on the house of David and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace and of supplication, so that they will look on Me whom they have pierced; and they will mourn for Him, as one mourns for an only son, and they will weep bitterly over Him, like the bitter weeping over a first-born.”*** This is similar to what Thomas one of the disciples did when He saw Yahshua’s hands, in John 20: 28, as follows: ***‘Thomas answered and said to Him (Yahshua), “My Master and my Elohim!”’*** We know that this will only occur at Yahshua’s return one day. This is also the day at which time Judah will fully recognize us as their brothers and sisters.

YHWH has already called us out of darkness into His marvelous light. Time is of the essence and we need to operate as a set-apart nation, as a kingdom of priests and in all earnest start getting the good news about the coming Kingdom of Elohim out into the entire world, before the end of this age, will come. In addition we need to start working at uniting the remnant of the ‘lost ten tribes’ of Israel and Judah, and to foster unity amongst the people of Elohim. This is also why I want each one of you to share the book that I recently completed, namely ‘Nazarene Judaism?’ with as many like-minded believers, as possible. A final question to you: Are you also beginning to see more clearly?

## Chapter 32: Marriage.

Marriage was instituted by Elohim and has great purpose. In Genesis 1: 27 The Scriptures state: ***“And Elohim created man in His own image, in the image of Elohim He created him; male and female He created them.”*** After having created Adam, Elohim said in Genesis 2: 18: ***“It is not good for the man to be alone; I will make him a helper suitable for him.”***

Marriage requires that you leave your parents and cleave to your wife. The whole purpose of our lives is to build character and to become totally like YHVH our Elohim. We already look like the image of Elohim, Yahshua, physically (He being the image of the invisible Elohim according to Colossians 1: 15), – however, the purpose of life is to also become like Him spiritually.

Elohim's purpose for marriage is twofold for us:

1. To recreate Himself through us and our children, and
2. To develop a character, like His.

Once you as a young adult in the assembly have decided to get married, you are required to leave your parents and cleave to your husband or wife. Please note that Scriptures are clear: A man shall cleave to his wife (a woman) and not another man. Marriage is a relationship between a male and a female and not between two males or two females.

In our marriage ceremony both partners promise to stay married to his/her original mate, until death do them part. The choice of marriage is therefore a very important one. The Scriptures being our manual, tells us how to live with our partners. There are numerous scriptures telling us what to do and what not to do in marriage. In the Ten Commandments for instance, we are told, not to commit adultery. In Colossians 3: 18 & 19 it tells wives to be subject to their husbands and husbands to love their wives. The first woman was made from her husband's rib, not his foot – so she is an equal partner, not a carpet to walk all over. The point of marriage is that it is not only a two way street; it is not only between a husband and his wife, it is much, much more. It is a relationship in which we learn to live according to Elohim's rules – or put differently, according to the Torah teachings of YHVH.

The first five commandments are toward YHVH. By keeping them, we show YHVH that we love Him with all our heart & mind, as our heavenly Father. By keeping the last six commandments, we show love to our neighbors and by obedience to all ten, our love to YHVH our Elohim.

In marriage we show love to our wives and husbands, but also to our Creator. We must never forget that in whatever we do – we must do it as if doing it for YHVH. It must not only be to please men, but with sincerity of heart fearing YHVH always. As Colossians 3 concludes in verses 23 – 25: ***“Whatever you do, do your work heartily, as for the Master rather than for men; (24) knowing that from the Master you will receive the reward of the inheritance. It is the Master Yahshua whom you serve. (25) For he who does wrong will receive the consequences of the wrong which he has done, and that without partiality.”***

Brethren, with that in mind, it will be to our advantage if we remember, next time when we want to shout at our partner – we are doing it as unto the Master Yahshua!!!!

Once we are married, we must remember, that we are past the point of having boyfriends and girlfriends; we are past the point of dating someone. Some newly-weds sometimes forget this – and when his or her marriage partner offends him or her – then he or she wants to make the other partner jealous with a boyfriend or girlfriend. This is extremely childish and does not belong in a marriage relationship.

By staying with your married partner, we are showing YHVH our Father that once we agreed to follow Him (after He has called us); we will remain loyal to Him, forever. So if and when someone like our husband or wife offends us, we must think twice, before making him or her jealous with someone else, or before we spite him or her by not talking to him or her for a day or longer. Think about your own character development, before you make these ridiculous decisions to spite your partner.

Do not be easily offended – be more forgiving – more lenient to your partner and others in the assembly. Remember in the model prayer that Yahshua gave us in Matthew 6: 12 He said: ***“And forgive us our trespasses as we also have forgiven those who trespass against us”*** and in verse 14: ***“for if you forgive men for their transgressions, your heavenly Father will also forgive you.”*** YHVH forgives past sins – divorce and sins before your calling and conversion are forgiven. From that point on, start your relationship with your partner as well as with YHVH.



Marriage is an institution which helps us to build character, like Elohim's character – which will last into eternity. Let us therefore use it for that very purpose and at the same time make our partners happy.

Some may think that same-sex relationships are as legitimate as opposite-sex ones, but physiologists and sociologists agree with what Elohim created from the beginning. YHVH has never condoned same-sex relationships, as may be read from Leviticus 20: 13, as follows: ***'If there is a man who lies with a male as those who lie with a woman, both of them have committed a detestable act; they shall surely be put to death. Their blood guiltiness is upon them.'*** YHVH intended men and women to be together from the very beginning. YHVH intended marriages to last until one of the partners die. Marriage is ordained by our Father and He hates divorce. He ordained marriage and sex – in that order. Adultery is a violation of the marriage covenant by willfully participating in sex with someone who is not your spouse. YHVH created sex, because He wants us to enjoy a stable sexual relationship within marriage.

Broken homes are very costly to human society. The majority of economically disadvantaged people are from broken homes. Homes headed by single parents are a leading factor in subsequent criminal activity. To this must be added the cost of legal fees, the reduction in productivity and income of divorced parents. It also results in the frequent loss of homes and other belongings. Divorce often results in long custody battles with devastating effects on the children. Society suffers because we have neglected to treat our partners the way that YHVH intended from the beginning. Most human beings desire and need the benefits that come from a stable marriage. We need to return to the way that Elohim intended and give marriage the respect that it deserves. Children whose parents are happily married are blessed with the ideal environment to grow up in and produce emotionally stable leaders for future generations.

How serious is divorce to YHVH? We see from Malachi 2: 16 that YHVH hates divorce, as follows: ***"For I hate divorce," says YHVH, the Elohim of Israel, "and him who covers his garment with wrong," says YHVH of hosts. "So take heed to your spirit, that you do not deal treacherously."*** Adultery is considered such a serious sin by YHVH, that He devoted two out of the Ten Commandments to it. We read from Exodus 20: 14 & 17, ***"You shall not commit adultery."*** (17) ***"You shall not covet your neighbor's house; you shall not covet your neighbor's wife or his male servant or his female servant or his ox or his donkey or anything that belongs to your neighbor."*** We see from Leviticus 20: 10 that adultery is punishable by death, as follows: ***'If there is a man who commits adultery with another man's wife, one who commits adultery with his friend's wife, the adulterer and the adulteress shall surely be put to death.'*** Whereas there are many people who view sexual activity short of intercourse, not as sin, the Scriptures shows that anything which involving 'uncovered nakedness' for the purpose of sexual misconduct, to be sin (as may be read in Leviticus 18 and 20). In fact Yahshua our Messiah plainly stated in Matthew 5: 27 & 28, ***"You have heard that it was said, 'YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT ADULTARY'; (28) but I say to you, that everyone who looks on a woman to lust for her has committed adultery with her already in his heart."***

There are many warnings against adultery in the Scriptures. One such warning appears in Proverbs 6: 32, as follows: ***'The one who commits adultery with a woman is lacking sense; He who does destroys his soul.'*** We who are called should also be mindful of what Rav Shaul said about immoral sexual relationships in 1 Corinthians 6: 9 – 18, as follows: ***'Or do you not know that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of Elohim? Do not be deceived; neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor homosexuals, (10) nor thieves, nor the covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor swindlers, shall inherit the kingdom of Elohim. (11) And such were some of you; but you were washed, but you were sanctified, but you were justified in the name of the Master Yahshua Messiah, and in the Spirit of Elohim. (12) All things are lawful for me, but not all things are profitable. All things are lawful for me, but I will not be mastered by anything. (Example: We may drink wine and even whiskey, but we should never get drunk) (13) Food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food; but Elohim will do away with both of them. (We should also not be gluttons – even during the Feast) Yet the body is not for immorality, but for the Master; and the Master is for the body. (14) Now Elohim has not only raised the Master, but will also raise us up through His power. (15) Do you not know that your bodies are members of Messiah? Shall I then take away the members of Messiah and make them members of a harlot? May it never be! (16) Or do you not know that the one who joins himself to a harlot is one body with her? For He says, "THE TWO WILL BECOME ONE FLESH." (17) But the one who joins himself to the Master is one spirit with Him. (18) Flee immorality. Every other sin that a man commits is outside the body, but the immoral man sins against his own body.'***

When we consider the Ten Commandments more fully, we come to see that committing adultery does not only involve the breaking of the seventh commandment. As I mentioned before marriage helps us build righteous character; therefore breaking the seventh command is also a character matter. To begin with, the person guilty of committing adultery, has broken the marriage vow, which was between his/her spouse, as well as YHVH and him/herself. Secondly such an act shows disrespect towards, both parents of the husband

and the wife, which is breaking the fifth commandment (as per Exodus 20: 12). The eight commandments are also involved in that the adulterer has stolen someone else's spouse for sexual use. In addition the ninth commandment was also broken, in that the perpetrators had to deceive their legal partners, parents and their children. But most of all the act of adultery allows another person to come before Elohim; so we see that at least six commandments are broken by such a foolish act. The overriding problem of adultery is that it has consequences that can last for many generations. Also be mindful of the fact that even if you are able to change and repent; what happens if you are in an accident or die before you could repent?

We, who are called by YHVH to become kings and priests under Yahshua during the millennium, should not continue to practice sin, thinking it is always possible to repent. We should desist from tempting YHVH our Elohim, as Yahshua warned in Matthew 7: 19 – 23, as follows: ***“Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. (20) So then, you will know them by their fruits. (21) Not everyone who says to Me, ‘Master, Master,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven; but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven. (22) Many will say to Me on that day, ‘Master, Master, did we not prophesy in Your name, and in Your name cast out demons, and in Your name perform many miracles?’ (23) And then I will declare to them, ‘I never knew you; DEPART FROM ME, YOU WHO PRACTICE LAWLESSNESS.’”*** This obviously has to do with all law-breaking and not only with adultery.

Those who have been involved in adulterous relationships should repent and cease from doing so immediately. Those who repent and return to full Torah observance should remember that Yahshua paid the penalty for all our sins – upon repentance it is forgiven, if we cease from doing so completely. Every cause has an effect, so even though we might be forgiven, if we picked up aids or another sexual disease because of our act, we will suffer the effects. So will the relatives of those who committed adultery suffer from the effects of our sins – be it depression, or any other psychological effect, of which we might not even be aware of.

We need to be mindful of the fact that marriage is a divine institution designed by Elohim as a lifelong relationship between a man and a woman. So let's wear our tzitzit as a reminder not to break Elohim's commandments, as we read from Numbers 15: 38 – 41, as follows: ***“Speak to the sons of Israel, and tell them that they shall make for themselves tassels on the corners of their garments throughout their generation, and that they shall put on the tassel of each corner a cord of blue. (39) And it shall be a tassel for you to look at and remember all the commandments of YHVH, so as to do them and not follow after your own heart and your own eyes, after which you played the harlot, (40) in order that you may remember to do all My commandments, and be holy (Set-apart) to your Elohim. (41) I am YHVH your Elohim who brought you out from the land of Egypt to be your Elohim; I am YHVH your Elohim.”*** Let's resolve to do only the things which will build a righteous character in us.

### **Chapter 33: Do you believe that the Scriptures is the word of Elohim?**

We commence our study by reading from Hebrews 1: 1 & 2, ***'Elohim, after He spoke long ago to the fathers in the prophets in many portions and in many ways, (2) in these last days has spoken to us in His Son, whom He appointed heir of all things, through whom also He made the world.'*** From this it is clear that YHVH does not speak to us directly any longer, but He speaks to us through Yahshua the word of Elohim who is also the embodiment of Torah. In addition He does not send angels or visions to us any longer, and those who come up with ideas like that are simply deceiving themselves.

What we believe should all come from Yahshua, the word of Elohim made flesh. We read fittingly from Colossians 2: 18 & 19, ***'Let no one keep defrauding you of your prize by delighting in self-abasement and the worship of the angels, taking his stand on visions he has seen, inflated without cause by his fleshly mind, (19) and not holding fast to the head, from whom the entire body, being supplied and held together by the joints and ligaments, grows with a growth which is from Elohim.'*** We the called-out ecclesia of Elohim, are the body of Messiah, with Him being our head. As His body we should be controlled totally by Yahshua the head of the body and not be concerned with what the world has to say about our doctrines and beliefs, which should all come from the Word of Elohim, anyway. We read fittingly from verses 20 – 23 of Colossians 2, ***'If you have died with Messiah (in immersion) to the elementary principles of the world, why, as if you were living in the world, do you submit yourself to decrees, such as, (21) "Do not handle, do not taste, do not touch!" (22) (which all refer to things destined to perish with using) - in accordance with commandments and teachings of men? (23) These are matters which have, to be sure, the appearance of wisdom in self-made religion and self-abasement and severe treatment of the body, but are of no value against fleshly indulgence.'***

This is **not** talking about the teachings of Elohim, since the Torah is not simply the teachings of men, but in fact Spiritual and therefore everlasting, as Rav Shaul points out in Romans 7: 14, ***'For we know that the Law is spiritual; but I am of flesh, sold into bondage to sin.'*** So this is talking about man made religious rules, such as for example; the eating of fish on Fridays; forbidding Priests to marry; and fasting for more than a day at a time, as we also read about in 1 Timothy 4: 1 – 3, in this way: ***'But the Spirit explicitly says that in later times some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to deceitful spirits and doctrines of demons, (2) by means of the hypocrisy of liars seared in their own conscience as with a branding iron, (3) men who forbid marriage and advocate abstaining from foods, which Elohim created to be gratefully shared in by those who believe and know the truth.'*** To avoid any misunderstanding, we know that the food that Elohim created and sanctified for human consumption are given in Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14. We only obey the way of Elohim, and fast only as and when required by Him, on the Day of Atonement. In addition, we only refrain from eating leavened products during the seven Days of Unleavened Bread, during the Passover season, as commanded by Elohim.

We need to understand when reading the Scriptures that it is actually YHVH our Elohim, talking to us on a personal basis. It is not only the words that Moses, Rav Shaul or Yochanan wrote down for us, but it is YHVH speaking to us in person. It reminds me when I took my car to be serviced, the other day. The garage owner noticed the mezuzah that I have in my car. He realized that I am a believer of some sort and started telling me that it is the fault of religion that we have so many problems in the world, since not one religion agrees with another. He explained that we are taught by our parents about for example, the color green. Everyone else knows and calls the color green, green, but, he continued, if 'The Bible' tells us it is red, and then everyone is supposed to believe that, since 'The Bible' says so! I listened without answering the man. The point is that it is impossible to discuss truth with those who have such a mistaken perception about the Scriptures. It is true that there is much confusion in the religions of the world, as false teachings and traditions of men abound. However, the Scriptures, being the very word of Elohim, will never call green red, as it is according to Yahshua's prayer recorded in John 17: 17, the truth? In addition we read from Numbers 23: 19, ***"Elohim is not a man, that He should lie, Nor a son of man, that He should repent; Has He said, and will He not do it? Or has He spoken, and will He not make it good?"*** Mankind simply does not realize that the Scriptures being the word of Elohim cannot lie.

On the other hand, some do not believe the Scriptures to be totally true any longer. Many of those who have seen recent movies trying to discredit Yahshua's impalement and resurrection believe these fabricated stories to be true. It has become very difficult to prove what we believe as scriptural facts, to be the only truth, to such people. We all know according to The Scriptures that two or three scriptural witnesses ought to be sufficient evidence of a matter. Nevertheless, because people doubt the Scriptures, a large number of scriptural witnesses are not seen as enough and such people will rather believe a person who appeals to their intellect. The problem is that if we doubt two or three scriptural witnesses, we are in fact doubting or even contradicting the word of Elohim and even if we confess faith in Yahshua we deny Him by not believing the Word of Elohim. Even so, many translations were written of the Scriptures, and in most cases new copies

carry the agendas of their authors. A test verse namely Hosea 11: 12 correctly translated in the King James Version, reads; ***‘Ephraim (a name used for the 10 lost tribes of Israel in many places throughout the Scriptures) compasseth me about with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit: but Judah yet ruleth with G-d (Elohim) and is faithful with the saints (believers).’*** But this verse is incorrectly translated in the New American Standard Bible, as follows: ***‘Ephraim surrounds Me with lies, And the house of Israel with deceit; Judah is also unruly against G-d (Elohim), even against the Holy One who is faithful.’*** The New International Version incorrectly translates the same verse, in this way: ***‘Ephraim has surrounded me with lies, the house of Israel with deceit. And Judah is unruly against G-d, even against the faithful Holy One.’*** The reason for these glaring mistranslations is obviously pure anti-Semitism.

We read about the misinterpretations and additions to the word of Elohim, in Jeremiah 8: 8 – 9, as follows: ***“How can you say, ‘We are wise, and the law of YHVH is with us?’ But behold, the lying pen of the scribes has made it into a lie. (9) The wise men are put to shame, they are dismayed and caught; behold they have rejected the word of YHVH, and what kind of wisdom do they have?”***

Despite the many mistranslations in the Scriptures, it is possible to find the true meaning of a particular Scripture by comparing it with a number of translations of the same verse or section. In addition, we are told in the Scriptures, that if we keep the commandments of Elohim, we will be able to understand the Scriptures, as we read from Psalm 111: 10, ***‘The fear of Elohim is the beginning of wisdom; a good understanding have all those who do His commandments; His praise endures forever.’*** We are further able to prove that the Scriptures are true despite numerous mistranslations; some verses might be unclear, but we need to remember that YHVH is not the author of confusion, as we read from 1 Corinthians 14: 33, as follows: ***‘For Elohim is not an Elohim of confusion but of peace, as in all the ecclesia of the saints (believers).’***

In addition to mistranslations, true believers also have to contend with Satan’s agents who are continuously trying to mislead us, as we are warned about in Jude 4 (KJV), in this way: ***‘For there are certain men crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained to this condemnation, ungodly men, turning the grace of our Elohim into lasciviousness (permissiveness), and denying the only Master Elohim and our Master Yahshua Messiah.’*** We need to confirm our belief system by at least two or three Scriptural witnesses, as we read from Deuteronomy 19: 15, as follows: ***“A single witness shall not rise up against a man on account of any iniquity or any sin which he has committed; on the evidence of two or three witnesses a matter shall be confirmed.”*** A second Scripture in support of this comes from Matthew 18: 15 & 16, where Yahshua said: ***“And if your brother sins, go and reprove him in private; if he listens to you, you have won your brother. (16) But if he does not listen to you, take one or two more with you, so that BY THE MOUTH OF TWO OR THREE WITNESSES EVERY FACT MAY BE CONFIRMED.”***

We need to know and understand that truth comes from YHVH alone and not by human reasoning. Even though study aids such as commentaries and concordances are very useful, we need to be mindful of the fact that these aids are all based on human interpretations of the Scriptures, and often times include the agendas of those who wrote them. It is the same with many of these ‘Bibles’ written by groups for their own use. Yes, I have copies of some of these ‘Bibles’ written specifically for believers like us, but prefer to only use them as reference material.

If we continue to study the word of Elohim, which includes both the Tanach and the Renewed Covenant, we will continue to grow in grace and knowledge as we are told in Proverbs, 4: 18, as follows: ***‘But the path of the righteous is like the light of dawn, that shines brighter and brighter until the full day.’*** We need to understand that we need to study regularly, it is far more important than attending or watching sport events on the TV, as we read from Deuteronomy 8: 3, ***“And He humbled you and let you be hungry, and fed you with manna which you did not know, nor did your fathers know, that He might make you understand that man does not live by bread alone, but man lives by everything that proceeds out of the mouth of YHVH.”*** The only thing that we are able to take into the kingdom of Elohim is a perfect character. But how do we build a perfect character? We read from 2 Timothy 3: 13 – 17, in this way: ***‘And indeed all who desire to live godly in Messiah Yahshua will be persecuted. (13) But evil men and imposters will proceed from bad to worse, deceiving and being deceived. (14) You, however, continue in the things you have learned and become convinced of, knowing from whom you have learned them; (15) and that from childhood you have known the sacred writings which are able to give you the wisdom that leads to salvation through faith which is in Messiah Yahshua. (16) All Scripture is inspired by Elohim and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, for training in righteousness; (17) that the man of Elohim may be adequate, equipped for every good work.’***

So we see that it has to do with from who and where we get our teachings. We need to make sure that those who teach us, teach and obey Torah and come to us in the name of Elohim. We read further from 1 Peter 1: 13 – 16, ***‘Therefore, gird your minds for action, keep sober in spirit, fix your hope completely on the***

**grace to be brought to you at the revelation of Yahshua Messiah.** (14) **As obedient children, do not be conformed to the former lusts which were yours in your ignorance,** (15) **but like the Set-apart One who called you, be set-apart yourselves also in all your behavior;** (16) **because it is written, “YOU SHALL BE HOLY, FOR I AM HOLY.”** These last few words, printed in upper case, are a quote directly from Leviticus 11: 45, which deal with the Torah of clean and unclean meats. It is clear therefore, that even under ‘grace’; the fact that Yahshua redeemed those of us who believe in Him, from the curse of the law (Galatians 3: 13), we are still required to keep the law to receive the blessings of the law, and to conform to Elohim’s standard.

There are many proofs that the Scriptures are true, even in our modern age. An example of this is what Rav Kepha wrote in his second epistle: The phrase “stored with fire” illustrates that Kepha, although not knowledgeable himself about the atom, accurately described the immense power stored within it, which when split, emits much heat and fire, thus causing the disintegration of matter. Kepha writes in 2 Peter 3: 10 – 13 (KJV): **“But the day of YHVH will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up. Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness. Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of Elohim, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat? Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.”** Here, in what Elohim inspired Kepha to reveal to us, we have the explanation of how Elohim will create room for us to live in His New Earth. It is interesting to note that we could not have clearly understood these verses until the age of Einstein, nearly 2000 years after they were written down. Through our modern understanding of nuclear physics, we can grasp something of Elohim’s description to Kepha of the immense heat and fire released when He explodes the power of the atom. We see it was also encoded by Elohim in the Set-apart Scriptures long ago.

It is vital that we also grow in faith, as it is impossible to have a relationship with our Father YHVH without it, as we read from Hebrews 11: 6, in this way: **‘And without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to Elohim must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who seek Him.’** We commence our journey to living a life of faith by asking Elohim for it. We need to keep in regular contact with YHVH our Elohim. Once we have proven scripturally, with two or three witnesses what we ought to do, then He wants us to start doing it. We know from being parents ourselves that we show YHVH our love by keeping His commandments and His statutes, which are all contained in His Torah teachings. It is here where we learn to keep (YHVH)’s Sabbath day and His Set-apart Feast days listed in Leviticus 23.

We need to get beyond the basic tenets of our faith, as we are told by Rav Shaul in Hebrews 5: 12 – 14 as follows: **‘For though by this time you ought to be teachers, you have need again for someone to teach you the elementary principles of the oracles of Elohim, and you have come to need milk is not accustomed to the word of righteousness, for he is a babe. But solid food is for the mature, who because of practice have their senses trained to discern good and evil.’** We need to practice and have our senses trained by doing our own Scriptural studies, writing out for ourselves why we believe certain things, quoting at least two Scriptural witnesses for doing so. This will help us in our training to become priests (teachers) in the world to come (Olam Haba).

Without self-study, we will be tossed to and fro, by every wind of doctrine as we read in Ephesians 4: 14 & 15 as follows: **‘As a result, we are no longer to be children, tossed here and there by waves, and carried about by every wind of doctrine, by the trickery of men, by craftiness in deceitful scheming; but speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in all aspects into Him, who is the head even Messiah.’** If we never get to know the Scriptures to back up what we believe, we will never be strong enough to withstand false teachers who make statements without backing it up by two or three scriptural witnesses, or by misquoting parts of Scripture as to lead many of us astray. Brethren, the question is: Do we lack faith in YHVH and His word or are we so arrogant and self-centered that we no longer believe the Word of Elohim? This is exactly what Satan and His agents want from us. They want us to lose our faith in the one True Elohim and believe in deceivers like Satan and his ministers. This is why we read what Yahshua said in Luke 18: 8 the last part: **“However, when the Son of Man comes, will He find faith on the earth?”**

An additional problem caused by those who are deceived and attempt to also deceive true believers is that they only see what they want to see in a particular Scripture. Because of their agenda to prove their deception, they do not fully understand the clear meaning of certain key Scriptures that they quote to prove their erroneous beliefs. One example is the section in 1 Samuel 20 about the new moon, as we read from verse 5, **‘So David said to Jonathan, “Behold, tomorrow is the new moon, and I ought to sit down to eat with the king. But let me go, that I may hide myself in the field until the third evening.”** The question that we should ask ourselves at this point is: Why did David want to hide himself until the third

evening. The reason becomes clear from the next two verses that we will quote from 1 Samuel 20 (i.e. that the new moon lasts up to two days). We read accordingly from verses 27 and 34, ***'And it came about the next day, the second day of the new moon, that David's place was empty; so Saul said to Jonathan his son, "Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal, either yesterday or today?"' (34) 'Then Jonathan arose from the tables in fierce anger, and did not eat food on the second day of the new moon, for he was grieved over David because his father had dishonored him.'*** Those who are so overly concerned to determine the new moon, by sighting the first visible crescent moon, read right over these verses, without realizing that a new moon lasts from between one and a half to two days.

According to the Scriptures the first day of any month starts the evening after the new moon (which is essentially a concealed moon). The moon is renewed immediately after the shadow of the earth, between the sun and the moon, covers the moon and commences towards renewal. The renewed moon cannot be seen by the 'naked' eye and only becomes visible as a crescent moon 1½ to 2 days after concealment. Yes, the new moon is in concealment for ±2 days and is only 'watched' to determine the date for Trumpets. If Atonement will be on a Friday or a Sunday, Trumpets is moved one day on, ensuring that Atonement is never on the day before or after a weekly Sabbath. Concealment takes up to 2 days, which ensures that even in the event of such a postponement, Trumpets will still occur during concealment of the moon. If you compare a Gregorian calendar which shows the positions of the moon, with a Jewish calendar (obtainable from the local synagogue), you will notice that according to the Jewish calendar, the Rosh Chodesh or the New Month is always the next evening after the Gregorian calendar shows the New Moon - which is in essence a dark moon (a black dot) or no moon.

Do those who watch for the crescent moon realize that both the First Day of Unleavened Bread and the first day of the Feast of Tabernacles should occur on the fifteenth day of either the first or the seventh months of the year? The moon is usually full on both of these two days. But, if we determine the new month by watching for the first sliver of the crescent moon to become visible, it will always be at least a day or two after the full moon. Yes, the next '*month*' will be about 30 days later to the next crescent moon, but these two Feast Days will always be a day or two too late. Yes, Yom Teruah (or Rosh Hashanah) is the only Feast that we keep on a dark moon. It is for that reason that we and most Jews keep Yom Teruah for two days (or one long day of 48 hours), as seen here in the 1<sup>st</sup> book of Samuel and in the book of Nehemiah 8: 2 and 13. But notice in verse 13 that it is usually the elders and leaders of the community, who keep the second day. A second reason for Yom Teruah being during concealment, is that we do not know the exact time of Yahshua's return.

Let's make sure, that when we quote a specific verse as a witness to a doctrine that we believe, that we do not quote it out of context, in order to try and justify our misdirected personal agendas. We should learn to always let the word of Elohim, interpret the Scriptures, or put differently: Let the Scriptures interpret the Scriptures.

## **Chapter 34: The importance of developing a perfect character.**

We all know the saying, that nobody is perfect. Yes, it is true no human being is perfect; all of us have sinned and fall short of the esteem of Elohim. This is also why we read from Psalm 49: 7, ***'No man can by any means redeem his brother, or give to Elohim a ransom for him-.'*** We are all guilty of transgressing the commandments of Elohim, and have in accordance with Torah earned the death penalty. Not one of us is righteous enough to die for the sins of a brother or sister, nevertheless, we read from verse 15 of Psalm 49, ***'But Elohim will redeem my soul (life) from the power of Sheol (the grave or more specifically, second death); for He will receive me.'*** This is confirmed in Romans 6: 23, as follows: ***'For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of Elohim is eternal life in Messiah Yahshua our Master.'***

Have you ever considered: Why if Elohim is Omni-potent, did He not create mankind perfect from the start? Why did Elohim make us from physical matter? Why did He not create us as spiritual beings with perfect characters? Why do we have to live this very demanding physical existence? These are very important questions. But, this is in fact exactly what happened at the very beginning, before YHVH **recreated** the earth. Before creating human beings, YHVH planned to bring forth beings that could become his 'helpers'. He planned for these helpers or 'children' to be like Him in every respect. They would have His perfect, righteous character reproduced in them by His Set-apart Spirit. YHVH commenced His plan to reproduce Himself by creating powerful spiritual beings called angels. These angels were free moral agents, with the ability to choose to go the way of Elohim – the way of giving and sharing, or the wrong way - which is in essence a way of get. For many years these angels followed the correct way, until one day, a third of them followed the archangel Lucifer in rebellion against Elohim to take over the throne of Elohim in the third heaven. They fought against the other two thirds of the created angels, still loyal to Elohim, but were overcome and thrown down to earth, where they are now living as fallen angels or demons (Revelation 12: 3,4 & 9). These angels, who are spirit beings, could not change once they decided to follow a life of wrongdoing (Isaiah 14 & Ezekiel 28).

The result of war between the angels and demons left the world formless and void ('Tohu' and 'bohu' in Hebrew), the condition in which we find the earth, when we open our Scriptures at Genesis 1: 2. At that point in time YHVH decided to recreate the heavens and the earth. He also at that point chose not to create his future children as spirit beings. He decided to create them from physical matter, in His image with the mind power to think and plan and create. They too would have free moral agency to decide between good and evil. But, they had to prove throughout their lives that they would develop the perfect character of Elohim and follow His way of life. However, we know that induced by the lies and temptation of Satan, Adam and Eve sinned. Since then all humankind have sinned and fall short of the esteem of Elohim. Death spread to all humankind through the sins of our forefathers. YHVH has allowed all of mankind to be led into sin by Satan, thus allowing us to see for ourselves where sin leads us.

Even so, prior to the sin of Adam and Eve, YHVH planned for such an eventuality and decided from the foundation of the earth, that His visible image will come to dwell with mankind, as Yahshua the salvation of YHVH to reconcile us back to the Father. However, He did not want to make the same mistake that He made with the angels; the angels were blameless from the start (as we read from Ezekiel 28: 15), until they sinned – after that Satan and His demons who all sinned with full knowledge, could not change, because they were spirit beings. It is for that very reason that YHVH created us from physical matter, to start with. His intention for us is to develop perfect character during our lives here on earth, as that is the only thing that we are able to take with us into the kingdom of Elohim. Mankind does not have all knowledge, and may as a result misunderstand. In addition most are also partly blinded. Because YHVH is not interested in making robots without personal characters, He created us with freedom to choose between what is right or wrong. He created us like Him, with the ability to make choices limited only by our knowledge and character. This is why we have to learn from birth what is right from wrong and allow our characters to develop over time by the decisions that we make under the guidance of Elohim's Set-apart spirit.

YHVH is not finished with us, after we are born as little children. We remain His workmanship for the period of seventy years (or more if we are blessed), during which He is creating in us His perfect character, as we read from Ephesians 1: 4 & 5, ***'just as He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy (set-apart) and blameless before Him in love. (5) He predestined us to adoption as sons through Yahshua Messiah to Himself, according to the kind intention of His will.'*** However, this is only talking about those of us whom He has called, and who answered the call, as we read from verses 13 & 14 of Ephesians 1, ***'In Him, you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of your salvation- having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, (14) who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to the redemption of Elohim's own possession, to the praise of His glory.'*** Whilst we are flesh and blood human beings, our characters are not permanent. We are able to

change our minds and the patterns of our behavior – learning from our mistakes and successful decisions. Because, we can change our minds and repent from our wrong decisions in the past; Elohim is able to create in us the will and capacity to slowly but surely choose the right way over what is wrong. However, as we gain additional knowledge, Elohim requires that we recognize where we have gone wrong, and be willing to change for the better, on an ongoing basis. It is for this reason that He gives us a portion of His Set-apart Spirit, which allows us to produce the fruit of the spirit in our lives.

Other than man, Elohim is not concerned with whether we are good looking and well educated. He does not look at physical attributes, but He looks at our intentions, as we read from 1 Samuel 16: 7, as follows: ***‘But YHVH said to Samuel, “Do not look at his (talking about Eliab, before anointing David) appearance or at the height of his stature, because I have rejected him; for Elohim sees not as man sees, for man looks at the outward appearance, but YHVH looks at the heart.”*** We also need to be aware of the fact that the Scriptures talk about what motivates us, and the way we live and think, as our hearts. YHVH will never force anyone to obey Him; He wants us to serve Him willingly from the heart and not because someone else forced us to serve Him. Those people whom Yahshua personally taught knew this, as may be understood from the teachings of Rav Shaul (also known as Paul). In fact many misunderstand the teachings of Rav Shaul, thinking that he taught against the sections of Torah which they do not want to accept, such as the wearing of tzitzit, circumcision, and the law prohibiting eating meat and milk products together.

Rav Shaul was really teaching about the importance of all the commandments including those viewed as least, or the ones that people believe they need not to keep any longer, and stressed that the Set-apart Spirit is the necessary agent for enabling righteousness. YHVH our Elohim requires that we follow the steps set-out in The Scriptures exactly, if we want to receive the Set-apart Spirit, to enable us to start obeying Torah, which leads to righteousness. It is like we read from James 2: 26, as follows: ***‘For just as the body without the spirit is dead, so also faith without works is dead.’*** However, we should never compel new believers to do things, for which they are not ready, yet. People should do things because they came to understand and believe the same. Repentance is a process and as people learn more by self-study and from teachers, who themselves went through the discipleship program started by Yahshua our Messiah; they will begin to understand better and start obeying from the heart. Yahshua himself taught that we should not lord it over people, since that is what the Gentiles do, as we read from Mark 10: 42 – 45: ***‘And calling them to Himself, Yahshua said to them, “You know that those who are recognized as rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them; and their great men exercise authority over them. (43) But it is not so among you, but whoever wishes to become great among you shall be your servant; (44) and whoever wishes to be first among you shall be slave of all. (45) For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many.”***

Because Elohim knows everything, He also knows what motivates us, right down to our very thoughts. Knowing that, should motivate us to make sure that we get rid of the filth that we think about from time to time. In fact Elohim knows what motivates us and evaluates our every intent. It is for that reason incumbent upon each and every one of us whom He has called to use His word to guide our every thought and action in this lifetime. Everything we do should ultimately be measured against His word, as we read from Hebrews 4: 12 & 13, in this way: ***‘For the word of Elohim is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword, and piercing as far as the division of soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow, and able to judge the thoughts and intentions of the heart. (13) And there is no creature hidden from His sight, but all things are open and laid bare to the eyes of Him with whom we have to do.’*** A second witness to this is found in Jeremiah 17: 10 & 11, as follows: ***“I, YHVH, search the heart, I test the mind, even to give to each man according to his ways, according to the results of his deeds. (11) As a partridge that hatched eggs which it has not laid, so is he who makes a fortune, but unjustly; in the midst of his days it will forsake him, and in the end he will be a fool.”*** Think about it; you can lie to every other human being in the world, but you cannot lie to Elohim or yourself. The problem is that if you lie long enough to yourself, you will eventually believe your own lies.

It is only when we repent from our deceptive ways and are immersed into Yahshua's saving name that we are able to do what YHVH requires of us. We read accordingly from Ezekiel 36: 26 & 27, ***‘Moreover, I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you; and I will remove the heart of stone from your flesh and give you a heart of flesh. (27) And I will put My Spirit within you and cause you to walk in My statutes, and you will be careful to observe My ordinances.’*** The reason why we should be immersed into Yahshua's name is that it is only by so doing that we will receive the Set-apart Spirit, as we read from Acts 2: 38, ***‘And Peter (Rav Kepha) said to them, “Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit.”*** We need the Set-apart Spirit of Elohim if we want to know and do the things that YHVH require of us, as may be understood from 1 Corinthians 2: 11, as follows: ***‘For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the spirit of the man, which is in him? Even so the thoughts of Elohim no one knows***



**except the Spirit of Elohim.**’ Yahshua our Messiah confirmed this in John 16: 13 - 15, saying: **“But when He, the Spirit of truth, comes, He will guide you into all the truth; for He will not speak on His own initiative, but whatever He hears (from the Father), He will speak; and He will disclose to you what is to come. (14) He shall glorify Me; for He shall take of Mine, and shall disclose it to you. (15) All things that the Father has are Mine; therefore I said; that He takes of Mine, and will disclose it to you.”**

If we are humble enough and yield our will to YHVH our Elohim, He will give us His Set-apart Spirit to follow the correct code of righteousness, namely His Torah teachings given throughout the Scriptures (from Genesis to Revelations). As those who are destined to eventually become priests who will be teaching this code of righteousness, each one of us are required to study the Scriptures to become approved by Elohim, as we read so aptly from 2 Timothy 2: 15, **‘Be diligent to present yourself approved to Elohim as a workman who does not need to be ashamed, handling accurately the word of truth.’** Ultimately Elohim will write the spiritual truths that we learnt in our hearts, making it part of our thinking and character, as we read from 2 Corinthians 3: 2 & 3, as follows: **‘You are our letter, written in our hearts, known and read by all men; (3) being manifested that you are a letter of Messiah, cared for by us, written not with ink, but by the Spirit of the living Elohim, not on tablets of stone, but on tablets of human hearts.’**

It is for this reason that we face trials and difficulties so that Elohim may know how committed we are to follow Him and His way of life. YHVH needs to know if our character will endure during the hardships and troubles that we are about to face in this world. It is only after He is totally convinced that He can trust us with the powers that He will give to those who He expects to rule under Yahshua. YHVH cannot entrust His eternal spiritual powers to someone who will misuse it again, like Satan did, and risk having a loose cannon in the administration of His eternal Kingdom. This is also why YHVH tested our forefathers in the faith, to see if they will truly follow Him. We all recall how YHVH asked our father Abraham, after giving him an only son, and after promising him that his descendants will become uncountable, to sacrifice Isaac to Him. We know from the account in Genesis 22 that Abraham obeyed and took Isaac his only son with him to sacrifice him, as YHVH requested. We pick up the account in Genesis 22 and read from verse 9 – 12, as follows: **‘Then they came to the place of which Elohim had told him; and Abraham built the altar there, and arranged the wood, and bound his son Isaac, and laid him on the altar on top of the wood. (10) And Abraham stretched out his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. (11) But the angel of YHVH called to him from heaven, and said, “Abraham, Abraham!” And he said, “Here I am.” (12) And He (the angel of YHVH) said, “Do not stretch out your hand against the lad, and do nothing to him; for now I know that you fear Elohim, since you have not withheld your son, your only son from Me.”**

In the same way Yahshua was tested when Satan tempted Him immediately after His immersion by John the Immerser. However, that was only a small test compared to what Yahshua had to suffer at the end of His very young life. Yahshua did not suffer because of His own sins; He suffered to pay for our sins – to reconcile us back to the Father. After Yahshua’s immersion and temptation by Satan, He started His ministry teaching about the coming kingdom of Elohim. During His ministry of about three and a half years, He was despised and rejected by the religious leaders of His day. They ridiculed Him, the same way Noah was mocked whilst he built the ark, to escape the flood which destroyed all wicked men from the earth at that time. Eventually the religious leaders demanded that He be executed, in order to put an end to His ministry. At that time the religious leaders did not understand that Yahshua was in fact the wisdom and power of Elohim<sup>44</sup>, as we read from 1 Corinthians 2: 4 – 8, in this way: **‘And my message and my preaching were not in persuasive words of wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power, (5) that your faith should not rest on the wisdom of men, but on the power of Elohim (Yahshua). (6) Yet we do not speak wisdom among those who are mature; a wisdom, however, not of this age, nor of the rulers of this age, who are passing away; (7) but we speak Elohim’s wisdom in a mystery, the hidden wisdom, which Elohim predestined before the ages to our glory; (8) the wisdom which none of the rulers of this age understood; for if they had understood it, they would not have crucified the Master of glory.’** In which case, we will still be in our sins.

After His impalement, death and burial, Yahshua was resurrected three days and three nights later as He said. Immediately after His resurrection, He explained the reason for His suffering to His disciples, as we read from Luke 24: 46 – 49, as follows: **‘And He said to them, “Thus it is written, that the Messiah should suffer and rise again from the dead the third day; (47) and that repentance for the forgiveness of sins should be proclaimed in His name to all the nations, beginning from Jerusalem. (48) You are my witnesses of these things. (49) And behold, I am sending forth the promise of My Father upon you (talking about the Set-apart Spirit); but you are to stay in the city until you are clothed with power from**

---

<sup>44</sup> Yahshua is the wisdom and power of Elohim, as witnessed in 1 Corinthians 1: 23 & 24, as follows: **“but we preach Messiah crucified, to Jews a stumbling block, and to Gentiles foolishness, but to those who are the called, both Jews and Greeks (a title sometimes used for the lost ten tribes of Israel), Messiah the power of Elohim and the wisdom of Elohim.”**

**on high.”** Yahshua was sinless, but died for the sins of the world (including yours and mine). He took the tremendous responsibility upon Himself, as the very Creator of mankind, to die as our kinsman redeemer, thus reconciling us back to the Father. It was absolutely necessary for Yahshua to die for us, and we read about His suffering for us from Hebrews 5: 7 – 10, ***‘In the days of His flesh, He offered up both prayers and supplications with loud crying and tears to the One able to save Him from death, and He was heard because of His piety (righteousness). (8) Although He was a Son, He learned obedience from the things which He suffered. (9) And having been made perfect (meaning a spirit being once again), He became to all those who obey Him the source of eternal salvation, (10) being designated by Elohim as a high priest according to the order of Melchizedek.’***

If Yahshua then already suffered for us, why are we as believers in Him still required to suffer? We find the answer to this question in the writings of both Rav Kepha and Rav Shaul. We read from 1 Peter 2: 21, ***‘For you have been called for this purpose, since Messiah also suffered for you, leaving you an example for you to follow in His footsteps.’*** In his letter to the Philippians in chapter 1: 29, Rav Shaul puts it as follows: ***‘For to you it has been granted for Messiah’s sake, not only to believe in Him, but also to suffer for His sake.’*** We also read Yahshua’s own words in this regard in Matthew 5: 10, ***“Blessed are those who have been persecuted for the sake of righteousness, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven (which is coming to the earth).”*** Yahshua said further in John 15: 19 – 20, ***“If you were of the world, the world would love its own; but because you are not of the world, but I chose you out of the world, therefore the world hates you. (20) Remember the word that I said to you, ‘A slave is not greater than his master.’ If they persecuted Me, they will also persecute you; if they kept My word, they will keep yours also.”*** But, it is important that we remember the promise given in Hebrews 2: 17 & 18, as follows: ***‘Therefore, He had to be made like His brethren in all things, that He might become a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to Elohim, to make propitiation for the sins of the people. (18) For since He Himself was tempted in that which He has suffered, He is able to come to the aid of those who are tempted.’*** In addition we should know that YHVH will not allow us to be tested beyond what we are able to endure, as we are assured in 1 Corinthians 10: 13, ***‘No temptation has overtaken you but such as is common to man; and Elohim is faithful, who will not allow you to be tempted beyond what you are able, but with the temptation will provide the way to escape also, that you may be able to endure it.’*** Most of all, we need to remember that as human beings, our suffering is of a temporary nature. After we have shown like Abraham, that we will obey YHVH, He will put an end to our suffering, no matter what.

Finally we read about the permanent reward for those who suffer for the sake of righteousness in 2 Timothy 2: 10 - 13, as follows: ***‘For this reason I endure all things for the sake of those who are chosen, that they also may obtain the salvation which is in Messiah Yahshua and with it eternal glory. (11) It is a trustworthy statement: For if we died with Him, we shall also live with Him; (12) If we endure, we shall also reign with Him; If we deny Him, He also will deny us; (13) If we are faithless, He remains faithful; for He cannot deny Himself.’*** Rav Yaa’cov puts it in this way in James 1: 2 – 5, ***‘Consider it all joy, my brethren, when you encounter various trials, (3) knowing that the testing of your faith produces endurance. (4) And let endurance have its perfect result, that you may be perfect and complete, lacking in nothing. (5) But if any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask of Elohim, who gives to all men generously and without reproach, and it will be given to him.’*** HalleluYah!

## **Chapter 35: How do we know that we are doing the work of Elohim?**

Many years ago as a young man, I could not even imagine that there are people in the world who will do everything in their power to put an end to Elohim's work. Yes, I knew there were evil people in the world, but I could not get myself so far as to believe that any body will target people who proclaim the good news of the coming kingdom of Elohim. However, about sixteen years ago, a then well-known Christian teacher, attacked our previous association, for proclaiming the coming Kingdom of Elohim, and for keeping the Sabbath; the Feast Days of Elohim; and the kosher food Laws prescribed in Torah.

I could not believe that ten years after the group's leader died, the group became just another, Sunday; Xmas and Easter keeping, pig-eating Christian group. I saw the same thing started happening to the Seventh Day Adventist Church, when about six years ago, one of their then leaders, traveled around the world; to relate to the members of the group how an angelic being visited him in a dream, to tell him that they should stop keeping the Sabbath, as it is not important to their salvation. I wrote this preacher that by studying the Scriptures in this regard, he will realize that according to Hebrews 1: 1 & 2, Elohim does not speak to us through prophets any longer, but only through Yahshua Messiah, who is the word of Elohim. I also referred him to 1 John 4: 1 - 3, telling him not to believe every spirit, but that he should test the spirit that came to him, to see if it is from Elohim; every spirit that confesses that Yahshua came in the flesh (meaning as Elohim in the flesh), is from Elohim; and every spirit that does not confess Yahshua is not from Elohim. Such spirits are anti-Messiah or put differently denies or contradicts the word of Elohim. During the past year we have studied two Renewed Covenant portions namely the Book of Jude and 2 Peter 2: 1 – 22, both identifying false prophets as those who contradict the things that Yahshua taught. We need to understand that Yahshua the word of Elohim does not contradict or deny Himself – so He never changed anything given in the Tanach; intended to be kept eternally

Satan's deception spoken about in Revelation 12: 9 is ongoing and will continue until the return of Yahshua the Messiah. Most of the people including some believers will continue to be manipulated by Satan in ways that we cannot imagine. He is the father of lies and has been busy trying to derail true worship, from the very beginning. There are people who are so deceived by Satan and his agents that they cannot tell right from wrong any longer. The problem is that because they cannot distinguish between truth and Satan's lies, they have allied themselves with groups and people, who have nothing else to do, but to persecute and try to destroy the work of those who preach the good news of the coming Kingdom of Elohim into the world – a task which Yahshua our Messiah commissioned all who follow Him to do. How deceived must those be who go out of their way to destroy the work and websites of those of us who proclaim the good news of the coming Kingdom of Elohim into the entire world? Some regularly send me viruses to try and destroy my computer, so that we may stop doing the work.

However, as if totally oblivious of this commission by Yahshua they continue to major in the minors, as Rav Shaul said about some in Hebrews 5: 12, in this way: ***'For though by this time you ought to be teachers, you have need again for someone to teach you the elementary principle of the oracles of Elohim, and you have come to need milk and not solid food.'*** After having been part of the ecclesia for a number of years, we should be familiar with the Scriptures and should not be deceived so easily, as we should already know the basic tenets of our faith and should not be tossed here and there by every wind of doctrine, by the trickery of men, by craftiness in deceitful scheming, that will eventually lead to destruction. We read fittingly from Matthew 7: 19 – 27, where Yahshua said: ***"Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. (20) So then, you will know them by their fruits. (21) Not everyone who says to Me, 'Master, Master,' will enter the kingdom of heaven; but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven. (22) Many will say to Me on that day, 'Master, Master, did we not prophesy in Your name, and in Your name cast out demons, and in Your name perform many miracles?' (23) And then I will declare to them, 'I never knew you; DEPART FROM ME, YOU WHO PRACTICE LAWLESSNESS.' (24) Therefore everyone who hears these words of Mine, and acts upon them, may be compared to a wise man, who built his house upon the rock. (meaning Yahshua) (25) And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and burst against that house; and yet it did not fall, for it had been founded upon the rock. (26) And everyone who hears these words of Mine, and does not act upon them, will be like a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand. (27) And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and burst against that house; and it fell, and great was its fall."*** Those who are continuing to contradict the Master is in for a stormy ride. They all claim to do the work of Elohim, but in their actions, they oppose what He taught. But what exactly is the work of Elohim? We read the answer in John 6: 28 & 29, as follows: ***'They said therefore to Him (Yahshua), "What shall we do, that we may work the works of Elohim? (29) Yahshua answered and said to them, "This is the work of Elohim, that you believe in Him whom He has sent."*** Believing in Yahshua is the exact opposite of denying or contradicting Him.

Those who dislike what we teach and stand for, go all out to destroy the work that we produce, since there are only a few of us who challenge their lies and deceptive behavior. But, why if I am a nobody - small fry in the big picture, are they trying to destroy the little bit that I do? Surely they cannot be jealous of me? Jealousy is defined as: uneasiness from fear of being supplanted or replaced by a rival. Jealousy is present in homes, amongst siblings as much as it is amongst ethnic groups and nations. Human beings always want what other people have. We always want to have the best cars, homes; the most beautiful wives; the cleverest children, etc., etc. It is the same with nations and even different ethnic groups. This is precisely why Yaa'cov warns us in James 4: 1 & 2, as follows: ***'What is the source of quarrels and conflicts among you? Is not the source your pleasures that wage war in your members? (2) You lust and do not have; so you commit murder. And you are envious and cannot obtain; so you fight and quarrel. You do not have because you do not ask.'*** People hate their brothers for their talents and blessings and want what they have, so they either take it from their brothers, or destroy what they cannot have. Satan is also known as Apollyon (in Greek) or Abaddon (in Hebrew) meaning the destroyer – so such people only follow Satan's lead.

During World War 2, Germany went to war because they became so jealous of the Jews in Germany, that they wanted to wipe them out as a race. The Germans knew that the Jews (in fact Israel, which includes the Jews) were the chosen race of YHWH our Elohim. Germans considered themselves as the 'Master Race' and were envious of the Jews and the rest is history. Japan went to war for raw materials and oil that belonged to their neighbors. Jews are even today one of the most hated nations in the world, because people are jealous of them being the chosen race of Elohim. The truth however, is that all Israel is the chosen people of Elohim, but because they have lost their identity, they are not even aware of it any longer. There were a number of times in history where our Jewish brothers were almost exterminated. That is one of the reasons why we as Nazarene Israel also keep the Jewish Feasts of Chanukah and Purim (the Feast of Esther). Think about it: If our Jewish brothers were destroyed during either the time of the Maccabees or the time of Esther, we might not have had our Jewish Messiah, to die for our sins.

Some say and believe that we teach hatred. But the fact is that once a believer becomes a true follower of Yahshua, he distinguishes himself from the unbelievers in the world. In Matthew 10: 34 - 38, Yahshua Messiah said: ***"Do not think that I came to bring peace on earth; I did not come to bring peace, but a sword. (35) For I came to SET A MAN AGAINST HIS FATHER, AND A DAUGHTER AGAINST HER MOTHER, AND A DAUGHTER-IN-LAW AGAINST HER MOTHER-IN-LAW; (36) and A MAN'S ENEMIES WILL BE THE MEMBERS OF HIS HOUSEHOLD. (37) He who loves father or mother more than Me is not worthy of Me; and he who loves son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me. (38) And he who does not take his cross and follow after Me is not worthy of Me."*** If the world accepted Yahshua, there would be no need for the sword, for all would be true disciples of Yahshua and would be united as one. However, this is not so, because individual members of a family or ecclesia become convicted by their conscience, to stand alone and is eventually compelled to separate themselves from those with whom they associated before. This is when the line of separation is drawn, and the individual stand upon the word of Elohim, whilst the others upon the teachings and traditions of men.

Prior to His impalement Yahshua bestowed upon His disciples His legacy of peace, as we read in John 14: 27, saying: ***"Peace I leave with you; My peace I give to you; not as the world gives, do I give to you. Let not your heart be troubled, nor let it be fearful."*** Yahshua gave His disciples the peace that is born of truth; a peace that cannot be extinguished because of division. Yahshua's heart was full of love and compassion for every human being, and if His love was truly understood by those he came to save, there would have been no need for the sword. Yahshua's peace was that which was born of love towards those who were plotting to kill Him. But, He did not compromise, He hated sin and reproved and rebuked transgressors to repent and return to being obedient to the teachings of Elohim. The reason why He was hated by the world is because the world loved unrighteousness and sin. The same will happen to us - those aiming to please Elohim and who is preaching truth are hated and will also be persecuted. Yahshua warned that this will happen in John 15: 16 – 19, as follows: ***"You did not choose Me, but I chose you, and appointed you, that you should go and bear fruit, and that your fruit should remain, that whatever you ask of the Father in My name, He may give to you. (17) This I command you, that you love one another. (18) If the world hates you, you know that it has hated Me before it hated you. (19) If you were of the world, the world would love its own; but because you are not of the world, but I chose you out of the world, therefore the world hates you."*** This is also the main reason for anti-Semitism. The believers in Yahshua may strive for peace and may earnestly desire to overcome the spirit of disagreement, but Satan will stir up his agents to bring strife and division, until he is bound in the abyss for a thousand years, at the beginning of Messiah's rule. It will be a serious mistake on our part, to compromise the truth for the sake of unity. It would be like giving up the peace that Yahshua gave to His disciples and by extension us His modern day disciples, in order to make peace or associate with unbelievers. The sacrifice is too costly for us, the children of Elohim, to make peace with the world and those who compromise the truth, thus giving up on the word of Elohim.

In fact as Nazarene Israelites, also known as watchmen, We are duty bound to do just that, as we are told in Isaiah 58 verse 1 to: ***“Cry loudly, do not hold back; Raise your voice like a trumpet, And declare to My people their transgression, And to the house of Jacob their sins.”*** As watchman we must let the light of Yahshua shine through us. We need to watch over the souls bestowed to us by YHVH and should always praise Him and make intercession for His people, asking Him to save the remnant of Israel. Believers are not always willing to listen to correction; they prefer to hear smooth words of praise. This is recorded for us in both the Tanach and the Renewed Covenant: We read in Isaiah 30: 9 & 10, ***‘For this is a rebellious people, false sons, Sons who refuse to listen To the instruction of YHVH; (10) Who say to the seers, “You must not see visions”; And to the prophets, You must not prophesy to us what is right, Speak to us pleasant words, Prophecy illusions.’*** We also read in 2 Timothy 4: 1 – 5: ***‘I solemnly charge you in the presence of Elohim and of Messiah Yahshua, who is to judge the living and the dead, and by His appearing and His kingdom: (2) preach the word; be ready in season and out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort, with great patience and instruction. (3) For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but wanting to have their ears tickled, they will accumulate for themselves teachers in accordance to their own desires; (4) and will turn away their ears from the truth, and will turn aside to myths. (5) But you, be sober in all things, endure hardship, do the work of an evangelist, fulfill your ministry.’***

The duty of a Nazarene or watchman is as described in Ezekiel 3: 17 – 21, as follows: ***“Son of man, I have appointed you a watchman to the house of Israel; whenever you hear a word from My mouth, warn them from Me. (18) When I say to the wicked, ‘You shall surely die’; and you do not warn him or speak out to warn the wicked from his wicked way that he may live, that wicked man shall die in his iniquity, but his blood I will require at your hand. (19) Yet if you have warned the wicked, and he does not turn from his wickedness or from his wicked way, he shall die in his iniquity; but you have delivered yourself. (20) Again, when a righteous man turns away from his righteousness and commits iniquity, and I place an obstacle before him, he shall die; since you have not warned him, he shall die in his sin, and his righteous deeds which he has done shall not be remembered; but his blood I will require at your hand. (21) However, if you have warned the righteous man that the righteous should not sin, and he does not sin, he shall surely live because he took warning; and you have delivered yourself.”*** Not many people like to be corrected, which tells us that the problem is in fact more than jealousy. The forces against us are the same forces that are against our Jewish brothers, namely lawlessness or at its deepest level nothing less than anti-Semitism. Anti-Semitism is at the root of the destruction of any group who ever tried to return to their Hebrew roots, even if they are not even full Torah observant.

Not many believers in the churches of the world will admit that the One who came to save them from slavery of sin was born a Jew. In fact some insist that He taught against Judaism. But, is there any Scriptural record of Him renouncing the faith into which He was born? Did He become a Christian? We need to know what He, who was the Word of Elohim, before His ‘human’ birth, had to say about the Jewish faith. Yahshua was born a Jew with a Jewish mother. He was given a Jewish name, namely Yahshua as witnessed in Matthew 1: 21, in this way: ***“And she will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Yahshua, for it is He who will save His people from their sins.”*** The meaning of His name is the salvation of YHVH, as shown in the last part of this verse. Yahshua said to the woman at the well, as recorded in John 4: 22, ***“You worship that which you do not know; we worship that which we know, for salvation is from the Jews.”*** During His time on earth, there were two main Jewish sects in control of the Sanhedrin, namely the Pharisees and the Sadducees.

Which of these two sects did Yahshua authenticate? We read what He said about the Sadducees when some of them questioned Him in Matthew 22: 23 - 28, about the resurrection in which they did not believe. They related an account of a married man who had seven brothers to Yahshua. In this account the man died childless and in accordance with Torah, it was the duty of his brother as next of kin, to marry his brother’s wife to raise up offspring for him. One brother after the other died, and so each one in turn married the first ones wife, but without leaving their brother offspring. Eventually the wife also died. Their question following the story is recorded in Matthew 22: 28, like this: ***‘In the resurrection therefore whose wife of the seven shall she be? For they all had her.’*** Yahshua answered them in Matthew 22: 29, as follows: ***‘But Yahshua answered and said to them, “You are mistaken, not understanding the Scriptures, or the power of Elohim.”*** If we follow Yahshua, we should not believe what the Sadducees teach, as they do not understand the Scriptures. What did Yahshua say about the Pharisees? We read from Matthew 23: 1 - 3, ***‘Then Yahshua spoke to the multitudes and to His disciples, (2) saying, “The scribes and the Pharisees have seated themselves in the chair of Moses; (3) therefore all they tell you, do and observe, but do not do according to their deeds; for they say things, and do not do them.”’*** So, we should listen and believe what the Pharisees tell us, but should not do what they do, as they tell us to keep the Torah, but do not always do as they teach. Their problem was hypocrisy, in that they wanted to look better than what they really were, as we read from Matthew 23: 28. This is a typical problem with many ‘pious’ people, even today.

Oddly enough, this section in Matthew 23, is also one in which the advocates of the crescent moon calendar contradicts our Master Yahshua.

What about His original disciples – were they anti-Semitic? The original believers in Yahshua were from a sect of Pharisees (see Acts 15: 5) identified as Nazarenes in Acts 24: 5. As I wrote in my latest book, *'since the commencement of Nazarene Judaism evil forces determined to destroy it and because of sustained attacks, the movement almost vanished by the fourth century. However, it never totally died out, as there have always been Torah observant individuals who believed in Yahshua as their Messiah.'* This is in line with the words of Yahshua in Matthew 16: 18, where He told His disciples, that the ecclesia (a group of called-out believers) built upon the Rock (meaning Himself), shall remain and the gates of Hades (meaning death) shall not overpower it, until His return.

But are these continuous attacks against us going to stop us from doing the work of Elohim? Not as long as YHVH wants us to go on doing it. We are even more resolute to take these destroyers head-on with the help of Elohim. But, how do we know that we are right? We read Yahshua's concluding words from the section we read before in John 15: 20 & 21, ***"Remember, the word that I said to you, 'A slave is not greater than his master.' If they persecuted Me, they will also persecute you; if they kept My word, they will keep yours also. (21) But all these things they will do to you for My name sake, because they do not know the One who sent Me."*** Let me tell you this: Once you have discovered the pearl of great price, spoken about in Matthew 13: 45 & 46; nothing will deter you, from your faith. So here is a warning to those out there who think that they have destroyed the work that we are doing? Be very afraid; YHVH will fight for us! We will again set-up a website – and this time it will really be a watchmen's site; warning the brethren about their transgressions, and the house of Jacob about their sins. Unless those who try to destroy such material repent in sackcloth and ashes, in the end, they will be very, very sorry!

In Matthew 18: 6 - 7 Yahshua said: ***"but whoever causes one of these little ones who believe in me to stumble, it is better for him that a heavy millstone be hung around his neck, and that he be drowned in the depth of the sea. Woe to the world because of its stumbling blocks! For it is in-evitable that stumbling blocks come; but woe to that man through whom the stumbling block comes!"*** Yes, brethren this is talking about people who put stumbling blocks in the way of children, such as the belief in Santa Clause and the Easter Bunny, but it also refers to people who make new believers in Yahshua the Messiah doubt; about such things as His weekly and annual Sabbaths; whether Yahshua partook of the last Passover before He was impaled; and whether they are keeping the correct calendar, etc., etc. Let me tell you, unless we build our house on Yahshua the rock of our salvation, our house is about to come tumbling down, in the forthcoming storms; be they of a financial or military nature. Things are prophesied to become unbearably hot in the very near future.

Let us therefore continue to do the work of Elohim, and believe in the One Whom He has sent.

Let us become like the Israel which King David ruled and unite with our Jewish brothers, meaning to do and believe what they say regarding the Torah; kosher; and the Sabbaths of Elohim. Let's aim to become more righteous than our Jewish brothers, in obedience to what Yahshua taught in Matthew 5: 19 & 20, as follows: ***"Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments, and so teaches others, shall be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (20) For I say to you, that unless your righteousness surpasses that of the Scribes and Pharisees, you shall not enter the kingdom of heaven."*** Think about it!

## **Chapter 36: When will Israel and Judah get together?**

Judah cannot rebuild the nation of Israel alone. There might be Jews who think and believe in their hearts that the lost ten tribes are lost forever and that they will have to rebuild the nation on their own, but then there are many Nazarene/Messianic Israelite and likeminded believers known as the Assemblies/congregations of YHVH who believe that they will do it entirely on their own without Judah. A few years ago one of those groups who kept the Feast of Tabernacles a month and a few days later than the Hebrew calendar, thought that Yahshua was going to return with only about 80 of them keeping the Feast in Jerusalem that year.

However, both the Jews and these Assemblies who believe that they are going to meet our Master and Savior on their own are mistaken, despite being very sincere. There are many Scriptural proofs that both Judah and Israel will be saved together, one of which is recorded in Jeremiah 33: 6 - 11, as follows: ***'Behold, I will bring to it health and healing, and I will heal them; and I will reveal to them an abundance of peace and truth. (7) And I will restore the fortunes of Judah and the fortunes of Israel, and I will rebuild them as they were at first. (8) And I will cleanse them from all their iniquity by which they have sinned against Me, and I will pardon all their iniquities by which they have sinned against Me, and by which they have transgressed against Me. (9) And it shall be to Me a name of joy, praise, and glory before all the nations of the earth, which shall hear of all the good that I do for them, and they shall fear and tremble because of all the good and all the peace that I make for it. (10) "Thus says YHVH, 'Yet again there shall be heard in this place, of which you say, "It is a waste, without man and without beast," that is, in the cities of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem that are desolate, without man and without inhabitant and without beast, (11) the voice of joy and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom and the voice of the bride, the voice of those who say, "Give thanks to YHVH of hosts, for YHVH is good, for His lovingkindness is everlasting"; and of those who bring a thank offering into the house of YHVH. For I will restore the fortunes of the land as they were at first,' says YHVH.'*** The question is why do some in the two camps think and believe that they can make it on their own. The reason is a jealousy in both groups which will only disappear near the end of this age, as prophesied in Isaiah 11: 13, in this way: ***'Then the jealousy of Ephraim will depart, and those who harass Judah will be cut off; Ephraim will not be jealous of Judah, and Judah will not harass Ephraim.'***

We also read about the same restoration of the fortunes of both Israel and Judah from Jeremiah 30. We see that this will happen during a time of great distress, but that YHVH will intervene for His people once again, as we read from verse 2 – 9, ***"Thus says YHVH, the Elohim of Israel, 'Write all the words which I have spoken to you in a book. (3) For, behold, days are coming,' declares YHVH, 'when I will restore the fortunes of My people Israel and Judah.' YHVH says, 'I will also bring them back to the land that I gave to their forefathers, and they shall possess it.'" (4) 'Now these are the words which YHVH spoke concerning Israel and concerning Judah.' (5) "For thus says YHVH, 'I have heard a sound of terror, of dread, and there is no peace. (6) Ask now, and see, If a male can give birth. Why do I see every man with his hands on his loins, as a woman in childbirth? And why have all faces turned pale? (7) Alas! for that day is great, there is none like it; and it is the time of Jacob's distress, but he will be saved from it. (If you are part of Jacob, you will already be distressed; Israelites are in deep trouble, especially those in the USA, the UK, South Africa, and indeed throughout the western world). (8) 'And it shall come about on that day,' declares YHVH of hosts, 'that I will break his yoke from off their neck, and will tear off their bonds; and strangers shall no longer make them their slaves. (9) But they shall serve YHVH their Elohim, and David their king, whom I will raise up for them.'***

Torah observant Jews remained faithful to YHVH as per the correct translation of Hosea 11: 12(KJV). As mentioned before, because of what happened to our Jewish brothers over the past ± 2500 years, they are fully aware of their past mistakes, Because of their persecution and sufferings in the past YHVH has written their sins on their hearts, as we read from Jeremiah 17: 1, as follows: ***'The sin of Judah is written down with an iron stylus; with a diamond point it is engraved upon the tablet of their heart, and on the horns of their altars.'*** After the Second World War, there were some Jews who like their European counterparts, lost their faith, but many remained loyal to YHVH and ***'yet ruleth with Elohim.'*** Our Jewish brothers are presently blinded to the identity of Yahshua and are keeping Torah, to show their good works, and not by faith, as confirmed in verses 32 & 33 of Romans 9, in this way: ***'Why? Because they did not pursue it by faith, but as though it were by works. They stumbled over the stumbling stone, (33) just as it is written, "BEHOLD, I LAY IN ZION A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENCE, AND HE WHO BELIEVES IN HIM WILL NOT BE DISAPPOINTED."*** Their fear of disobedience ensures that they are very meticulous about keeping the Oracles entrusted to them by Elohim<sup>45</sup>. Even so, they are not the only

---

<sup>45</sup> Rav Shaul talking about the Oracles that Judah (his kinsmen who are blinded to Yahshua's identity) reserved for us in Romans 9: 3 - 5, in this way: ***'For I could wish that I myself were accursed, separated from Messiah for the sake of my brethren, kinsmen according to the flesh, who are Israelites, to whom belongs the adoption as sons and the glory and the covenants and the giving of***

ones who are stumbling over the identity of Yahshua, as there are many called out believers, who believe in two (YHVH)'s and fail to recognize that YHVH is our Messiah and Savior, who came in the flesh as Yahshua the salvation of Yah, as is confirmed in verse 8 of Isaiah 63.

Rav Shaul, talks about the Jews, being his blood relatives in Romans 10: 1 – 3, as follows: ***'Brethren, my heart's desire and my prayer to Elohim for them (Judah) is for their salvation. (2) For I bear them witness that they have a zeal for Elohim, but not in accordance with knowledge. (3) For not knowing about Elohim's righteousness, and seeking to establish their own, they did not subject themselves to the righteousness of Elohim.'*** Because of fear, the Jews have an almost mechanical view of Torah and do not fully understand Elohim's righteousness. They keep Torah without much thought and because they try to establish their own righteousness, they do not subject themselves to Elohim's righteousness. At this time they do not fully understand that without Yahshua, who is the way the truth and the life, we have no righteousness. He is the goal of the Torah for those who believe, as is recorded in verse 4, like this: ***'For Messiah is the end (goal) of the law for righteousness to everyone who believes.'*** Those who are truly converted will want to obey Torah, because they came to love YHVH from their hearts. They studied His word and realized what He, their Creator and Savior has accomplished for them, resulting in their obedience to show Him that they love Him. It does not mean that the Law was done away with, but the difference is that we want to obey YHVH because we have come to know Him and therefore love Him. It is as we read from verses 5 – 10 of Romans 10, in this way: ***'For Moses writes that the man who practices the righteousness which is based on law shall live by that righteousness. (6) But the righteousness based on faith speaks thus, "DO NOT SAY IN YOUR HEART, 'WHO WILL ASCEND INTO HEAVEN?' (that is, to bring Messiah down), (7) or 'WHO WILL DESCEND INTO THE ABYSS?' (that is, to bring Messiah up from the dead)."*** (8) ***But what does it say? "THE WORD IS NEAR YOU, IN YOUR MOUTH AND IN YOUR HEART"— that is, the word of faith which we are preaching, (9) that if you confess with your mouth Yahshua as Master, and believe in your heart that Elohim raised Him from the dead, you shall be saved; (10) for with the heart man believes, resulting in righteousness, and with the mouth he confesses, resulting in salvation.'***

It will only be after Judah and Israel have joined forces, that they will be able to conquer their Arab neighbors, ever ready to attack them, as we read from Obadiah verses 18 & 19, as follows: ***"Then the house of Jacob will be a fire and the house of Joseph a flame; but the house of Esau will be as stubble. And they will set them on fire and consume them, so that there will be no survivor of the house of Esau," for YHVH has spoken. (19) Then those of the Negev (the south country) will possess the mountain of Esau, and those of the Shephelah (the foothills) the Philistine plain; also, they will possess the territory of Ephraim and the territory of Samaria, and Benjamin will possess Gilead.'*** This is further also confirmed in Isaiah 11: 14 & 15, in this way: ***'And they will swoop down on the slopes of the Philistines on the west; together they will plunder the sons of the east; they will possess Edom and Moab; and the sons of Ammon will be subject to them. (15) And YHVH will utterly destroy the tongue of the Sea of Egypt; and He will wave His hand over the River with His scorching wind; and He will strike it into seven streams, and make men walk over dry shod.'***

When will the two houses be re-united? We read from Hosea 5: 15 – 6: 4, in this way: (15) ***'I will go away and return to My place until they acknowledge their guilt and seek My face; in their affliction they will earnestly seek Me.'*** (Things are going to get so bad that we will eventually turn to Yahshua/YHVH) (1) ***'Come let us return to YHVH. For He has torn us, but He will heal us; He has wounded us, But He will bandage us. (2) He will revive us after two days; He will raise us up on the third day that we may live before Him. (Yahshua will return after 2000 years) (3) So let us know, let us press on to know YHVH. His going forth is as certain as the dawn; and He will come to us like the rain, like the spring rain watering the earth.'*** (4) ***What shall I do with you, O Ephraim? What shall I do with you, O Judah? For your loyalty is like a morning cloud, and like the dew which goes away early.'*** So we see that Yahshua will not return until we, the remnant of the lost ten tribes has become fully Torah observant. It will only be once we are fully Torah observant that Judah will recognize us as their brother. This is in agreement with what Yahshua taught in Matthew 5: 17 – 20. When we observe all the Torah commandments better than the Pharisees, i.e. from the heart; then our Jewish Messiah will return. This is one of the conditions that have to be satisfied before Yahshua will come to cut short the duration of the great tribulation in order to save the lives of the elect. A second condition which Yahshua himself mentioned, was as given in Matthew 24: 14, as follows: ***'And this gospel of the kingdom (of Elohim) shall be preached in the whole world for a witness to all the nations, and then the end shall come.'***

---

*the Law and the temple services (i.e. the timing of such services) and the promises, whose are the fathers, and from whom is the Messiah according to the flesh, who is over all, Elohim blessed forever. Amen.'*



If we confess that we believe in the word of Elohim, as well as what Yahshua taught whilst He was on earth, then there are two things high up on the to do lists of all the called-out believers in Yahshua. This is also in line with what Yahshua said in Luke 12: 32, ***“But seek for His kingdom, and these things shall be added to you.”*** Our priority should be to make it into the kingdom of Elohim. If we do everything in our power to please our Father and to make it into His Eternal Kingdom, then all our needs will also be met in this life. Right on top of our to do list should be to start studying Torah, so that we may see where we fall short. We should hold the Scriptures up like a mirror so that we may see if we have shortcomings. Sin is according to 1 John 3: 4, the transgression of the law or Torah. If we want to stop sinning therefore, we should stop transgressing the law. In addition Yahshua taught in Matthew 5: 19 that we should keep and teach even those commandments that are considered least of the commandments. This implies that if a commandment is applicable to us, then we should start obeying it immediately. Yes, not each and every Torah command is applicable to all of us. There are some commandments applicable to farmers and others specifically applicable to women, but we should make sure that we study the Scriptures carefully to ascertain, which are specifically applicable to us; repent for breaking those where we still fall short and start obeying it to the best of our ability.

We should also realize that we cannot keep the commandments on our own, as we read from Jeremiah 17: 9, ***‘The heart is more deceitful than all else and is desperately sick (wicked according to the KJV); who can understand it?’*** We understand from reading from 1 Corinthians 2: 11 & 12, that human beings cannot understand the Spiritual things of Elohim, unless we have a portion of His Set-apart Spirit indwelling us, as follows: ***‘For who among men know the thoughts of a man except the spirit of the man, which is in him? Even so the thoughts of Elohim no one knows except the Spirit of Elohim. (12) Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from Elohim, that we might know the things freely given to us by Elohim.’*** We should not be deceived, we need to be immersed in the saving name of Yahshua our Messiah to receive the Set-apart Spirit (as per Acts 2: 38). Yahshua our Messiah is the door and immersion into His saving name is the key to eternal life, as we read from Romans 8: 11, in this way: ***‘But if the Spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Messiah Yahshua from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Spirit who indwells you.’***

YHVH makes the rules; He specifies the way in which we need to follow Him. YHVH became our salvation through Messiah. Therefore Messiah is the foundation of the ecclesia of called out believers as we read from 1 Corinthians 3: 11 – 16, as follows: ***‘For no man can lay a foundation other than the one which is laid, which is Yahshua Messiah (the rock of our Salvation; not Peter or any other apostle as some believe). (12) Now if any man builds upon the foundation with gold, silver, precious stone, wood, hay, straw, (13) each man’s work will become evident; for the day will show it, because it is to be revealed with fire; and the fire itself will test the quality of each man’s work. (14) If any man’s work which he has built upon it remains, he shall receive a reward. (15) If any man’s work is burned up, he shall suffer loss; but he himself shall be saved, yet so as through fire. (16) Do you not know that you are a temple of Elohim, and that the Spirit of Elohim dwells in you? In the end only Spiritual things will remain, everything else will be burnt up. We should therefore not be overly concerned with what we eat and wear. We should be more concerned about following the way of Elohim, namely His Torah teachings, since that is all that will remain one day, as Rav Shaul said about the Law in Romans 6: 12 – 14, in this way: ‘So then, the Law is holy (set-apart), and the commandment is holy and righteous and good. (13) Therefore did that which is good become a cause of death for Me? May it never be! Rather it was sin, in order that it might be shown to be sin by effecting my death through that which is good, that through the commandment sin might become utterly sinful. (14) For we know that the Law is spiritual; but I am of flesh, sold into bondage to sin.’***

By keeping the Law we build spiritual character which will last into eternity. The Law shows us what is sin, and if we start practicing righteousness, by eating only kosher (which includes not mixing meat and milk products); keeping the weekly and annual Sabbaths of Elohim; wearing tzitzit; circumcise both our hearts (being immersed) and flesh (only applicable to men), as well as keeping all other commands applicable to us. This is in fact what YHVH require of each one of us, as may be read from Deuteronomy 10: 12 & 13, as follows: ***‘And now, Israel, what does YHVH your Elohim require from you, but to fear YHVH your Elohim, to walk in all His ways and love Him, and to serve YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, (13) and to keep (YHVH)’s commandments and His statutes which I am commanding you today for your good?’***

There are presently so many diverse views on what is kosher and what is not. In addition there are so many different calendars in use by Nazarene Israelite and like-minded believers. But in the end there is only one calendar Set-apart by YHVH our Elohim, as we read from Nahum 1: 15, ***‘Behold, on the mountains the feet of him who brings good news, who announces peace! Celebrate your Feasts, O Judah; pay your vows. For never again will the wicked one pass through you; He is cut off completely.’*** Ask yourself,

why YHVH authenticates the Feast Days that Judah keeps through the prophet Nahum. Why does He say through the pen of Zechariah in chapter 8: 23, ***“Thus says YHVH of hosts, ‘In those days (meaning at the time of the end) ten men from all the nations (meaning men from the lost ten tribes) will grasp the garment of a Jew saying, “Let us go with you, for we have heard that Elohim is with you.””*** The reason is: That we need to start keeping the Feast Days and other Torah commandments that Judah is keeping today. As it says in Numbers 15: 15 the Torah is applicable to all who serve YHVH as follows: ***‘As for the assembly, there shall be one statute for you and for the alien who sojourns with you, a perpetual statute throughout your generations; as you are, so shall the alien be before YHVH.’*** However, to be able to do it better than what the Jews are doing it; we need to start keeping it from the heart – or with a spiritual intent.

Ultimately all men who want to become kings and priests under Yahshua will have to be circumcised as per Zechariah 44: 7 – 9. We need to start cleaning up our lives, if we expect YHVH to come and dwell among us and to protect us as we read from Deuteronomy 23: 14 ***“Since YHVH your Elohim walks in the midst of your camp to deliver you and to defeat your enemies before you, therefore your camp must be holy; and He must not see anything indecent among you lest He turn away from you.”*** We also see from Isaiah 52: 1, that the uncircumcised are considered to be on par with the unclean, as follows: ***‘Awake, awake, clothe yourself in your strength, O Zion; clothe yourself in beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy (set-apart) city. For the uncircumcised and the unclean will no more come into you.’*** But again, we need to remember that Yahshua set us free from sin (not the Law) and that YHVH does not force us to obey Him. He wants us to obey Him and keep His commandments because we love Him – i.e. from the heart. It is by obeying YHVH from our hearts that we will make our Jewish brothers jealous.

We need to get on the exact same page as our Jewish brothers are. The fact that they do not know the identity of the true Messiah is not our concern at the moment. What we do know from studying Romans 11 is that it is all (YHVH)’s doing. He has blinded their minds to the identity of Yahshua, until all of us, the remnant of the lost ten tribes, chosen by YHVH at this time have come in, then, all Israel will be saved (including our Torah abiding Jewish brothers). What a blessing to be able to understand what YHVH has planned for us together with our brother Judah. Now that we know what we know, let’s start doing what is required of us – Let’s acknowledge our guilt and seek Elohim’s face. Let’s make our Jewish brothers jealous by keeping the Feast Days of Elohim, at the same time as they do. In fact, let’s show them how to obey Torah from the heart, with the spiritual intent as required by our heavenly Father YHVH. Praise the name of YHVH!

## Chapter 37: Contact details of the Publisher.

The Nazarene Israelite Two House Congregation of Port Elizabeth is based in Port Elizabeth, South Africa.  
Postal Address: P O Box 15935, Emerald Hill. 6011. Port Elizabeth. South Africa.

All our material may be downloaded from the Hebrew Roots Teaching Institute's website at [www.hrti.co.za](http://www.hrti.co.za) at a nominal cost to help cover their administrative costs.

### Statement of our Beliefs.

As Nazarene Jews/Israelites, we believe:

- That there is only one Elohim, who is Almighty - יהוה - written as four vowels IAUE (in English) and pronounced Yah-oo-e, or in its short form Yahweh/YHVH. This is confirmed in the first part of the Sh'ma in Deuteronomy 6: 4, as follows: **"Hear, O Israel – YHVH is your Elohim – YHVH is ONE (ECHAD)."** In Deuteronomy 32: 39 YHVH says: **"See now that I am HE, AND there is no Elohim besides Me"**
- That YHVH reveals Himself in many ways, characteristics and personalities, which includes, but are not limited to the Heavenly Father, Yahshua the Son, the Word, the Messiah, the Angel or Messenger of YHVH and the Set-apart Spirit (Ruach HaKodesh). That Yahshua is part of YHVH and is the visible Image of the Invisible Elohim<sup>46</sup>. He is the Messiah who died for the sins of the world and rose from the dead to give assurance of both the forgiveness of our sins and everlasting life. Yahshua said In John 8: 24, **"I said therefore to you, that you shall die in your sins; for unless you believe that I am HE, you shall die in your sins."** He further stated in John 10: 30 saying: **"I and the Father are one"**. In addition we read from 1 Tim 3:16, **"And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: Elohim was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory"**. This is also in agreement with (YHVH)'s statement through Isaiah in Isaiah 43: 10 & 11, in this way: **"You are my witnesses," declares YHVH, "And My servant whom I have chosen, in order that you may know and believe Me, and understand that I am He. Before Me there was no Elohim formed, and there will be none after Me. (11) I, even I, am YHVH; and there is no savior besides Me."**
- That Yahshua was born of a virgin lived a sinless life in accordance with the (Torah) Commandments of Elohim. He was crucified for the atonement of His people and was resurrected on the third day, ascended to heaven from where He will return to usher in the Kingdom of Elohim, and rule the world from Jerusalem.
- That the Scriptures, which include both the Tanach and the Renewed Covenant, is the divinely inspired and literal Word of Elohim as originally written.
- That the Law, which includes the 613 laws stipulated in the first five books of the Bible, should be observed by all those who want to worship YHVH our Elohim. The Ten Commandments being part and parcel of these 613 laws. The Law being the teachings of Elohim is the rules according to which we 'live our lives'. Keeping of the Law cannot bring us salvation, as we know that salvation is the free gift of YHVH our Elohim, given to those that love and obey Him. We show our love and obedience to YHVH by keeping His Commandments. These laws regulate moral precepts; dietary regulations; agricultural science; financial success; sexual behavior and religious practice.
- That, as part of the commandments we keep the biblical Sabbath, being the seventh day of the week or Saturday according to the Gregorian calendar in use today. We also keep the biblical Holy (Set-apart) Days, ordained by YHVH in Leviticus 23. These Holy Days depict (YHVH)'s plan of salvation for all mankind and are commanded to be kept forever.

---

<sup>46</sup> Gen. 1:26, **"Then Elohim Said, "Let Us make man in Our Image, according to Our likeness.""** Yahshua is the Image/likeness of Elohim – as confirmed in both 2 Corinthians 4: 4 & Col. 1: 15.

We also obey the Commandments regarding clean and unclean meats as specified by YHVH in Leviticus 11. We do this to show our obedience to YHVH and to remain set apart or holy, as YHVH stated in Leviticus 11:45 ***"You shall be Holy for I am Holy"***.

- That we should be proclaiming the good news of the Kingdom of YHVH as a witness to all nations and the return of Yahshua the Messiah to the earth to come and rule His people from Jerusalem for a thousand years. Those who believe and practice what Yahshua taught and who overcome, will rule with Yahshua for a thousand years.
- That we as Nazarenes are watchmen over the people of Israel and specifically over Judah. As watchman we must let the light of Yahshua shine through us. We need to watch over the souls bestowed to us by YHVH and should always praise Him and make intercession for His people, asking Him to save the remnant of Israel.
- That the key given to those who wish to enter the Kingdom of Elohim is encapsulated in the following Scriptural witnesses: We read from Acts 4: 12: ***"There is salvation in no one else, for there is no other Name under heaven, given among men by which we must be saved."*** In support of this Yahshua said in John 10: 9, ***"I am the Door; if anyone enters by Me, he will be saved."*** In addition we need to be mindful of Yahshua's own words in John 14: 26, as follows: ***"But the Helper, the Holy (or Set-apart) Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, He will teach you all things, and bring to your remembrance all that I said to you."*** Rav Kepha knew what the keys were, when Yahshua said to him in Matt 16: 19, ***"I will give you the Keys of the Kingdom of Heaven."*** When therefore, those whom he taught believed that Elohim made Yahshua both Master and Messiah, they enquired as to what they should do. Rav Kepha's answer is recorded in Acts 2: 38, in this way: ***"Repent, and be immersed every one of you in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the remission of sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Set Apart Spirit."*** Rav Shaul validating the same wrote in Romans 8: 11, ***'But if the Spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Messiah Yahshua from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Spirit who indwells you.'*** Halleluyah!

<p>This book is for educational purposes only and is not to be sold</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------